This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

FROM THE LIBRARY OF
WILLIAM TREGURTHA
of Malden, Massachusetts

The Gift of
Miss Alma M. Brown
and
Mr. & Mrs. George Channing Lawrence

April 12, 1922

MODERN PERSIAN COLLOQUIAL GRAMMAR.

MODERN PERSIAN COLLOQUIAL GRAMMAR

CONTAINING

A SHORT GRAMMAR, DIALOGUES AND EXTRACTS FROM NASIR-EDDIN SHAH'S DIARIES, TALES, ETC. AND A VOCABULARY

BY

Dr. FRITZ ROSEN.

LONDON:
LUZAC & Co.
PUBLISHERS TO THE INDIA OFFICE
46, Great Russell Street
1898.

JRAS. 1/

PRINTED BY E. J. BRILL, LEIDEN (HOLLAND).

To His Excellency

The Right Hon^ble the Marquis of DUFFERIN and AVA,

G. C. B., K. P., G. C. S. I., G. C. M. G., G. C. I. E.

IN GRATITUDE FOR THE EXAMPLE SET BY HIM IN THE ACQUIREMENT OF THE PERSIAN LANGUAGE AND IN RECOLLECTION OF THE PLEASANT HOURS SPENT, LISTENING WITH HIM TO A PERSIAN STORY-TELLER IN INDIA

THESE PAGES ARE

DEDICATED BY

THE AUTHOR.

PREFACE.

The "*Modern Persian Colloquial Grammar*" is a translation and revision of my "*Neupersischer Sprachführer*" published at Leipzig by C. A. Koch in 1890. Its object is to assist the student in learning the language now spoken in Persia.

The Persian Grammars hitherto written in English have, like Forbes' Grammar and Clarke's Manual, dealt with the Persian of India, which differs in every respect from the language of Irân. A few English books, it is true, such as Finn's little vocabulary, Haggard and Lestrange's able edition of the Vazir of Lankuran and Wollaston's excellent dictionaries, have dealt with the Persian of Modern Persia, but I think that a work containing a grammar, dialogues and various specimens of colloquial prose together with some information regarding journeys and life in Persia will be found useful to all travellers and residents in that country as well as in Baluchistan and Afghanistan.

The principal additions to the German edition are

the introduction throughout the book of the Persian type along with the Latin transcription. This will enable the student to acquire the rudiments of reading as well as of speaking. Further-more an alphabetic vocabulary has been substituted for the tabulated collection of useful words contained in the German edition. Since publishing the "Neupersischer Sprachführer" a residence of six years in PERSIA has enabled me to make many corrections and amplifications.

The English translation of the diary of Nasir-Eddin SHAH'S journeys to Europe has been taken from Mr. REDHOUSE'S "The Diary of H. M. the Shah of Persia during his Tour through Europe in A. D. 1873. London, 1874".

I have much pleasure in thanking Prof. E. DENISON Ross, of University College, London, for the kind assistance he has lent me by reading a great part of the proofsheets while I was in Persia.

Teheran, April 1897 *The Author.*

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS TAKEN FROM THE PREFACE TO THE GERMAN EDITION.

Persian, the most elegant and harmonious of all the languages of Muhammedan nations has, from the earliest days, enjoyed an importance far beyond the boundaries of the Shah's dominions and has still survived the many vicissitudes of Eastern history.

As early as the seventh century Persia lost her independence and fell under the successive sway of the Arab, the Turk and the Mongol. But it was under the foreign rule of the Turkish dynasties of the Ghaznevide and Seldjuk kings and their successors the Atabegs that Persian literature attained its highest development. It so far influenced the turkish conquerors as to render them instrumental in spreading Persian thought and speech over a great part of Asia. Even the Mongols fell beneath its charm. When they first invaded Irân under Jangiz Khan they had attempted to extirpate from its soil the inhabitants together with their civilization. But we see them not long afterwards when they invaded India under Babur — the great grandson of Tamerlane — in 1526, appearing as the bearers of Persian speech and thought and introducing into India the higher standard of Persian civilization; and the country, as it fell beneath their undisputed sway, attained an unprecedented degree of wealth and magnificence. The

invaders introduced Persian art, Persian architecture and Persian industry, and *Persian* became the language of the court and government of the Moghuls. In fact, there can be no clearer illustration of Persian influence, than the transformation of a savage Tartar horde into the polished and magnificent courts of Dehli and Agra. To this day Persian is not only spoken at all the courts of India, but it is to a certain extent the official language of the Indian Foreign Office in its dealings with the native Princes, and it is taught in all the middle-class schools throughout Northern India. Out of the language of the Tartar conquerors has sprung up the language of the «*horde*» (*ordū* or *urdū*) or «*Royal camp*», the modern *Urdū* or *Hindūstānī*, which is itself three parts Persian.

Persian has exercised almost as much influence on the *Turkish* literature and language as on Hindustani, and the Persian classics are the foundation of higher education among the Turks both of Turkey and of Turkistan.

But though the Persian language has formed a bond of intellectual union between the nations of Islâm inhabiting the immense tract between the *Syr*, the *Brahmaputra*, the *Euphrates* and the *Danube*, yet it has had to yield considerably to foreign influences even on its original territory, the plateau of Irân: All Persian provinces are more or less populated by Turkish tribes. Several races of Mongols are settled in Afghanistan, who have however partially adopted the Persian language or in some instances the East Persian dialect Pukhtū, while in Baluchistan a distinct race, the Brahui talk a language of their own.

It is clear that this incroachment of foreign nations on Persian territory must have necessarily exercised an influence on the language. Already with the invasion of the Arabs and the conversion of Persia to Islâm a countless number of Arabic words and phrases had been adopted into the classical language. In the

same manner, at a subsequent period, Turkish expressions found their way into the language and literature.

The addition of a considerable foreign vocabulary affected to some extent the original language. By far the greater number of foreign words were substantives and adjectives. The verb with its simple inflection remained for a long time untouched. But by degrees the Arabic or Turkish «*ism*» (noun or adjective), in conjunction with a Persian verb, supplanted the old *simple verb*. Thus there came into use a number of compound expressions formed by nouns and adjectives with auxiliary verbs, of which a list is given on page 47. This tendency produced a proportionate decrease in the number of simple verbs. E. g. آموختن *āmūkhtan*, *to learn* has been replaced by یاد گرفتن *yād giriftan* or درس خواندن *dars khāndan*, — بخشیدن *bakhshīdan*, *to bestow*, has been replaced by مرحمت کردن *marhamat kardan*.

A further change resulting from the foreign elements was the introduction of *adverbs*. No special form had existed for this part of speech in classical Persian, the meaning being expressed by an adjective used adverbially. In the modern language the arabic adverbs in اً, *an*, are the rule, whereas in the classical language they were the exception.

Another class of modifications might be styled *organic* and to these all languages are subject with the lapse of time. Two forces, a desire for lucidity and an inclination to laxity of expression, are especially powerful in producing this change. The old words lose their power and must either be strengthened or replaced by stronger expressions.

This phenomenon is most clearly marked in the case of the *prepositions*, for the prepositions of the classical language are now either doubled or strengthened or their place taken by simple concrete nouns. — It has been found necessary in a similar way

to strengthen the *pronouns*, because like the prepositions, being small words, they were likely to be completely lost. Thus we now nearly always find *khudam*, *khudat khudash* used instead of the shorter form *khud* of the classical language. Double forms like: *chi kār* or *chi chīz* have replaced the simple form *chi*; *hīch kas na* is used for the original *kas na*; *chi vakht* for *key* etc.

Unfortunately the inclination towards laxity of expression has proved stronger in the development of modern Persian than the tendency towards lucidity. To this circumstance must be ascribed the great lack of rule and the partially apparent, partially real arbitrariness and inconsistency of the language, which renders the use of some parts of speech, especially the conjunctions and prepositions, a difficulty for the pupil and for the teacher. Also the inflection of the verb has lost some of its clearness and simplicity by the various forms being now frequently interchangeable, whereas in the classical language they were distinctly differentiated.

But vanity and love of effect, which, from the earliest days, have been weak points of the Persian character, have done even more harm to the language than inaccuracy of expression. It is owing to this love of display that the simplest subjects are mostly expressed in bombastic style, and quaint turns of speech are constantly drawn from the archaic or classical language and from Arabic. It is therefore, in dealing with the vocabulary and with the grammar, only possible to form a *general* distinction between the classical language and that of our own day. But such a distinction will not hold good in each particular case. *Modern Persian* must therefore to some extent be regarded as a mixture of *strictly modern Persian* and *classical Persian*. It is left to the taste of the individual to adopt whichever style he likes, the classical, the bombastic or the colloquial modern Persian. But it is always necessary to distinguish the language of Irân from the Persian which is still in use in *India*. The Persian of India may

be looked upon as a petrification of the old classical language. It has also preserved the «*majhūl*» vowels *e* and *o* for ī and ū and many other differences in pronunciation. The Persian speaking Indians, whose studies are mostly confined to the classics and to poetic exercises, have followed none of the developments of the modern language.

In order to obtain a fixed standard in the midst of this confusion of styles, I have submitted nearly everything that has been written in purely modern Persian to a careful examination. The limited number of these publications has considerably lightened my task. Besides a few plays, of which the *Vazir of the Khān of Lankurān* is the best known, a small volume: *tādīb ul atfāl* (education of children) and the newspapers printed at Teheran, Isfahan and Constantinople, there are only the works of *Nāsir-eddīn Shāh* which are written in a modern and colloquial style. The excellent dialogues in Mirza Ibrahim's grammar of the Persian language (London 1841) belong half to the classical language, whose influence their author could not entirely shake off. In these it is only the uneducated people who use the style which Nāsir-eddīn Shāh has now raised to the dignity of a written language.

The descriptions which the late Shah has published of his travels in Persia and Europe are the best and truest specimens of the modern colloquial language spoken at the Persian court and capital. I have often during audiences with His Majesty been able to ascertain, in the course of long conversations, that the Shah spoke in exactly the same manner as he wrote, and frequently, in reading his most entertaining diaries, the very intonation of his voice has come back to me.

It is because the language of the Shah is the simple colloquial language committed to writing, that I have made it the foundation of the vocabulary, the grammar and the conversational parts of this book. All the examples given and all the dialogues are in

strict accordance with the style used by the late Shah in his diaries.

As regards the *Turkish words* in the language, they follow the same rules in forming the plural etc. as purely Persian words. It has not therefore been necessary to devote a special chapter to them, as has been the case with the arabic words.

In drawing up the vocabulary and the conversations I have chiefly kept in view the requirements of the traveller. He may also derive useful information from particular chapters, as «a walk in the bazar» and «a journey through Persia» and others. I have taken especial pains to give such information as I have found useful in my first ride across the country, from the Persian Gulf to the Caspian Sea. A knowledge of the distances of the posthouses one from another, as given in the tables, may frequently save the «tāza vārid» (new arrival) from overcharge.

I would finally venture to express the hope that this *Grammar of Colloquial Persian* may awaken amongst some of my readers a certain interest in the modes of Persian thought and Persian expression, and that, after conquering the difficulties of the Persian characters, they may become acquainted with the very rich and fascinating classic literature, a knowledge of which is indispensable to the thorough mastery of the modern language.

F. R.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Preface	III
Introductory Remarks from preface of German edition	IX
Chapter I. Alphabet and Pronounciation	1
Chapter II. Grammar:	
I. Nouns	11
II. Adjectives	18
III. Numerals	20
IV. Pronouns	24
V. Verbs	31
VI. Prepositions	48
VII. Conjunctions	61
VIII. Adverbs	63
IX. Construction	64
X. Arabic Element in Persian	67
Chapter III. Dialogues	75
Extracts from Late Shah's Diaries	206
Appendix: Some of the titles most used in speaking	286
Weights and measures	288
Money	289
English-Persian Vocabulary	291

CHAPTER I.

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

The Persian alphabet consists of 32 letters which differ according to their position at the beginning, middle or end of a word or group of letters. The letters are written from right to left and, when made into words form a sort of shorthand.

As the table of the alphabet shows, some letters: ا د ذ ر ز ژ and و are never joined to the following letter. If they occur in the middle of a word, a gap is formed, similar to the interval between two separate words ex: برادر *bar ā da r* (*barādar*), brother.

In the so called شکسته *shikasta*, writing, all letters forming *one word* are connected. This greatly facilitates quick writing, but renders reading very difficult.

A number of letters, as may be seen in the table, represent *identical* sounds in Persian, f. i. ث, س and ص = s, or ح and ه = h, or ذ, ز, ض and ظ = z, ت and ط = t, ا and ع = spiritus lenis. — In *Arabic*, from which language the Persian alphabet is taken, these letters represent *different* sounds, but in Persian no distinction whatever is made between them. It is therefore useless for the student to trouble about the pronunciation of arabic sounds like ح, ظ or ض.

CHAPTER I.

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

The Persian alphabet consists of 32 letters which differ according to their position at the beginning, middle or end of a word or group of letters. The letters are written from right to left and, when made into words form a sort of shorthand.

As the table of the alphabet shows, some letters: ا د ذ ر ز ژ and و are never joined to the following letter. If they occur in the middle of a word, a gap is formed, similar to the interval between two separate words ex: برادر *bar ā da r* (*barādar*), brother.

In the so called شکسته *shikasta*, writing, all letters forming *one word* are connected. This greatly facilitates quick writing, but renders reading very difficult.

A number of letters, as may be seen in the table, represent *identical* sounds in Persian, f. i. ث, س and ص = s, or ح and ه = h, or ذ, ز, ض and ظ = z, ت and ط = t, ا and ع = spiritus lenis. — In *Arabic*, from which language the Persian alphabet is taken, these letters represent *different* sounds, but in Persian no distinction whatever is made between them. It is therefore useless for the student to trouble about the pronunciation of arabic sounds like ح, ظ or ض.

Persian names of letters.	not connected.	connected with the preceding only.	connected with the preceding a with the following.	connected with the following only.	EXAMPLES. connected with the preceding only.	connected with the preceding a with the following.	connected with the following only.	
alif	ا	ـا	....	....	با bā	.....	.....	(see p.) spiritus lenis or long ā.
be	ب	ـب	ـبـ	بـ	شب shab	صبر sabr	بز buz	= English b.
pe	پ	ـپ	ـپـ	پـ	چپ chap	سپر sipar	پر par	= » p.
te	ت	ـت	ـتـ	تـ	دست dast	ستم sitam	تو tu	= » t.
se	ث	ـث	ـثـ	ثـ	ثالث sālis	مثل misl	ثم sum̄	= » s.
jīm	ج	ـج	ـجـ	جـ	کج kaj	هجر hijr	جا jā	= » j.
chīm	چ	ـچ	ـچـ	چـ	هیچ hīch	بچه bacha	چنك chang	= » ch in *ch*at.
he	ح	ـح	ـحـ	حـ	فتح fath	بحر bahr	حج haj	= » h.
khe	خ	ـخ	ـخـ	خـ	یخ yakh	لخت lukht	خر khar	= german ch in Sa*ch*e or Scotch in Lo*ch*.
dāl	د	ـد	....	....	بد bad	.....	.....	= English d.
zāl	ذ	ـذ	....	....	کاغذ kāghaz	.....	.....	= » z.
re	ر	ـر	....	....	خر khar	.....	.....	= Italian r (slightly rolled).
ze	ز	ـز	....	....	خز khaz	.....	.....	= English z.
je	ژ	ـژ	....	....	کژ kaj	.....	.....	= French j in *j*our or *s* in Engl measure.

				س	بس	قسم qism	سر sar	= English s in mason.
shīn	ش	ش	ش	ش	کش kash	پشم pashm	شه shah	= » sh.
sād	ص	ص	ص	ص	رقص raqs	قصد qasd	صاف sāf	= » s in mason.
zād	ض	ض	ض	ض	بعض baᶜz	خضر khizr	ضد zidd	= » z.
ta	ط	ط	ط	ط	خط khatt	بطن batn	طیر teir	= » t.
za	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	حافظ hāfiz	نظم nazm	ظلم zulm	= » z.
ᶜain	ع	ع	ع	ع	مع maᶜ	بعد baᶜd	عقل ᶜaql	= initial alif (see p. 5) i. e. spiritas lenis.
ghain	غ	غ	غ	غ	تیغ tīgh	بغل baghal	غل ghul	a very guttural g not unlike the french r grasseillée.
fe	ف	ف	ف	ف	کف kaf	سفر safar	فردا fardā	= English f.
qāf	ق	ق	ق	ق	حق haq	نقره nuqra	قرآن qurān	a very guttural k.
kaf	ك	ك	ک	ک	یك yak	بکن bikun	کن kun	= English k.
gaf	گ	ك	گ	گ	رنك rang	جگر jigar	گدا gadā	= » g in *g*arden.
lam	ل	ل	ل	ل	گل gul	معلوم maᶜlūm	لب lab	= » l.
mīm	م	م	م	م	سم sum	نماز namāz	من man	= » m.
nūn	ن	ن	ن	ن	تن tan	بنده banda	نام nām	= » n.
vāf	و	و	....	....	شو shou	.....	.....	= » v
he	ه	ه	ه	ه	نه nuh	شبها shabhā	هنر hunar	= English h and = a at the end of words.
ye	ی	ی	ی	ی	بی bī	بید bīd	یورت yūrt	= English y in *y*ard when a pure consonant; ی as a vowel see p. 5

The arabic alphabet contains no vowels proper. The three letters ا, و and ى are semivocalic consonants, viz: ا = spiritus lenis, i. e. the sound, not written in English, which introduces every initial vowel. — و = *v* and ى = *y* in *y*ard.

The vowel sounds short *a* [1]) *u* and *i* are expressed by the signs ◌َ *fat'ha* or *zabar* for *a*, ◌ُ *zamma* or *pīsh* for *u* and ◌ِ *kasra* or *zīr* for *i*.

If these signs are added to the corresponding semivocalic consonants mentioned above, they form the long vowels *ā* [2]), *ī* and *ū*, ex: جَالِينُوس Jālīnūs (Galen).

If they are added to the other consonants, they express short vowels, by which these consonants are followed ex: مُنتَظِر *muntazir*, expecting.

If a letter is to be followed by no vowel sound at all, the sign ◌ْ (*jazm* or *sukūn*) is placed over it ex: مُشْت *musht*, fist, مُنْتَظِر *muntazir*, expecting.

As a matter of fact these signs are *hardly ever used*, either in print or in writing. The consequence is, that the reader must either *know* or *guess* the vowels. This

---

1) The *fatha* ◌َ transcribed by a ◌ is a short vowel very nearly resembling the English *a* in »apple« or »hat«. The final *a* represented by ه has the same sound, and *not* that of the Italian *a* in »Roma«, as is the case in *Hindūstānī* and *Indian Persian*.

2) Long *ā* is pronounced very much like in the English word »*bard*«. Sometimes the sound is a little nearer the *o*, but never as much as in the English words »*soft*« or »*hawk*«.

difficulty however is diminished by the general rule that: ا, و and ی between consonants represent long *ā*, long *ū* and long *ī* respectively, ex: مار *mār*, snake موش *mūsh*, mouse, میز *mīz*, table.

In the transcription used in this book the long vowels, are marked with —, all vowels not bearing this sign being short.

ا in the beginning of a word, as also ع, is a mere spiritus lenis which can introduce any vowel or diphthong, ex: آسپ *asp*, horse, انسان *insān*, man, اُردو *urdū*, camp, عَـرب *ᶜArab*, Arab, عِراق *ᶜIrāq* [1]), عـرف *ᶜurf*, civil code, عین *ᶜein*, eye, اوقات *ouqāt*, times.

Long *initial* *ā* is expressed by آ (the sign ~ is called *madd*, prolongation) and by عا ex: آدم *ādam*, Adam, عادت *ᶜādat*, custom.

ا which may be sometimes replaced by ء *hamza* in the middle of a word, is in some cases a spiritus lenis as it is when initial, ex: راس *raᶜs* cape (pronounce ra-as), رئیس *ra-ᶜīs*, director. Whenever the sign ᶜ occurs in the *transcription*, a distinct hiatus must be heard, i. e. the word must be as it were, interrupted by a very short pause.

Initial و and ی are always pure consonants, ex: ورق *varag* leaf, یاور *yāvar* major.

Final short a is expressed by the letter ه ex: بنده *banda* slave, صفحه *safha* page. No *h*-sound is heard.

1) Vulgar *ʿArāq*.

If this final ه is to be followed by an ī or *i*, this is expressed by a ء *hamza*, over the ه, and the sound of a *y* is inserted, so as to avoid the hiatus, ex: صفحهٔ *safha-yī* a page, بندهٔ خدا *banda-yi khudā*, the slave of God.

The following words are spelt with a و as if they had a long ū, but pronounced with a short *u*.

دو	*du*	two
تو	*tu*	thou
خود	*khud*	self
خوردن	*khurdan*	to eat
آخور	*ākhur*	manger
خوراك	*khurāk*	food
خورش	*khurish*	stew
خورد	*khurd*	small
خورده	*khurda*	a little
خورشید	*khurshīd*	the sun
خورسند	*khursand*	happy
خوش	*khush*	pleasant

The words چو and همچو are in modern Persian pronounced *chi* and *hamchi* as.

The syllables *ān* and *ām* are frequently pronounced *ūn* and *ūm*, especially in the South of Persia ex: نان *nān* or *nūn* bread, شام *shām* or *shūm* evening.

In the following words the و is not pronounced at all:

خواب	*khāb*	sleep
خوابیدن	*khābīdan*	to sleep

In some Arabic words final ā is represented by a ی Ex: مصطفی *Mustafā*, الی *ilā* until.

خواجه	*khāja*	eunuch
خوار	*khār*	abject
خوارزم	*khārizm*	the khanate of Khiva
خواستن	*khāstan*	to desire
خواهش	*khāhish*	desire
خوان, خوانچه	*khān*, *khāncha*	a tray
خواندن	*khāndan*	to read
خواهر	*khāhar*	sister

Diphthongs.

There are two diphthongs in Persian, *ei* and *ou*, ex: حَوض *houz* (not unlike English *hose*) a tank مَیل *meil* (not unlike English *mail*) inclination.

The Consonants proper and Orthographical Signs.

The consonants require no particular explanations beyond what is said in the table of the alphabet.

The only case where the pronunciation differs from the writing is the ه at the end of the words سه *si* three, به *bi* to چه *chi* what and که *ki* who (و) where no aspiration is heard.

The ه standing for a short *a* at the end of words has been explained p. 5.

In order to show that a consonant is doubled, the sign ـّ, *tashdīd* is placed over it, ex دَرّه *darra* valley, مُحَمّد *Muhammad*.

Another orthographical sign much used in Persian is the *tanvīn* ً. It is originally the termination of arabic

accusatives, used in Persian as adverbs ex: مثلاً *masalan* for instance, غالباً *ghāliban* mostly, اتّفاقاً *ittifāqan* accidentally. The ا preceding the *tanvīn* is a short *a*.

When the ل *l* of the arabic article ال *al* is assimilated with the following consonant, which is always the case before the dentals ت ث د ذ ر ز س ش ص ض ط ظ and ن, the sign ~ *vasla* is placed over the ل ex: اَلسلام *as salām* the greeting, هارون اَلرشيد *Hārūn ar Rashīd*, جبل اَلطارق *jabal at Tāriq* the mountain of Tāriq (Gibraltar) اَلشيطان *ash Sheitān* the devil.

All orthographical signs are frequently omitted in print and usually in writing.

The Accent.

The *accent* falls on the *last* syllable of all words except certain parts of the verb and some particles which are explained below.

The only Persian noun which has the accent on the first syllable is صنّار *sánnār* a penny, the contraction of صد دينار *sad dīnār* a hundred dinars.

The following parts of the verb have the accent on the first syllable:

1) All forms beginning by the prefixes می *mī* and بـ *bi* ex: میگیرد *mígīrad* he takes بپرسم *bípursam* shall I ask?

When either *mī* or *bi* are omitted, the accent remains on the first syllable, ex: کنم *kúnam* I may do گوید *gūyad* he will say.

The accent is particularly strong on the *bi* of the Imperative ex: بزن *bízan* strike! برویم *bívavīm* let us go!

2) The *negative* forms, beginning with نه *na*, ex: نکن *ná-kun* do not! نکردم *ná-kardam* I did not نمیکنم *ná-mīkunam* I do not.

In the *past tense* the syllable, which in the third person is either the last or the only one, keeps the accent throughout all the other persons of the tense ex: فرمود *farmúd* he ordered; the other persons are: *farmúdam*, *farmúdī*, *farmúdīm*, *farmúdīd*, *farmúdand*. داد *dād* he gave; the other persons are: *dádam*, *dádī*, *dádīm*, *dádīd*, *dádand* (compare conjugation table p. 49).

All other parts of the verb have the *accent* on the *last syllable*. These are:

1) The *infinitive*, full or shortened, ex: پرسیدن *pursīdán*, پرسید *pursíd* to ask.

2) The *participles*, *present* ex: کنندہ *kunandá* doing, خوانندہ *khānandá* singing,

and *past* ex: گرفتہ *giriftá* taken, بردہ *burdá* carried off.

3) The *gerund* ex: خوردنی *khurdaní* a thing to be eaten گفتنی *guftaní* a thing to be said.

A few *Arabic* and *Persian particles* have the accent on the *first* syllable:

آیا *áyā* interrogative particle	بلی *bálī* yes
امّا *ámmā* but	لیکن *líkan* but
ولی *válī* however	یعنی *yáʿnī* that is to say.

The ī at the end of a word, when it is the *indefinite article* is not accentuated. In this way words connected with the indefinite article are to be distinguished from abstract nouns or adjectives spelt and otherwise pronoun-

ced in the same way, ex: پادشاهی *pādisháhī* a king, *pādishāhí* royal power. — دولتی *doulátī* a government, *doulatí* governmental. — شهری *sháhrī* a town, *shahrí* belonging to the town, municipal. — گدای *gadáī* a beggar, *gadāí* beggary.

There is a third ī in Persian, which may be called the *relative* ī. It connects the relative pronoun که *ki* with the preceding word. This relative ī has the accent, which makes it distinguishable from the ī of the indifinite article before mentioned, ex: شخصی که *shakhsí-ki the* person who, but *shákhsī ki a* person who اسپی که جو نخورده است *aspí ki jou nakhurda ast*, *the* horse which has eaten no barley, but *áspī ki jou na-khurda ast*, *a* horse which has eaten no barley.

A number of words are *enclytic*, i. e. they are so closely connected with the preceding word, that they have no accent of their own. These are:

1) The *suffixed pronouns* ام *am*, ات *at*, اش *ash*, مان *mān*, تان *tān*, شان *shān*, see p. 32, ex: مادرش *mādár-ash* his mother.

2) The *present* forms of the verb *to be* ام *am*, ای ī, است *ast*, ایم *īm*, اید *īd*, اند *and*, see p. 41, ex: چه ساعت است *chi sāᶜát-ast*? what is the time?

3) The short *i* called *izāfa* see p. 13.

CHAPTER II.

GRAMMAR.

The *grammar* of the Persian language is extremely simple, there being only *one* declension, *one* conjugation and *no* gender.

1. The Noun.

The *Plural* in *classical Persian* used to be ان *ān* for persons and ها *hā* for things, ex: پادشاهان *pādishāh ā n* kings, تختها *takht h ā* thrones.

Names of animals used to have their plurals formed both ways, ex: سگها *saghā* and سگان *sagān* dogs.

In *modern Persian* the plural in ان *ān* is almost obsolete and ها *hā* is generally used for persons as well as for things, ex: سرباز *sarbāz* soldier, plur: سربازها *sarbāzhā*, زن *zan* woman, plur: زنها *zanhā*, کتاب *kitāb*, book, plur: کتابها, گدا *gadā* beggar, plur: گداها.

The obsolete method of forming the plurals of Persian words in s, viz: *agān* for persons and *ajāt* for things is still in use, especially in books and official writings, ex: بنده *banda* slave, plur: بندگان *bandagān* نوشته *navishta* writing, plural: نوشتجات *navishtajāt* روزنامه *rūznāma* newspaper, plural: روزنامجات *rūznāmajāt*. — کارخانه *kārkhāna* factory, plural: کارخانجات *kārkhānajāt*. — But at the same time the modern forms are used:

بندها *bandahā*, نوشتها *navishtahā*, روزنامها *rūznāmahā*, کارخانها *kārkhānahā*.

Some arabic collective nouns in ه form their plurals in ajāt. ex: عمله *'amala* workmen, plur: عملجات *'amalajāt*.

مرد *mard* man, has three plural forms: مردها *mardhā*, men مردم *mardum* and مردمان *mardumān*, people.

The *Accusative* is formed by adding را *rā* either to the singular or to the plural, ex: سگ *sag*, dog, acc: سگرا *sagrā*, noun plur.: سگها *saghā*, plural acc: سگهارا *saghārā*, سرباز *sarbāz* soldier, acc: سربازرا *sarbāzrā*, plur. nominat. سربازها *sarbāzhā*, plur. accusative سربازهارا *sarbāzhārā*, زن *zan* woman, accus: زنرا *zanrā*, plur. nominat: زنها *zanhā*, plur. accusat: زنهارا *zanhārā*.

The accusative ending را *rā* is also added to the obsolete plurals mentioned above as well as to the arabic plurals.

The accusative ending را *rā* has the meaning of a *definite article* which otherwise does not exist in Persian. If *rā* is omitted, it leaves the word indefinite, ex: اسپرا دیدم *asprā dīdam* I saw *the* horse, but اسپ دیدم *asp dīdam* I saw *a* horse.

In order to express the *indefinite article* in the singular ی *ī* is added to the corresponding words. This *ī* is long and not accentuated, see pp. 9 and 10, ex: اسپی *aspī a* horse, خوب اسپی *khūb aspī* a good horse. If a noun is followed by an adjective, the *ī* of the indefinite article is added to the adjective ex: کوه بلندی *kūh-i bulandī* a high mountain, سگ زردی *sag-i zardī* a yellow dog.

The izāfa.

1) The *genitive* is formed by adding a short *i* called *izāfa* to the governing noun, which generally precedes the noun governed.

The *i* of the *izāfa* is either not written at all or expressed by a ـِ (kasra).

Examples of the genitive.

اسپِ شاه *asp-i Shāh*, the horse of the King کوهِ نور *kūh-i nūr* the mountain of light زنِ وزیرِ پادشاهِ ایران *zan-i vazīr-i pādishāh-i Īrān*, the wife of the minister of the King of Persia.

When the governing word ends in a vowel, the *izāfa* is pronounced *yi*, so as to avoid the hiatus, and spelt with a ی, ex: پای فیل *pā-yi fīl* the foot of the elephant, روی زمین *rū-yi zamīn*, the surface of the earth.

If this vowel is the *a* expressed by ه, the *izāfa* takes the shape of a ء (hamza) over the ه, ex: خانهٔ درویش *khāna-yi darvīsh* the house of the dervish, بندهٔ خدا *banda-yi khudā* the slave of God.

2) *Adjectives* are connected in the same way with their nouns as the governed word with the governing in the case corresponding to the English genitive, ex: اسپِ شاه *asp-i shāh* the horse of the king, اسپِ سیاه *asp-i sīāh* the black horse — کوهِ نور *kūh-i nūr* the mountain of light کوهِ بلند *kūh-i buland* the high mountain. The above examples show that for the Persians there is no difference

between the possessive case and a noun connected with an adjective.

3) If several adjectives form attributes to the same noun, they are connected by the *izāfa* unless they are connected by the conjunction و *va*, and ex: اسپِ عربیِ سیاهِ خوبی *asp-i ʿarabī-yi sīāh-i khūbī* a good black arab horse. کوهِ بلندِ سنگیِ برفدار *kūh-i buland-i sangi-yī barfdar* a high, rocky, snow-covered mountain.

4) The *izāfa* is furthermore used to form *possessive pronouns*, by connecting the personal pronouns with the governing word, in the same way as adjectives are connected with their nouns, ex: (من *man*, I) اسپِ من *asp-i man*, my horse (ما *mā* we) خانهٔ ما *khāna-yi mā* our house.

Omission of the izāfa.

The *izāfa* is *omitted* in certain *arabic genitives* [1]) when the governing and the governed word form one compound noun or express one notion.

The most frequent governing words used in this way are: صاحب *sāhib* owner, possessor, امیر or میر *amīr* or *mīr* lord, ولی *valī* lieutenant, ابن *ibn* or بن *bin* son ex: صاحب منصب *sāhib mansab*, possessor of rank, officer. صاحب قران *sāhib qarān* a Ruler over a space of 30 years. صاحب کمال *sāhib kamāl* possessor of perfection.

---

1) In *Arabic* the genitive is formed by mere *juxta*-position ex: باب *bāb* gate, ال *al* the, وادی *vādī* valley باب الوادی *bāb al vādī*, the gate of the valley, ید *yad* hand ید محمّد *yad Muhammad* the hand of Muhammad.

The great number of *arabic titles* now used in Persia are all formed in the same way, by mere juxtaposition, i. e. without the *izāfa*, ex:

صدر اعظم *sadr aʿzam* most high chief, grand vizier.

ولی عهد *valī ʿahd* lieutenant of the office, heir apparent.

ظلّ السلطان *zill as sultān* shadow of the King (title of the present Shah's eldest son).

نایب السلطنه *nāyib as saltana* lieutenant of royalty (the present Shah's third son).

بن سلطان *bin sultān* son of a king.

ولی نعمت *vali niʿmat* lord of bounty, Sovereign.

اسد الدوله *asad ad doula* lion of the state.

امین الملك *amīn al mulk* confidant of the Kingdom.

عزیز السلطان *ʿazīz as sultān* favourite of the king.

صمصام السلطنه *samsām as saltana* scimitar of the kingdom.

عزّت الدوله *ʿizzat ad doula* honour of the state } titles of princesses

عصمت الملوك *ʿismat al mulūk* chastity of kings }

امیر تومان *amīr tūmān* lord over 10,000, general.

میر پنج *mīr panj* lord over 5(000).

میر غضب *mīr ghazab* lord of wrath, executioner.

میر شکار *mīr shikār* master of the hunt.

میر آخور *mīr ākhur* lord of the manger, master of the horse.

In the same way some *turkish-persian* genitives are used without the *izāfa*, ex:

نایب چاپار *nāyib chapar* postmaster.

شاگرد چاپار *shāgird chapar* postboy.

بیگلربیگ *beiglarbeig* under governor (lit. chief of chiefs. but also with the turkish sign of the possessive case ex: بیگلر بیگی *beiglar beig-ī* chief of chiefs.

دریا بیگی *daryā beig-ī* lord of the sea, admiral

In all the examples quoted above the two words connected without the *izāfa* express *one* notion and are to be considered as compound words. When this is *not* the case, the *izāfa must be used* ex: صاحب خانه *sāhib khāna* householder but *sāhib-i khāna the* owner of *the* house صاحب منصب *sāhib mansab* an officer, but صاحبِ منصبِ سرهنگی *sāhib-i mansab-i sarhangī* the holder of the rank of a colonel.

The *other cases* are formed by prepositions as in English or French:

به *bi*, to
برای *barāyi*, for
از *az* from
با *bā* with.
پیش *pīsh*, to, (used only for persons).

The following forms of frequently used verbs should be learnt by heart. They will be necessary in order to illustrate the formation of the cases.

آمد *āmad*, came	برد *burd* took away
رفت *raft* went	آورد *āvurd* brought
گفت *guft* said	گرفت *girift* took
دید *dīd* saw	داد *dād* gave

On the following page are given a few examples which will serve to illustrate some of the foregoing rules:

سرباز اسپ برای شاه آورد	sarbāz asp barāyi Shāh āvurd.	a soldier brought a horse for the King.
سگ نان گدارا برد	sag nān-i gadā-rā burd.	the dog carried off the beggar's bread.
کشتی انگلیس بایران آمد	kashtī-yi Inglīs bi Irān āmad.	an English ship came to Persia.
وزیر از طهران رفت به فرنگستان	vazīr az Tahrān raft bi Farangistān.	the minister went from Tehran to Europe.
مرد شمشیرِ شاهرا دید	mard shamshīr-i Shāhrā dīd.	the man saw the sword of the King.
شاه پول از وزیر گرفت و بگدا داد	Shāh pūl az vazīr girift va bi gadā dād.	the King took money from the minister and gave it to the beggar.
دوستِ من پیشِ من آمد	dūst-i man pīsh-i man āmad.	my friend came to me.
دوست تو بتو چه گفت	dūst-i tu bi tu chi guft?	what did your friend say to you?
کتابرا بمن نداد	kitāb-rā bi man na dād.	he did not give me the book.
کتابی از من گرفت	kitābī az man girift.	he took a book from me.
شاه با وزیر بمسجد آمد	Shāh bā vazīr bi masjid āmad.	the King came with the minister to the mosque.
درویش از خانهٔ وزیر بحمام رفت	darvīsh az khāna-yi vazīr bi hammām raft.	the dervish went from the house of the minister to the bath.

2. Adjectives.

Adjectives generally follow nouns and in this case are joined to them by the *izāfa* (see p. 13) ex. اسپِ عربی *asp-i ᶜarabī* the arabian horse, کوهِ بلند *kūh-i buland* the high hill, دستِ راست *dast-i rāst* the right hand, پای چپ *pā-yi chap* the left foot.

To form the accusative را *rā* is added to the *adjective* only, ex. اسپِ عربی‌را *asp-i ᶜarabī-rā*, کوهِ بلند را *kūh-i buland-rā*, دستِ راست‌را *dast-i rāst-rā*, پای‌چپ را *pā-yi chap-rā*.

The termination of the plural is added to the *nouns* only, ex. اسپهای عربی *asphā-yi ᶜarabī* arabian horses, کوه‌های بلند *kūhhā-yi buland* high hills, دستهای راست *dasthā-yi rāst* right hands, پاهای چپ *pāhā-yi chap* left feet.

Examples of the plural accusative:

اسپهای عربی‌را *asphā-yi ᶜarabī-rā*
کوه‌های بلندرا *kūhhā-yi buland-rā*
دستهای راست‌را *dasthā-yi rāst-rā*
پاهای چپ‌را *pāhāyi chap-rā*

If a number of adjectives follow a noun, را *rā* is added to the last of these adjectives only, ex. قالیِ بزرگِ خوشرنگِ ترکمانی‌را *qālī-yi buzurg-i khushrang-i turkamānī-rā* the large finely coloured turkoman carpet.

A few adjectives sometimes precede the noun, which is generally followed by the indefinite article ی *i*, and in this case the *izāfa* is mostly omitted.

ex. هوای عجب *ʿajab havā-i*, (a) wonderful air خوب اسپی *khūb aspī*, a good horse.

In very few cases adjectives precede the noun *with* the *izāfa*. ex. پیرِ مرد *pīr-i mard* an old man, پیرِ زن *pīr-i zan* an old woman, پیرِ بازار *Pīr-i bāzār* the Saint's bazar, سبزِ میدان *sabz-i meidān* the green square.

Adjectives frequently precede nouns to form compounds, ex. بدبو *badbū* of bad smell, خوشرنگ *khushrang* of fine colour, سیاهبیشه *sīāhbīsha* Black Forest, سفیدکوه *Safīdkūh* White Mountain.

The *degrees of comparison* are formed by adding to the adjective:

تر *tar* for the comparative and ترین *tarīn* for the superlative.

Examples.

خوب *khūb* good خوبتر *khūbtar* better خوبترین *khūbtarīn* best.

به *bih* good بهتر *bihtar* better بهترین *bihtarīn* best.

بد *bad* bad بدتر *badtar* worse بدترین *badtarīn* worst.

بزرگ *buzurg* large بزرگتر *buzurgtar* bigger بزرگترین *buzurgtarīn* biggest.

کوچک *kūchik* small کوچکتر *kūchiktar* smaller کوچکترین *kūchiktarīn* smallest.

Than is expressed by از *az* ex. بهتر از جان *bihtar az jān* better than life, بزرگتر از فیل *buzurgtar az fīl*, bigger than an elephant.

The *superlative construction* is the same as the ge-

nitive ex. بهترین مردم *bihtarīn-i mardum* the best of men, بزرگترین پادشاهها *buzurgtarīn-i pādishāhhā* the greatest of kings (the greatest king).

3. Numerals.

1. Cardinal Numerals.

۱	یك *yak*	1
۲	دو *du*	2
۳	سه *si*	3
۴	چهار *chahār*	4
۵	پنج *panj*	5
۶	شش *shish*	6
۷	هفت *haft*	7
۸	هشت *hasht*	8
۹	نه *nuh*	9
۱۰	ده *dah*	10
۱۱	یازده *yāzdah*	11
۱۲	دوازده *davāzdah*	12
۱۳	سیزده *sīzdah*	13
۱۴	چهارده *chahārdah*	14
۱۵	پانزده *punzdah*	15
۱۶	شانزده *shunzdah*	16
۱۷	هیفده *hīvdah*	17
۱۸	هیجده *hījdah*	18
۱۹	نوزده *nuzdah*	19
۲۰	بیست *bīst*	20
۲۱	بیست و یك *bīst u yak*	21
۲۲	بیست و دو *bīst u du*	22
۲۳	بیست و سه *bīst u si*	23

۲۴	بیست و چهار	*bīst u chahār*	24
۲۵	بیست و پنج	*bīst u panj*	25
۲۶	بیست و شش	*bīst u shish*	26
۲۷	بیست و هفت	*bīst u haft*	27
۲۸	بیست و هشت	*bīst u hasht*	28
۲۹	بیست و نه	*bīst u nuh*	29
۳۰	سی	*sī*	30
۳۱	سی و یك	*sī u yak*	31
۴۰	چهل	*chihil*	40
۵۰	پنجاه	*panjāh*	50
۶۰	شصت	*shast*	60
۷۰	هفتاد	*haftād*	70
۸۰	هشتاد	*hashtād*	80
۹۰	نود	*navad*	90
۱۰۰	صد	*sad*	100
۱۰۱	صد و یك	*sad u yak*	101
۲۰۰	دویست	*davīst*	200
۲۱۱	دویست و یازده	*davīst u yāzdah*	211
۳۰۰	سی‌صد	*sīsad*	300
۴۰۰	چهارصد	*chahārsad*	400
۵۰۰	پانصد	*punsad*	500
۶۰۰	ششصد	*shishsad*	600
۷۰۰	هفتصد	*haftsad*	700
۸۰۰	هشتصد	*hashtsad*	800
۹۰۰	نهصد	*nuhsad*	900
۱۰۰۰	هزار	*hazār*	1000
۲۰۰۰	دو هزار	*du hazār*	2000
۱۰۰۰۰	ده‌هزار	*dah hazār* [1])	10 000
۱۰۰۰۰۰	صد هزار	*sad hazār*	100 000

1) ۱۰۰۰۰ is also called لك *lak*. (The Indian lak is 100 000.)

٥٠٠٠٠٠	کرور	*kurūr*	500 000
١٠٠٠٠٠٠	میلیون	*mīlīūn*	1 000 000

صدها *sadhā* hundreds, هزارها *hazārhā* thousands, یك یك *yak yak* or یك بیك *yak bi yak* one by one, یکایك *yakāyak* suddenly, دو دو *du du* or دو بدو *du bi du* by twos, etc.

جفت *juft* a pair, لنگه *linga* the other of a pair.

Rule After *cardinal numbers* the noun is employed in the *singular*, *not* in the plural, as in English ex. هفت لشگر *haft lashgar* seven armies (*not* haft lashgarhā, چهل ستون *chihil sutūn*, forty columns, پنجاه روز *panjāh rūz* fifty days.

Often, and more especially in writing, collective nouns follow the numerals, ex. دویست باب خانه *davīst bāb khāna*, 200 houses, پنج نفر فرّاش *panj nafar farrāsh*[1]) 5 footmen, یك دستگاه فنجان *yak dastgāh finjān* a set of cups, — ده رأس اسپ *dah raʿs asp* 10 horses.

چهارده رأس قاطر *chahārdah raʿs qātir*, 14 mules.
دو زنجیر فیل *du zanjīr fīl*, 2 elephants.
صد نفر شتر *sad nafar shutur*, 100 camels.
شش عراده توپ *shish ʿarrāda tūp*, 6 cannons.
یك دانه سرداری *yak dāna sardārī*, 1 coat.
دوازده عدد صندلی *davāzdah adad sandalī*, 12 chairs.
دو تا دستمال *du tā dastmāl*, 2 handkerchiefs.

In ordinary conversation نفر *nafar* is used for *persons* and generally تا *tā*, sometimes دانه *dāna* for things.

Learn the following idioms: دو تا سه دو *du si tā* two

1) It is difficult to translate the word *farrāsh*. A farrāsh may be called upon to act as housemaid or executioner.

or three; چهار پنج تا *chahār panj tā*, four or five; هفت هشت ده تا *haft*, *hasht*, *dah tā* some seven or ten (in this case نُه *nuh* 9 is always omitted.)

Ordinals.

یکم *yakum* first	هشتم *haftum* seventh
دویم *duyum* second	هشتم *hashtum* eighth
سیم *siyum* third	نهم *nuhum* nineth
چهارم *chahārum* fourth	دهم *dahum* tenth
پنجم *panjum* fifth	صدم *sadum* hundredth
ششم *shishum* sixth	هزارم *hazārum* thousandth.

Besides the Persian ordinals the *Arabic* ordinals are to a certain extent used:

اوّل *avval* first
ثانی *sānī* second
ثالث *sālis* third
رابع *rābiʿ* fourth
خامس *khāmis* fifth
سادس *sādis* sixth
سابع *sābiʿ* seventh, etc.

Of these *arabic ordinals* اوّل *avval* the first, is used in dates, ex. اوّل ماه رمضان *avval-i māh-i Ramazān* the first of the month of Ramazan.

The first day of the month is also called غرّه *ghurra* and the last day سلخ *salkh*.

The plural of اوّل *avval* is اوایل *avāyil*, which means the first days, the beginning.

The arabic ordinals are also used to distinguish so-

vereigns bearing the same name, ex. شاه عباس اول *Shāh Abbās-i avval*, Shah Abbas the First. شاه طهماسپ ثانی *Shāh Tahmāsp-i sānī*, Shah Tahmāsp II.

In *enumeration* the adverbial form of the arabic ordinals is mostly used: اولاً *avvalan* firstly, ثانیاً *sānīan* secondly, ثالثاً *sālisan* thirdly, etc.

Adverbial numbers.

These are formed by adding دفعه *daf'a*, بار *bār* or مرتبه *martaba* to the cardinals, ex. یك دفعه *yak daf'a* once, دو بار *du bār* twice, سه مرتبه *si martaba* three times.

دو باره *du bāra* means: over again, once more.

$2 \times 2 = 4$: دو تا دو چهار میشود *du tā du chahār mīshavad.*

Fractions.

$\frac{1}{2}$ نیم *nīm* or نصف *nisf*
$\frac{1}{3}$ ثلث *suls* or سه یك *si yak*
$\frac{1}{4}$ ربع *rub'* or چهار یك *chahār yak*
$\frac{1}{5}$ خمس *khums* or پنج یك *panj yak*, etc.
5% صد و پنج *sad u panj*
20% صد و بیست *sad u bīst*
20° (twenty degrees) بیست درجه *bīst daraja.*

4. Pronouns.

1) Personal pronouns.

من *man* I	ما *mā* we
تو *tu* thou	شما *shumā* you
او *ū* he, she, it	ایشان *īshān* they.

The second person singular تو *tu* thou, is used in speaking to inferiors only, especially to servants. Otherwise شما *shumā* you, is used like in English or *vous* in French.

In speaking of a person of superior rank, the plural ایشان *īshān* is used instead of the singular او *ū*.

The accusative of من *man* is مرا *marā*. Otherwise the declension of the personal pronoun is the same as that of the noun.

The personal pronoun *in the accusative* can also be expressed by adding the shorter form of the possessive pronoun to the word preceding the verb. Thus there is no distinction between the personal and the possessive pronoun in Persian.

2) Possessive pronoun, shorter form.

	Singular.	Plural.
1 person	ام *am* my, me.	مان *mān* our, us.
2 „	ات *at* thy, thee.	تان *tān* your, you.
3 „	اش *ash* his, hers, its, him.	شان *shān* their, them.

Examples of this pronoun used both as personal and as possessive:

دلم *dil-am*, *my* heart, ولم کن *vil-am kun*, let *me* go, صدات نشنیدم *sadā-at na-shanīdam* I have not heard *your* voice, صدات کردم *sadā-at kardam* I called *you*, میبینم اش *mībīnam ash* I see him, پیش اش بیار *pīsh-ash bīār* bring him forward.

These forms are also sometimes used for the *dative* (which in classical Persian was identical with the accusative), ex. نانم بده *nān-am bidih* give me bread, گفتِ شان *guft-i shān* he told them.

The *longer form* of *the possessive pronoun* is identical with the personal pronoun on page 24. ex. اسپِ من *asp-i man* my horse.

Illustration of the two forms of the possessive pronoun.

اسپم *aspam*	or	اسپِ من *asp-i man*	my horse
اسپت *asp-at*	„	اسپِ تو *asp-i tu*	thy horse
اسپش *asp-ash*	„	اسپِ او *asp-i ū*	his horse
اسپمان *asp-i mān*	„	اسپِ ما *asp-i mā*	our horse
اسپتان *asp-i tān*	„	اسپِ شما *asp-i shumā*	your horse
اسپشان *asp-i shān*	„	اسپِ ایشان *asp-i īshan*	their horse.

The former of these two forms is the more frequent one in ordinary conversation.

In order to form the *accusative*, را *rā* is added to the pronoun: اسپمرا *aspamrā* or اسپِ مرا *asp-i marā*.

To form the *plural* ها *hā* is added to the noun ex. اسپهای من *asphā-yi man* or: اسپهام *asphā-am*.

The possessive case is often expressed by مال *māl* (property) ex. اسپ مالِ من *asp māl-i man* my horse کتاب مالِ حکیم *kitab māl-i hakīm* the doctor's book.

3. *The Reflexive Pronoun* in classical Persian is خود *khud*. Though this form is sometimes used in colloquial Persian, the following forms are much more usual:

خودم *khudam* myself
خودت *khudat* thyself

خودش *khudash* himself, herself, itself
خودمان *khudimān* ourselves
خودتان *khuditān* yourselves
خودشان *khudishān* themselves.

Rule: *Personal* and *possessive* pronouns must be replaced by the *reflexive* pronoun when they refer to the same subject, ex. من خودمرا نمیشناسم *man khudamrā na-mīshanāsam* I do not know myself, اسپ خودشرا دید *asp-i khudashrā dīd* he saw his horse.

In ordinary conversation this rule is not always strictly observed, ex. میخواهم دستمرا بشورم *mīkhāham dast-am-rā bishūram* I want to wash my hands, for دستِ خودمرا *dast-i khudam-rā.*

4. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

این *īn* this آن *ān* (commonly pronounced *un*) that. When used as nouns they are declined in the ordinary way.

همین *hamīn* this same one
همان *hamān* (*hamun*) that same one
چنین *chunīn* همچنین *hamchunīn* such a one as this
چنان *chunān* همچنان *hamchunān* such a one as that
همچو *hamchu* generally pronounced *hamchi* so, such
چندین *chandīn* and چندان *chandān* so much.

5. *Relative Pronouns.*

که *ki* who, that, accusative: اورا .... که چه *chi* which.

ki .... *ūrā* or اش .... که *ki* .... *ash.* ex.

سربازکه اسپ اورا کشته بودند *sarbāz ki asp-i ūrā kushta būdand* the soldier whose horse they had killed, اسپیکه دمشرا بریدند *aspī-ki dum-ashrā burrīdand* the horse whose tail they cut off.

The *relative* pronouns کـه *ki* and چـه *chi* are often connected with the demonstrative pronouns:

اینکه *īnki*, آنکه *ānki* (*unki*), اینچه *īnchi* آنچه, *ānchi* (*unchi*). ex. اینکه رفت *īnki raft* this one who went, آنچه گفتی *ānchi guftī* that which you said.

If a noun is followed by a relative sentence which is to define it, a ی *ī* is added to that noun ex. شخصی که *shakhsí-ki* the person that, سگیرا کـه *sagírā-ki* the dog which (accus.).

This relative ī must not be confounded with the ī of the indefinite article or the ī which serves to form adjectives and abstract nouns, see pp. 12 and 13.

Note the construction of the following examples: شخصی که باو پـول داده بـودم *shakhsí-ki bi ū pūl dāda būdam* the person to whom I had given money, چـوبی که از او قاشق میـسازنـد *chūbí-ki az ū qāshuq mīsāzand* the wood out of which they make spoons.

sháhrī-ki dar ū yak faqīrī na-bāshad a town in which there is not one poor person.

6. *Interrogative pronouns.* These are identical with the relative pronouns: کـه *ki* who? and چـه *chi* what? The latter is generally followed by چیز *chīz* thing, کار *kār* business, حرف *harf* word.

کـه *ki* who?
چـه *chi*
چـه چیز *chi chīz* (thing)
چـه کار *chi kār* (business)
چـه حرف *chi harf* (word)
} what?

Among the common people چه چی *chi chī* is often used for چه چیز *chi chīz*.

Note the construction of the following sentences: این اسپ کیست *īn asp-i kī-st?* (*ki ast*) whose horse is this?

این چه حرف است *īn chi harf ast?* what word is this? (what do you mean by this?) آن مرد که بود *ān mard ki būd?* who was that man? از این چه بهتر است *az īn chi bihtar ast?* what is better than this?

کدام *kudām* which? ex: کدام شخص *kudām shakhs?* which person? کدام کتاب *kudām kitāb?* which book? چند *chand* how much? how many? چند نفر بودند *chand nafar būdand?* how many were they? این تفنگرا چند خریدی *īn tufang-rā chand kharīdī?* how much did you give for this gun?

چرا *chirā* (originally the accusative or dative of چه *chi*) why? ex. چرا نگفتی *chirā na guftī?* why did you not say (so)?

چرا *chirā* in vulgar Persian is very frequently used instead of the affirmative بلی *bálī* or آری *ārei* yes, ex. چرا — پول داری *pūl dārī? — chirā* have you any money? — yes. This is an abreviation of چرا نداشته باشم *chirā na dāshta bāsham?* why should I not have any?

کجا *kujā?* where?

کی *kei?*
چه وقت *chi vakht?* } when?

کی *kei* is also used in the meaning of *how*, ex. کی میشود *kei mīshavad?* how can it be?

Table of Indefinite Pronouns and Adverbs.

همه *hama* all

همه همه *hama hama* all together

هر یك *har yak* every one
هر کدام *har kudām*
هر که *har ki*
هر آنکه *har ān-ki* } whoever
هر کس *har kas*
هر کسیکه *har kasī-ki*
چند نفر *chand nafar* some (persons)
چند تا *chand tā* some (things)
هر چیز *har chīz*
هر چیزی *har chīzī* } everything
هر چه *har chi*
هر آنچه *har unchi*
هر چیز *har chīz* } whatever
هر چیزیکه *har chīzī-ki*
همه‌جا *hama jā* everywhere
هرجا *har jā*
هر جایکه *har jāī-ki* } whereever
هرکجا *har kujā*
هر طرف *har taraf*
بهر سمت *bi har samt* } whereever (in whatever direction)
هر سو *har sū*
هر طوریکه *har tourī-ki* in which ever way
هر وقت *har vakht* at any time
همیشه *hamīsha* always
هر روز *har rūz* every day
هر شب *har shab* every night
شب و روز *shab u rūz*
شبانه روز *shabāna rūz* } day and night
همه روزه *hama rūzà* all day long
هر دو *har du* both
بهر حال *bi har hāl* in any case, at all costs.

5. The Verb.

The *Persian verb* is particularly simple and easy to learn. There is only *one* conjugation. All tenses are formed from two fundamental parts, the *imperative* and the *infinitive*. The terminations added to these are the same in all verbs without any irregularities.

1. The auxiliary verb بودن *būdan* to be, is slightly irregular only in so far, as it has three radicals: هست *hast*, بود *būd* and باش *bāsh*.

Infinitive بودن *būdan* to be.

Indicative.

Present (weaker form).

ام *am* I am	ایم *īm* we are
ای *ī* thou art	اید *īd* you are
است *ast* he, she, it is	اند *and* they are.

Present (stronger form) [1])

هستم *hastam* I am	هستیم *hastīm* we are
هستی *hasti* thou art	هستید *hastīd* you are
هست *hast* he, she, it is	هستند *hastand* they are.

Present negative.

نیستم *nīstam* I am not	نیستیم *nīstīm* we are not
نیستی *nīstū* thou art not	نیستید *nīstīd* you are not
نیست *nīst* is not	نیستند *nīstand* they are not.

1) The stronger form is more emphatic than the weaker form ex. توی جنکل شکار است *tūyi jangal shikār ast*? Is there game in the forest? answer: هست there *is*. — وکرنه من همان خاکم‌که هستم *vagarna man hamān khāk am ki hastam* otherwise I am but the dust I (really) am. (Saadi).

Similarly words ending in a long vowel are contracted with forms of the present هستم *hastam* when followed by them, ex. ماست *māst* (for ماهست) شماست *shumā-st* (for شما است *shumā ast*).

تو *tu* (thy, thine) and است *ast* form *tust* (with a short vowel)

که *ki* (who, whose) and است *ast* form کیست *kīst*, the other forms with که *ki* are: کیستم *kīstam*, کیستی *kīstī*, کیستیم *kīstīm*, کیستید *kīstīd*, کیستند *kīstand*, ex. این شخص کیست *īn shakhs kīst*? who is this person? ما سگ کیستیم *mā sag-i kīstīm*? whose dogs are we? (idiom).

Very often this contraction is not expressed in writing, but exists none the less in pronunciation.

Preterite (French *je fus*)

بودم *būdam* I was	بودیم *būdīm* we were
بودی *būdī* thou wert	بودید *būdīd* you were
بود *būd* he, she, it was	بودند *būdand* they were.

Imperfect (French *j'étais*).

میبودم *mībūdam* I used to be
میبودی *mībūdī* thou used to be
میبود *mībūd* he, she, it used to be
میبودیم *mībūdīm* we used to be
میبودید *mībūdīd* you used to be
میبودند *mībūdand* they used to be.

Perfect.

بوده ام *būda am* I have been
بوده ٔ *būda ī* thou hast been
بوده است *būda ast* he has been

ایم بوده *būda īm* we have been
اید بوده *būda īd* you have been
اند بوده *būda and* they have been

Pluperfect.

بودم بوده *būda būdam* I had been, etc.

Future.

(formed with the auxiliary verb خواستن *khāstan* and the shortened infinitive بود *būd*)

خواهم بود *khāham būd* I shall be
خواهی بود *khāhī būd* thou wilt be
خواهد بود *khāhad būd* he will be
خواهیم بود *khāhīm būd* we shall be
خواهید بود *khāhīd būd* you will be
خواهند بود *khāhand būd* they will be.

Infinitive.

بودن *būdan* } to be.
هستن *hastan* }

Past participle.

بوده *būda* been.

Imperative.

باش *bāsh*! be! The other persons of the imperative are identical with the corresponding persons of the subjunctive present.

Subjunctive.

Present.

باشم *bāsham* I may be	باشیم *bāshīm* we may be
باشی *bāshī* thou mayest be	باشید *bāshīd* you may be
باشد *bāshad* he may be	باشند *bāshand* they may be.

Imperfect.

میباشم *mībāsham* I might be
میباشی *mībāshī* thou mightest be
میباشد *mibāshad* he might be
میباشیم *mībāshīm* we might be
میباسید *mībāshīd* you might be
میباشند *mībāshand* they might be.

The *Pluperfect* of the *Subjunctive* is expressed by بودم *būdam*, میبودم *mībūdam*, or بوده باشم *būda bāsham*. See special usages of the tenses p. 43.

The *Optative* باد *bād* may he (she or it) be, is used in phrases expressing a wish e. g. عمرت دراز باد *ʿumrat dirāz bād!* may your life be long! مبارك باد *mubārak bād!* may it be blessed!

2. The *auxiliary verb* شدن *shudan*, to become, is a regular verb and as such forms its indicative and subjunctive present from the imperative شو *shou*, while all the other parts are derived from the shortened infinitive شد *shud*. The و of the imperative شو is pronounced *v* when a vowel is added, e. g. شویم *shavīm*, شوند *shavand*.

Indicative.

Present.

میشوم *mīshavam* I become
میشوی *mīshavī* thou becomest
میشود *mīshavad* he becomes
میشویم *mīshavīm* we become
میشوید *mīshavīd* you become
میشوند *mīshavand* they become.

Preterite (French *je devins*).

شدم *shudam* I became	شدیم *shudīm* we became
شدی *shudī* thou becamest	شدید *shudīd* you became
شد *shud* he became	شدند *shudand* they became.

Imperfect (French *je devenais*).

میشدم *mīshudam* I became
میشدی *mīshudī* thou becamest
میشد *mīshud* he became
میشدیم *mīshudīm* we became
میشدید *mīshudīd* you became
میشدند *mīshudand* they became.

Perfect.

شده ام *shuda am* I have become
شده ٔ *shuda ī* thou hast become
شده است *shuda ast* he has become
شده ایم *shuda īm* we have become
شده اید *shuda īd* you have become
شده اند *shuda and* they have become.

Pluperfect.

شده بودم *shuda būdam* I had become
شده بودی *shuda būdī* thou hadst become
شده بود *shuda būd* he had become
شده بودیم *shuda būdīm* we had become
شده بودید *shuda būdīd* you had become
شده بودند *shuda būdand* they had become.

Future.

خواهم شد *khāham shud* I shall become
خواهی شد *khāhī shud* you will become
خواهد شد *khāhad shud* he will become

خواهیم شد *khāhīm shud* we shall become
خواهید شد *khāhīd shud* you will become
خواهند شد *khāhand shud* they will become.

Infinitive.

شدن *shudan* to become.

Present participle.

شونده *shavanda* becoming (hardly ever used).

Past Participle.

شده *shuda* become.

Gerund.

شدنی *shudanī* what ought to become.

Subjunctive.

Present.

شوم *shavam* [1]) I may become
شوی *shavī* thou mayest become
شود *shavad* he may become
شویم *shavīm* we may become
شوید *shavīd* you may become
شوند *shavand* they may become.

The *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive* is identical with the Imperfect or the Preterite of the Indicative.

The Pluperfect of the Subjunctive and of the Indicative are also identical, شده بودم *shuda būdam.*

The Regular Verb.

All infinitives end either in دن *dan* or in تن *tan.*

1) or بشوم *bishavam*, see p. 44.

In order to conjugate a verb, it is necessary to know its *infinitive* and its *imperative.*

The imperatives of all verbs in یدن *īdan* are obtained by cutting off this ending e. g. Infin: پرسیدن *pursīdan* to ask, imperative: پرس *purs!* ask!

From the *Imperative* are derived:

1) the Present of the Indicative, by prefixing the syllable می *mī* and adding the terminations م- *am*, ی *ī*, د- *ad*, etc. میپرسم *mī-purs-am*, میپرسی *mī-purs-ī*, etc.

2) the Present of the Subjunctive, by prefixing the syllable بـ *bi* and adding the same personal terminations: بپرسم *bi-purs-am*, بپرسی *bi-purs-ī*, etc.

All other forms are derived from the *shortened infinitive* i. e. the infinitive less the ending ن *an*, ex: پرسیدم *pursīd-am*, پرسیدی *pursīd-ī*, etc. — گفتن *guftan*, to speak, shortened infinitive, گفت *guft*, preterite, گفتم *guft-am*, etc.

Paradigm of the Regular Verb.

Active Voice.

Radicals { *Infinitive:* گرفتن *giriftan* to seize, to take. *Imperative:* گیر *gīr!* take! [1]).

Indicative.

Present.

میگیرم *mīgīram* I take	میگیریم *mīgīrīm* we take
میگیری *mīgīrī* thou takest	میگیرید *mīgīrīd* you take
میگیرد *mīgīrad* he takes	میگیرند *mīgīrand* they take.

1) In colloquial Persian the form بگیر *bigīr* is always used, instead of گیر *gīr.*

Preterite (French *je pris*).

گرفتم *giriftam* I took	گرفتیم *giriftīm* we took
گرفتی *giriftī* thou tookest	گرفتید *giriftīd* you took
گرفت *girift* he took	گرفتند *giriftand* they took.

Imperfect (French *je prenais*).

میگرفتم *mīgiriftam* I took or used to take
میگرفتی *mīgiriftī* thou tookest
میگرفت *mīgirift* he took
میگرفتیم *mīgiriftīm* we took
میگرفتید *mīgiriftīd* you took
میگرفتند *mīgiriftand* they took.

Perfect.

گرفته ام *girifta-am* I have taken
گرفتهٔ *girifta-ī* thou hast taken
گرفته است *girifta ast* he has taken
گرفته ایم *girifta-īm* we have taken
گرفته اید *girifta-īd* you have taken
گرفته اند *girifta and* they have taken.

Pluperfect.

گرفته بودم *girifta būdam* I had taken
گرفته بودی *girifta būdī* thou hadst taken
گرفته بود *girifta būd* he had taken
گرفته بودیم *girifta būdīm* we had taken
گرفته بودید *girifta būdīd* you had taken
گرفته بودند *girifta būdand* they had taken.

Future.

خواهم گرفت *khāham girift* I shall take
خواهی گرفت *khāhī girift* thou will take

خواهد گرفت *khāhad girift* he will take
خواهیم گرفت *khāhīm girift* we shall take
خواهید گرفت *khāhīd girift* you will take
خواهند گرفت *khāhand girift* they will take.

Infinitive.

گرفتن *giriftan* to take.

Present Participle (rarely used).

گیرنده *gīranda* one who is taking.

Past Participle.

گرفته *girifta* taken.

Gerund.

گرفتنی *giriftanī* what must be taken.

Imperative.

بگیر *bigīr!* take! (obsolete: گیر *gīr*). The other persons of the Imperative are identical with the corresponding forms of the Subjunctive.

Subjunctive.

بگیرم *bigīram* I may take
بگیری *bigīrī* thou mayest take
بگیرد *bigīrad* he may take
بگیریم *bigīrīm* we may take
بگیرید *bigīrīd* you may take
بگیرند *bigīrand* they may take.

The *past. tenses* of the *Subjunctive* are identical with the past tenses of the Indicative. The *Perfect of the Subjunctive* is گرفته باشم *girifta bāsham*. See: Special usages of tenses p. 43.

Passive Voice.

The passive voice is formed by adding the auxiliary verb شدن *shudan* to the past participle.

Indicative.

Present.

گرفته میشوم *girifta mīshavam* I am taken, etc.

Preterite (French *je fus pris*).

گرفته شدم *girifta shudam* I was taken, etc.

Imperfect (French *j'étais pris*).

گرفته میشدم *girifta mīshudam* I was taken, etc.

Perfect.

گرفته شده ام *girifta shuda am* I have been taken.

Pluperfect.

گرفته شده بودم *girifta shuda būdam* I had been taken.

Future.

گرفته خواهم شد *girifta khāham shud* I shall be taken.

Infinitive.

گرفته شدن *girifta shudan* to be taken.

Past Participle.

گرفته شده *girifta shuda* having been taken.

Imperative.

گرفته شو *girifta shou* be taken.

Subjunctive.

Present.

گرفته شوم *girifta shavam* I may be taken.

The *past tenses* of the *Subjunctive* are identical with those of the Indicative.

All Persian verbs are formed in the same way as گرفتن *giriftan*, by adding the verbal terminations to the two radical forms viz. the shortened infinitive and the imperative without به *bi*.

In the so called *irregular verbs* the irregularity consists only in the infinitive and imperative being derived from different roots, as دادن *dādan* to give, imperative: ده *dih*, or دیدن *dīdan* to see, imperative: بین *bīn*. Otherwise they offer no irregularity, the tenses being formed as in the case of regular verbs.

Thus in order to form all its parts, it is necessary to know the *infinitive* and the *imperative* of a verb, e. g. the verb *to see:* shortened infinitive: دید *dīd*, imperative: بین *bīn*, present: میبینم *mībīnam*, preterite: دیدم *dīdam*, subjunctive present: ببینم *bibīnam*, etc.

All verbs whose imperatives end in a long vowel (*ā* or *ū*) insert a ی *y* between these radical vowels and the termination, e. g.: گفتن *guftan* to say, imperative: گو *gū*, present: میگویم *mīgūyam*. نمودن *namūdan*, imperative: نما *namā*, present: مینمایم *mīnamāyam*.

In the same way verbs beginning with a vowel insert a ی *ī* between the prefix به *bi* and the initial vowel, thus giving the sound of *ī*, e. g.: آمدن *āmadan* to come, imperative: آ *ā* and بیا *bīā*. Mark the forms

showing this inserted ی (*y* and *ī*) in the following couplet of *Saadī:*

گفته بودم چون بیایی غم دل با تو بگویم
چه بگویم که غم از دل برود چون تو بیایی

Gufta būdam chun bīāyī gham-i dil hā tu bigūyam,
Chi bigūyam, ki gham az dil biravad chūn tu bīāyī.

I had meant when thou shouldst come, to tell thee the sorrow of my heart. What shall I say, since sorrow flees from my heart when thou comest.

Obsolete Parts of the Verb.

Some parts of the verb are almost obsolete in modern Persian and are only occasionally used in speaking. These are:

1) The subjunctive بوم *buvam* I might be, for which باشم *bāsham* is used.

2) The negative imperative مه *ma*, ex.: مگو *magū* do not say مگیر *magīr* do not take. (In classical Persian the distinction between the two negatives مه *ma* and نه *na* is kept up exactly as in Hindustani: مت آؤ *mat āo*, do not come, and نه آیا هی *na āyā hai* he did not come). In modern Persian the negative نه *na* is almost exclusively used: نگو *na-gū* do not speak, نگیر *na-gīr* do not take.

3) The *present participle* is almost obsolete. When it is used it mostly has the meaning of a noun or adjective, e. g.: بخشنده *bakhchanda* gracious.

4) The present participle in ان *ān* is only used in phrases like the following: صحبت کنان *suhbat kunān*

conversing, لند لند کنان *lund lund kunān* murmuring, کشان کشان *kashān kashān* dragging.

Special usages of Tenses.

The *Preterite* is used in narrating events which follow close on one another. Whenever the narration is interrupted by a description or a simultaneous action, the *Imperfect* is used, as in the following example: بشهر رسیدیم بازار رفتیم شخصی صدا کرد *bi shahr rasīdīm, bāzār raftīm, shakhsī sadā kard*, we reached the town, we went to the market, somebody shouted. In this case the three actions follow one another. But in the following sentence: بشهر رسیدیم بازار رفتیم شخصی صدا میکرد *bi shahr rasīdīm, bāzār raftīm, shakhsī sadā mīkard* we reached the town, we went to the market, someone was shouting, — the third action took place either simultaneously with or before the second one. The *preterite* corresponds with the French *passé défini* and the *imperfect* with the French *imparfait*.

Secondly the *Imperfect* is used to denote the duration or frequency of an action, ex. شخصی طوطی را میپروریدند *shakhsī tūtīrā mīparvarīd* a man was bringing up a parrot (duration) وقت صبح قران میخواند *vakat-i subh qurʿān mīkhānd* in the morning he used to read the Koran (frequency).

Thirdly the *Imperfect* is used to denote actions which are not real, but only supposed (Subjunctive), ex. شما اگر میامدید *shumā mīāmadīd?* would you have come? باران میامد خیلی بد میگذشت *agar bārān mīāmad, kheilī bad mīguzasht*, if it had rained it would have been very disagreable.

In the language of the common people the *imperfect* is sometimes used instead of the present tense, both in the indicative and in the subjunctive mood, ex.: چه میخواستید *chi mīkhāstīd?* or چه چی میخواستید *chi chī*[1] *mīkhāstīd?* what do you want? — تا میشنیدند *tā mīshanīdand* for تا میشنوند *tā mīshanavand*, that they may hear.

Irregularities in the use of می *mī* and بـ *bi* are not unfrequent, but ought not to be imitated.

بودم *būdam* and باشم *bāsham* do not take the prefix می *mī*, e. g.: اگر بودم *agar būdam* if I was. اگر باشم *agar bāsham* if I were. اگر بوده باشم *agar būda bāsham* if I had been. Both forms شوم *shavam* and بشوم *bishavam* are in use.

داشتن *dāshtan* when it means *to have* never takes the prefix می *mī*, but only when it means *to keep, to hold*, ex.: پول دارم *pūl dāram* I have money; but پولرا نگاه میدارم *pūlrā nigāh mīdāram*, I keep the money.

As داشتن *dāshtan*, *to have* takes neither می *mī* nor بـ *bi*, there is no difference between the Indicative and Subjunctive present. In order to avoid this identity, the *perfect* of the subjunctive is used instead of the present, ex.: داشته باشم *dashta bāsham* I *may* have.

When خواستن *khāstan* means *to wish*, *to want*, the prefix می *mī* may *not* be omitted. The present خواهم *khāham* (without *mī*) has the meaning of *I shall* and is used to form the future, ex. خواهم گفت *khāham guft* I shall say, میخواهم بگویم *mīkhāham bigūyam* I want to say.

---

1) The common people often use *chī* for *chīz* چیز thing.

برخاستن *barkhāstan* to rise, برداشتن *bardāshtan* to lift and برگشتن *bargashtan* to return, take the prefix می *mī* after بر *bar*, ex. برمیخیزم *barmīkhīzam* I rise, برمیگردیم *barmīgardīm* we return. The prefix به *bi* in these verbs is omitted altogether, ex.: برخیز *barkhīz!* rise! اگر برگردم *agar bargardam*, if I return. In the same way the verbs composed with در *dar* have the *mī* and *bi* after the preposition. These verbs are: در کردن *dar kardan* to empty, در آمدن *dar āmadan* to get out, در آوردن *dar āvurdan* to bring out and در رفتن *dar raftan* to escape, ex.: چوب پنبه در بیار *chūb-i pamba dar bīār* pull out the cork, توپ در میکنند *tūp dar mīkunand* they are emptying (firing) a cannon [1]).

The *shortened infinitive* (without *an*) is used:

1) with خواهم *khāham* (Future).

2) after the *impersonal verbs:*

میتوان *mītavān* it is possible
میشود *mīshavad* it is possible
میشد *mīshud* it was possible
باید *bāyad* it is necessary
بایست *bāyist* it was necessary

and their *negatives*, ex.: کمان رستم نمیتوان کشید *kamān-i Rustam na-mītavān kashīd*, it is impossible to draw Rustam's bow.

The *Subjunctive* is always used after میخواهم *mīkhāham* I want and میتوانم *mītavānam* I can, ex.: میخواهم

1) Verbs composed with وا *vā* follow the same analogy ex وا ایستادن *vā īstādan* to stop, stand still, imperat. وا ایست *vā īst!* stop! — وا گذاشتن *vā gusāshtan* to leave to, وا کردن *vā kardan* to open.

نان بخورم *mīkhāham nun bikhuram* I want to eat bread, نمیتوانم پا شوم *namītavānam pā shavam* I cannot rise.

The Subjunctive mood is generally employed when an *intention*, a *desire*, a *condition* or a *doubt* is to be expressed. It is immaterial in such cases, whether the conjunctions تا *tā*, تاکه *tā ki*, so that, اگر *agar*, if, کاش *kāsh*, would that! are added or not. These conjunctions are naturally often omitted in a language remarkable for its extreme terseness of expression.

Examples of the use of the Subjunctive.

ببینم *bibīnam* let me see

تا ببینم *tā bibīnam* that I may see

کاش ببینم *kāsh bibīnam!* would I might see!

بگو بیاید *bigū bīāyad* tell him to come

باشد *bāshad* let it be.

برد بپوشد *burd bipūshad* he took it away to put it on

هر کتابیرا بگویند *har kitābīrā bigūyand* whatever book they might name

بده بخورم *bidih bikhuram* give (me something) that I may eat

دادم درست کنند پس بگیرم *dādam durust kunand, pas bigīram* I gave it them to repair that I might then take it back.

Causal Form.

The *causal verb* is formed by adding اندن *āndan* or انیدن *ānīdan* to the imperative root, ex. ترس *tars* fear ترساندن *tarsāndan* ترسانیدن *tarsānīdan* to frighten رو *rou* go, روانـدن *ravāndan* or روانیدن *ravānīdan* to cause to go.

دو *dou*, run. دواندن *davāndan* or دوانیدن *davānīdan* to put to a gallop (a horse). The causal form نشاندن *nishāndan* to cause to sit down, to seat, from نشستن *nishastan* to sit, is irregular.

Compound Verbs.

In modern Persian the use of simple verbs is very limited. The original simple verbs have mostly been replaced by an auxiliary verb joined to a noun or adjective. These latter are not unfrequently arabic, especially the abstract nouns.

The verbs mostly used as auxiliaries are the following:

کردن *kardan* (imperat کن *kun*) to do
نمودن *namūdan* (نما *namā*) to show, to do
شدن *shudan* (شو *shou*) to become
بودن *būdan* (باش *bāsh*) to be
زدن *zadan* (زن *zan*) to strike
خوردن *khurdan* (خور *khur*) to eat, to be struck [1])
دادن *dādan* (دِه *dih*) to give
گرفتن *giriftan* (گیر *gīr*) to take, to seize, to begin
آوردن *āvurdan* (آر *ār*) to bring
بردن *burdan* (بر *bar*) to take off, to carry
رسیدن *rasīdan* (رس *ras*) to arrive
رساندن *rasāndan* (رسان *rasān*) to make arrive, to cause

---

1) The passive voice of all verbs meaning: to hit, to knock, to strike, to throw, can be expressed by خوردن *khurdan*, ex.: زخم زدن *zakhm zadan* to strike a wound, passive زخم خوردن *zakhm khurdan* to be wounded. In a similar way the following expressions are used تکان خوردن *takān khurdan* to receive a push, زمین خوردن *zamīn khurdan* to fall on the ground, etc.

بستن *bastan* (بند *band*) to tie
افتادن *uftādan* (افت *uft*) to fall
انداختن *andākhtan* (انداز *andāz*) to throw
نهادن *nihādan* (نه *nih*) to place, to put
داشتن *dāshtan* (دار *dār*) to have, to hold
خواستن *khāstan* (خواه *khāh*) to wish, to want
کشیدن *kashīdan* (کش *kash*) to draw, to pull, to suffer
آمدن *āmadan* (آ *ā*) to come
رفتن *raftan* (رو *rou*) to go
ساختن *sākhtan* (ساز *sāz*) to make
دیدن *dīdan* (بین *bīn*) to see
فرمودن *farmūdan* (*farmā*) to order (used in speaking of anything done by superiors)
یافتن *yāftan* (یاب *yāb*) to find.

6. Prepositions.

The *Prepositions* form the only difficult chapter in Persian Grammar. The difficulty is caused by the fact that in cases where the classical language demands their use, modern Persian frequently discards them or else replaces them by various idiomatic expressions. The student would do well to commit the following examples to memory and to carefully observe the way in which the prepositions are used in the dialogues and Persian text given in this book.

The *original* and partly obsolete *prepositions* will be marked by brackets [ ]. They are *not* followed by the *izāfa*.

The words which, in the language as spoken at the present day, replace the original prepositions, are mostly

concrete nouns like رو *rū* face, سر *sar* head, پهلو *pahlū* side, etc.

The secondary prepositions, which are really nouns, require the *izāfa* to connect them with the word they govern ex: روی میز *rū-yi mīz* on the table (surface of the table) پشتِ پرده *pusht-i parda* behind the curtain (back of the curtain).

Very frequently however the preposition is left out altogether:

1) [در *dar*
تو *tū*
میان *mīān* (middle)
در میان *dar mīān*
داخل *dākhil* (entering)
اندرون *andarūn* (inside)
رو *rū* (face)
به *bi*
} in, into, (at, on)

Of the above equivalents of the English prepositions *in*, *into*, etc. تو *tū* and the leaving out of the preposition are the most common.

در *dar* is mostly used with names of *towns* and *countries*, with *dates* or in connection with other prepositions conveying the same meaning.

Examples:

توی شیشه *tū-yi shīsha*, in (into) the bottle.
در طهران *dar Tahrān*, at Teheran.
در شهر *dar shahr*, in town.
در زمانِ خاقانِ مغفور *dar zamān-i Khāqān-i maghfūr*, in the days of the deceased monarch.

در روز عید *dar rūz-i īd*, on the day of the festival.

تفنگ دستِ او بود *tufang dast-i ū būd*, the gun was in his hand.

تبرزین در دست داشت *tabarzīn dar dast dāsht*, he had an axe in his hand.

در هوا *dar havā*, in the air.

روی هوا *rū-yi havā* in the air.

میانِ دریا *mīān-i daryā* in the sea.

در میانِ کاغذ *dar mīān-i kāghaz* in paper (wrapt).

روی رختِ خواب *rū-yi rakht-i khāb* in bed.

اندرونِ اوطاق *andarūn-i utāq* in (side) the room.

سوارِ کالسکه *savār-i kālaska* in a carriage.

بغلِ او *baghal-i ū* in his arms.

خانهٔ حکیم *khāna-yi hakīm* in the house of the doctor.

در نزدیکی سراپرده *dar nazdīkī-yi sarāparda* in the neighbourhood of the Royal tents.

رکاب شاه *rikāb-i shāh* } in the King's
در رکاب شاه *dar rikāb-i shāh* } retinue.

بقایق نشسته *bi qāiq nishasta* sitting in a boat.

بزمین فرود میرود *bi zamīn furūd mīravad* it penetrates into the earth.

اموالی که داخل ایران میشود *amvālī-ki dākhil-i Irān mīshavad* goods which are imported into Persia.

2) [بر *bar*]
رو *rū* (face)
سر *sar* (head)
سوار *savār* (riding)
سوار به *savār bi* (riding)
بین *bein* between
در بین *dar bein* between
بالا *bālā* above
دربالا *dar bālā* above

on, upon, over, across.

on, upon, over, across.

[بر *bar*] is hardly ever used alone in modern conversation.

Examples.

پلی بر روی رودخانه ساخته بودند *pulī bar rū-yi rūdkhāna sākhta būdand* They had built a bridge across the river.

پلی سرِ رودخانه ساخته بودند *pulī sar-i rūdkhāna sākhta būdand* They had built a bridge across the river.

پادشاه روی تخت نشست *pādishāh rū-yi takht nishast* The King sat down on the throne.

روی صندلی *rū-yi sandalī* on a chair.

روی دریا *rū-yi daryā* on the sea.

سرِ میز *sar-i mīz* on the table.

زینی که سرِ اسپ بود *zīnī-ki sar-i asp būd* the saddle that was on the horse.

سرِ تاخته اسپ *sar-i tākhta asp* on a galloping horse.

خاکستر سرِ آتش بود *khākistar sar-i ātash būd* there were ashes on the fire.

صاحب منصب سوارِ اسپ بود *sāhib mansab savār-i asp būd* an officer was riding on a horse.

سوارِ شتر *savār-i shutur* on a camel.

سوارِ کشتی *savār-i kashtī* on board ship.

بینِ راه , دربینِ راه *bein-i rāh*, *dar bein-i rāh* on the way.

برف زمین مانده بود *barf zamīn mānda būd* snow had remained on the ground.

از رودخانه گذشتیم *az rūdkhāna guzashtīm* we went across the river.

از تمام ایران گذشتیم *az tamām-i Irān guzashtīm* we went across all Persia.

3) [به *bi*], ظرف *taraf*, سمت *samt*, بسمت *bi samt*, سو *sū*, رو به *rū bi* } to, towards.

به *bi* is often left out when it is the equivalent of English *to*, before names of places. ex منزل رفت he went *to* the house. In the language of the common people it is omitted also when it stands for the dative, ex: بده من *bidih man* give me, instead of: بمن بده *bidih bi man*.

The various ways in which به *bi* and its equivalents are employed, may be seen in the following examples:

کتابرا بمن بده *kitābrā bi man bidih*
کتابرا بده من *kitābrā bidih man* } give me the book.

بکالسکه *bi kālaska* by carriage.

باردو رسیدیم *bi urdū rasīdīm* we came to the camp.

بشیراز *bi Shīrāz* to Shiraz.

بقدر یك انگشت *bi qadr-i yak angusht* one finger's breadth.

باب *bi āb* with water.

باحتیاط *bi ihtīāt* with care.

بپنج تومان میفروشم *bi panj tūmān mīfurūsham* I sell it for 5 tumans.

پنج تومان میفروشم *panj tūmān mīfurūsham* I sell it for 5 tumans.

بصرفِ جیبِ خودِ مان *bi sarf-i jīb-i khūd-i mun* from our own pocket.

طرفِ کوهستان *taraf-i kūhistān* towards the mountains.

بسمت اردو *bi samt-i urdū* towards the camp.

سوی منزل *sū-yi manzil* towards the station.

رو به بالا *rū bi bālā* upwards.

برو منزل *birou manzil*, go home.

طهران رفت *Tahrān raft*, he went to Tehran.

کنار دریای خزر رسیدیم *kanār-i Daryā-yi Khazir rasīdīm* we came to the shore of the Caspian Sea.

بازار میروی *bāzār mīravī*? are you going to the bazaar?

4) [با *bā*] | with, by.
همراه *hamrāh* (same way) |

Examples.

اهل ایران بادست میخورند *ahl-i Irān bā dast mīkhurand* The people of Persia eat with their hands.

فرنکی‌ها با کارد و چنگال میخورند *Farangīhā bā kārd u changāl mīkhurand* the Europeans eat with knife and fork.

حکیمرا همراه بیار *hakīmrā hamrāh bīār* bring the doctor with you.

چند نفر همراه شاه فرنگستان رفتند *chand nafar hamrāh-i Shāh Farangistān raftand?* how many persons went with the Shah to Europe?

برادرم همراهم بود *barādar-am hamrāh-am būd*, my brother was with me.

همراه قافله رفتم *hamrāh-i qāfila raftam* I went *with* the caravan.

باقافله رفتم *bā qāfila raftam* I went *by* caravan.

با جان و دل *bā jān u dil* with heart and soul.

هرچه میشود بشود با خداست *har chi mīshavad bishavad, bā Khudā-st*, come what may, it is "with God".

با این همه علم باز خراست *bā īn hama ʿilm bāz khar ast* notwithstanding all this knowledge, he is an ass.

5) [بی *bī* / بدون *bidūn* } without.

بی دوربین *bī dūrbīn* without a telescope.

بی زحمت *bī zahmat* without trouble.

بدون اطلاع من بیرون نرو *bidūn-i ittilāʿ-i man bīrūn na-rou* without my knowledge do not go out.

با *bā* and بی *bī* are much used to form compound *adjectives*, and بی *bī* also to form *nouns* and *adverbs* ex:

با صفا *bā safā* fine, lovely

بااطلاع *bā ittilāʿ* endowed with knowledge.

بامصرف *bā masraf* useful.

بی‌صفا *bī safā* ugly.

بی اطلاع *bī ittilāʿ* ignorant.

بی مصرف *bī masraf* useless.

بی‌ادبی *bīadabī* incivility.

بی‌ادبانه *bīadabāna* impolitely.

6) [جز *juz*]
الا *illā*
بجز *bi juz*
غیر از *gheir az*
باستثنا *bi istisnā*
} except, besides.

Examples.

غیر از من کسی نمیداند بجز دو نفر از دوستهای من *gheir az man kasī namīdānad bi juz du nafar az dūsthā-yi man* besides myself nobody knows it, except two of my friends.

نیست خدا الا خدا *nīst khudā illā khudā* there is no God but God.

همه کس از این کار راضی اند باستثنای بنده *hama kas az īn kār rāzī and, bi istisnā-yi banda* Everybody is pleased with this affair, except myself (*lit.* the slave).

7) [از *az*
از راه *az rāh* by way of
از رو *az rū* from, according to, (French *selon*)
} from, out of, by, of, (for)

از اصفهان آمدم *az Isfahān āmadam* I came from Isfahan.

این اسپ از دست میرود *īn asp az dast mīravad* this horse gets out of hand.

این کتاب از سعدی است *īn kitāb az Saʿdī-st* this book is by Saadi.

از راه التفات *az rāh-i iltifāt* by way of kindness.

از روی کتاب خوشخط مشق میکنم *az rū-yi kitāb-i khush-khatt mashq mīkunam* I am doing exercises from a well written book.

جمعیت زیاد از مرد و زن *jam^{c}iat-i zīād az mard u zan* a large crowd of men and women.

از جان خودت نمیترسی *az jān-i khud-at na-mītarsī*? do you not fear for your life?

8) [تا *tā*]
[الی *ilā*] (arabic)
تا به *tā bi*
} to, up to, until.

Examples.

از طهران تا اصفهان چند فرسخ راه است *az Tahrān tā Isfahān chand farsakh rāh ast*? How many farsakhs is it from Tehran to Isfahan?

ببین تفاوتِ راه از کجاست تا بکجا *bibīn tafāvut-i rāh az kujā-st tā bi kujā* see the difference (distance) of the way from where to where (Hafiz).

معطّلم تا پول برسد *muattal-am tā pūl birasad* I am waiting till the money comes in.

تا ببینیم *ta bibīnīm* until we may see.

از طهران الی قزوین بیست و پنج فرسخ راه است *az Tahrān ilā Qazvīn bīst u panj farsakh rāh ast* from Tehran to Kazvīn the distance is 25 farsakhs.

از صبح تا شام *az subh tā shām* from morning till night.

9) زیر *zīr*
بزیر *bi zīr*
در زیر *dar zīr*
پا *pā* (foot)
پایین *pāīn* (at the foot)
دامن *dāman* (skirt)
} under, below, down, at the bottom of.

Examples.

زیرِ درخت *zīr-i dirakht* under a tree.

زیرِ لب حرف نزن *zīr-i lab harf na-zan* do not speak under your lip (indistinctly).

در زیرِ ده *dar zīr-i dih* below the village.

دامنِ کوه *dāman-i kūh* on the skirts of the mountain.

پای منار *pā-yi manār* at the foot of the minaret (below the minaret).

پایینِ کوچه *pāīn-i kūcha* at the bottom of the street.

سرِ خودشرا بزیر انداخت *sar-i khudash-rā bi zīr andākht* he let his head sink.

10) از لا *az lā* through, across.

Examples.

چادرِ شمارا از لای درختها دیدم *chādur-i shumā-rā az lā-yi dirakhthā dīdam* I saw your tent across the trees.

گلوله از لای نیها بشکار خورد *gulūla az lā-yi neihā bi shikār khurd* The bullet hit the game through the reeds.

11) بیرون *bīrūn*, خارج *khārij* } outside.

Examples.

بیرون شهر *bīrūn-i shahr*, خارج شهر *khārij-i shahr* } outside the town.

12) نزد *nazd* (almost obsolete except in writing)
نزدیك *nazdīk*
نزدیکی *nazdīkī*
پهلو *pahlū* (side)
دم *dam* (breath)
لب *lab* (lip)
بیخ *bīkh* (root)
} by, close by, near, next to.

نزدیك شهر *nazdīk-i shahr*
نزدیك بشهر *nazdīk bi shahr*
نزدیکی شهر *nazdīkī-yi shahr*
} near the town.

پهلوی من بنشین *pahlū-yi man binshīn* sit by me.

دم دروازه *dam-i darvāza* near the gate.

لب دریا *lab-i daryā* near the sea (on the sea-shore).

طهران دامن کوه البرز واقع است *Tahrān dāman-i kūh-i Alburz vāqiᶜ ast* Tahrān is situated at the foot of the Elburz mountains.

صندوق را بیخ دیوار بگذار *sandūq rā bīkh-i dīvār bugzār* place the box quite close to the wall.

13) پیش *pīsh*
قبل از *qabl az*
در پیش *dar pīsh*
پیشِ رو *pīsh-i rū* (before the face)
رو برو *rū bi rū* (face to face)
جلو *jilou* (bridle)
} before, in front of.

Examples.

بیار پیش *bīār pīsh* bring (him) forward.

پیش از عید *pīsh az ᶜīd*
قبل از عید *qabl az ᶜīd*
} before the festival.

درّا پیش کن *darrā pīsh kun* shut the door.

پیشِ روی قاضی *pīsh-i rūyi qāzī*
در پیشِ قاضی *dar pīsh-i qāzī* } before the judge.

رو بروی من گفت *rū bi rū-yi man guft* he said so before me.

پیشخدمت جلو رفت *pīshkhidmat jilou raft* the servant went in front.

فانوسرا جلو ببر *fānūsrā jilou bibar* carry the lantern to the front.

14) پس *pas* (back)
پس از *pas az*
بعد از *baʿd az* } after
عقب *ʿaqab* (heel)
پی *pei* (heel)
} back, backwards, after.

Examples.

پس از عیدِ نوروز *pas az ʿīd-i nourūz*
بعد از عیدِ نوروز *baʿd az ʿīd-i nourūz* } after the New Year festival.

کتابرا پس بده *kitābrā pas bidih* give the book back.

بقاطرچی بگو جلو بیاید یا عقب بماند *bi qātirchī bigū jilou biravad yā ʿaqab bimānad* tell the muleteer to go to the front or to keep at the back.

پشت *pusht* (the back)
پشت سر *pusht-i sar* (the back of the head) } behind.

Examples.

پشت پرده *pusht-i parda* behind the curtain.

پشت سرم چه کار میکنی *pusht-i sar-am chi kār mīkunī?* what are you doing behind my back (my head).

پشت هم *pusht-i ham* one after (behind) the other.

رفت پی کره *raft pei-i kara* he went to fetch (lit. after) butter.

15) رو برو *rū bi rū*
مقابل *muqabil* } opposite.

رو بروی مسجد *rū bi rū-yi masjid*
مقابلِ مسجد *muqābil-i masjid* } opposite the mosque.

16) دور *dour*
دورادور *dourādour* (all round)
اطراف *atrāf*
حوالی *havālī* } (surroundings) } around.

فوج دورادورِ شهر حرکت میکند *fouj dourādour-i shahr harakat mīkunad* the regiment is marching all round the town.

اطرافِ شهر بیابان است *atrāf-i shahr bīābūn ast* all round the town there is desert.

از حوالیِ دریا بجنکل رسیدیم *az havālī-yi daryā bi jangal rasīdīm* from the neighbourhood of the lake we reached the forest.

کلهارا دورِ حوض بچین *gulhārā daur-i houz bichīn* place the flowers round the tank.

17) برای *barāyi*
از برای *az barāyi*
محض *mahz*
بجهت *bi jihat-i*
واسطه *vāsita* (middle)
بواسطه *bi vāsita*
خاطر *khātir* (mind) } for, on account of, because of, out of.

Examples.

برای تو آمدم *barāyi tu āmadam* I came for you.
اسپ از برای وزیر آوردند *asp az barāyi vazīr āvardand* they brought a horse for the minister.
بجهت تاریکی *bi jihat-i tārīkī* on account of the darkness.
بواسطهٔ ارتفاع کوهها *bi vasita-yi irtifā^{c}-i kūhhā* on account of the height of the mountains.
چای واسطهٔ خانم کجاست *chāī vāsita-yi khānum kujā-st?* where is the tea for the lady?
محض احترام *mahz-i ihtirām* out of respect.
محض خاطر خانم *mahz-i khātir-i khānum* for the lady's sake.

7. Conjunctions.

The Conjunctions mostly used are the following:

اگر *agar* if
وگر *vagar* and if
وگرنه *vagarna* and if not, otherwise
مگر *magar* but, however
و *va*, *u* and
هم *ham*, نیز *nīz* } also
که *ki* that
چراکه *chirā-ki*, زیراکه *zīrā-ki* } because
بنا بر اینکه *binā bar īn-ki* in consequence of
اما *ammā*, ولی *valī*, ولیکن *va lākan*, لیکن *lākan* or *lākin* } but

از بس که *az bas ki* since (causal)
نه — نه *na — na* neither-nor
القصه *al qissa* } well, in short
خلاصه *khulāsa* }
بلکه *balki* perhaps
با وجود اینکه *ba vujūd-i īnki* } in spite of, although
اگرچه *agarchi* }
هر چند (که) *har chand* however much
پس *pas* consequently
بعد *baʿd* afterwards
یا *yā* or
یا — یا *yā — yā* either — or
خواه — خواه *khāh — khāh* either — or
چه — چه *chi — chi* what with — and
چون *chun* when
از آنکه *az ān ki* since
از وقتیکه *az vakhtī-ki* since
طوریکه *tourī-ki* thus
همین که *hamīn-ki* as soon as.

If و is used to connect two words which together form one notion, it is pronounced *u*, otherwise it is always pronounced *va*, ex: شب و روز *shab u rūz*, night and day, زن و مرد *zan u mard*, woman and man, گرد و خاک *gard u khāk* dust. — but: کتابها و صندوقها و صندلی‌ها *kitābhā va sandūqhā va sandalīhā* books and boxes and chairs.

If a Dependent Clause begins with اگرچه *agarchi* although, the Principal Clause is, contrary to the rule in most European languages, generally introduced by امّا *ammā* or *lākan* but, باز *bāz* yet ex: اگرچه این را ندانست

اما خیلی با کمال است *agarchi īn-rā na-dānist, ammā kheilī bā kamāl ast* although he did not know this, (yet) he is very accomplished, اگرچه خلاف کرده است باز آدم

خوبی است *agarchi khilāf harda ast, bāz ādam-i khūbī-st.* though he has failed, (yet) he is a good man.

8. Adverbs.

There are no Adverbs properly so called in Persian. Nouns with or without prepositions and especially adjectives are used adverbially.

Examples of nouns with prepositions used as adverbs.

از حدّ *as hadd* unlimitedly
با احتیاط *bā ihtīāt* carefully
بخوبی *bi khūbī* well
بی ملاحظه *bī mulāhaza* without paying attention to

Examples of nouns without prepositions used as adverbs.

آسودگی *āsūdagī* safely
یاواشگی *yavāshagī* gently (vulgar)
راحت آمدیم *rāhat āmadīm* we came comfortably

Adjectives used adverbially require no explanation.

The *Arabic* adverbs in اً *an*, as e. g. یقیناً *yaqīnan* certainly or مثلاً *masalan* by way of example, etc., form a special class. They will be dealt with in the chapter on the *Arabic element in Persian* p. 72.

9. Construction.

The order of the parts of a simple sentence is, generally speaking, the same as in *Latin*, i. e. subject — object — verb. ex: اسپ جو میخورد *asp jou mīkhurad* (equus hordeum edit) the horse eats barley.

When there are two objects in a sentence, the accusative generally precedes the dative. ex: پدرم کتابرا بمن داد *padar-am kitābrā bi man dād*, my father gave me the book.

If however the accusative forms a part of the verb, it stands in close connection with the latter *after* the dative. ex: شخصی بما سلام گفت *shakhsī bi mā salām guft* somebody saluted us.

In cases where the *object* is a *pronoun* in English, it is *mostly omitted* in Persian. ex: دوست ندارد *dūst na dārad* he does not like *it*

نمیگذارد *na-mīguzārad* he does not let *me* (do it)

نداریم *na-dārīm* we have not got *it* or *any*

پاك کن *pāk kun* clean *it*

میخواهم بفروشم *mīkhāham bifurūsham* I want to sell *it*

دیگر نمیکنم *dīgar na-mīkunam* I shall not do *it* again

ندیدیم *na-dīdīm* we did not see *him*.

The *Verb* is almost always placed at the end of the sentence.

A few verbs sometimes precede their datives. There are: دادن *dadan* to give, گفتن *guftan* to say, رفتن *raftan* to go, رسیدن *rasīdan* to arrive, سپردن *supurdan* to entrust, ex:

رفتیم لار رسیدیم باردو چادر زدیم *raftīm Lār, rasīdīm*

bi urdū, chādur zadīm. We went to Lar, we reached the camp, we pitched the tents.

پولرا داد بفقیر *pūlrā dād bi faqīr* he gave the money to the poor man.

گفتم بنوکر *guftam bi noukar* I said to the servant.

برو بازار *birou bāzār* go to the market.

When the nominative of a sentence is the plural of an inanimate object, the verb is frequently used in the singular ex:

همهٔ مبل واسباب ما در سفر شکسته شد *hama-yi mubl u asbāb-i mā dar safar shikasta shud*, all our furniture and things were broken on the journey. — جنگلهای مازندران در این فصل سالم نیست *jangalhā-yi Māzandarān dar īn fasl sālim nīst*, the forests of Mazandaran are not healthy in this season.

The *oblique narration* is hardly ever used in Persian. The words of another person are generally quoted in direct speech and introduced by که *ki* ex: میگوید که دیروز آمدم *mīgūyad ki dīrūz āmadam.* He says he came yesterday پرسید که آن شخص کیست *pursīd ki ān shakhs kīst?* he asked who that person was. — گفتند که میخواهیم صبر بکنیم *guftand ki mīkhāhīm sabr bi-kunīm*, they said they wanted to wait.

After گفتن *guftan* to say the conjunction *ki* is often omitted ex: گفت فردا میایم *guft fardā mīāyam* he said he would come tomorrow.

A construction resembling the oblique narration appears to be sometimes used when speaking of a given order; ex: بگو بیاید اینجا *bigū bīāyad īnjā* tell him to come here حکم دادم اردورا بر لب دریاچه بزنند *hukm*

dādam urdūrā bar lab-i daryācha bizanand. I gave orders that they should pitch the camp on the bank of the lake.

In the above examples the forms بیاید *bīāyad* and بزنند *bizanand* may be quite correctly regarded as imperatives. If this view be taken, the oblique narration may be said not to exist in Persian.

Dependent Sentences.

Dependent sentences are generally introduced by the conjunction که *ki*, which however may be omitted. ex: میخواستم بیاید *mīkhāstam bī-āyad*, I wish he had come.

Interrogative Sentences.

Interrogative sentences are sometimes marked by the interrogative particles مگر *magar* or آیا *āyā* ex: مگر تو سیّدی *magar tu Seiyid-ī?* are you a Seyid? (descendent of Muhammed). آیا دیروز آمدی *āyā dīrūz āmadī?* did you come yesterday?

مگر *magar* may also be placed at the end. ex: دیوانه شدهٔ مگر *dīvāna shuda-ī magar?* have you gone mad?

Another way of marking the interrogation is the adding of یا نه *yā na?* or یا خیر *yā kheir* or not. ex: پول داری یا نه *pūl dārī yā na?* have you got money or not? شما فارسی حرف میزنید یا خیر *shumā fārsī harf mīzanīd yā kheir?*

In most cases however *no* interrogative particle is used, the tone of the voice alone being sufficient.

All interrogative pronouns immediately precede the verb and are strongly accentuated. ex: حضور که بود

huzūr kí būd? who was in the (royal) presence? ایـن خانهٔ کدام شاخص است *īn khāna-yi kudám shakhs ast?* whose house is this? ایـن اسـپِ کیست *īn asp-i kí-st?* whose horse is this? تا شهر چند فرسخ راه است *tā shahr chánd farsakh rāh ast?* how many farsakhs is it to the town? طُول این راه چند فرسخ است *tūl-i īn rāh chand farsakh ast?* How many farsakhs long is this road? دیشب کجا بودی *dīshab kujā būdī?* where were you last night?

10. The Arabic Element in Persian.

Through the influence of Muhammedanism a great number of Arabic words have been introduced into Persian. As these words have preserved their own orthography and to some extent their Arabic inflexion, a certain acquaintance with Arabic grammar is clearly essential to the mastery of Persian. Students are therefore recommended to acquire some knowledge of Arabic and especially of the *Arabic verb* which is fully explained in any Arabic grammar. We shall here restrict ourselves to a few remarks on the *Arabic duals*, *plurals*, *adverbs* and *phrases* embodied in Persian.

Arabic Duals.

The *arabic dual* is used with words denoting things of which not more than two are supposed to exist. It is formed by adding *ein* to the singular ex:

Singular.	Dual.
جانب *jānib* side	جانبین *jānibein* both sides
طرف *taraf* side	طرفین *tarafein* both sides

كون	*koun* existence	كونين	*kounein* both existences
عالم	*ʿālam* world	عالمين	*ʿālamein* both worlds
يد	*yad* hand	يدين	*yadein* both hands
والد	*vālid* parent	والدين	*vālidein* both parents
حرم	*haram* sanctuary	حرمين	*haramein* both sanctuaries (Mekka & Medina)
نور	*nūr* light	نورين	*nūrein* both lights (sun and moon).

Arabic Plurals.

Arabic plurals are very much used both in writing and in speaking. They may be divided in two classes: *regular* and *irregular* or *broken plurals.*

1) The regular plurals are formed from the singular by adding *īn* for the masculine; and for the feminine gender by changing the termination ة, *at* into ات, *āt*; for the neuter by adding *āt.*

Examples of regular Arabic Plurals.

Masculine.

Singular.		Plural.	
حاضر	*hāzir* present.	حاضرين	*hāzirīn* those present.
سایر	*sāir* other	سایرين	*sāirīn* the others
محبوس	*mahbūs* prisoner	محبوسين	*mahbūsīn* the prisoners
مسافر	*musāfir* traveller	مسافرين	*musāfirīn* the travellers
ناظر	*nāzir* one who sees.	ناظرين	*nāzirīn* those who see.

Feminine and Neuter.

Singular.		Plural.	
حیوان	*heivān* animal	حیوانات	*heivānāt* animals
حضرت	*hazrat* Highness	حضرات	*hazarāt* gentlemen
ساعت	*sāᶜat* hour	ساعات	*sāᶜāt* hours.

Sometimes the ending *āt* is added to a plural, which gives it the meaning of "all sorts of" ex: جوهر *jouhar* precious stone, *simple plural* جواهر *javāhir* precious stones; *double plural* جواهرات *jarāhirāt* all sorts of precious stones.

In imitation of these regular plurals of arabic feminines, Persian nouns in *ish* frequently form their plurals in *āt* ex:

Singular.		Plural.	
فرمایش	*farmāyish* an order	فرمایشات	*farmāyishāt*
نگارش	*nigārish* epistle	نگارشات	*nigārishāt*.

The arabic plural of persian nouns in ه *a* as

Singular.		Plural.	
نوشته	*navishta* letter	نوشتجات	*navishtajāt*
کارخانه	*kārkhāna* factory	کارخانجات	*kārkhānajāt*
میوه	*mīva* fruit	میوه‌جات	*mīvajāt*

has been mentioned pp. 14 and 15.

Arabic plurals of some other persian words occasionally occur in the spoken language, though more often in writing, ex:

Singular.		Plural.	
ده	*dih* village	دهات	*dihāt*
باغ	*bāgh* garden	باغات	*bāghāt*

کوهستان	*kūhistān* mountain-range	کوهستانات	*kūhistānāt*
شمران	*Shimrān* a district near Teheran	شمرانات	*Shimrānāt*
گیلان	*Gīlān* a province on the Caspian Sea.	گیلانات	*Gīlānāt*

2) The *broken* or *irregular* plurals are so numerous and anomalous, that it is impossible here to enter into a full explanation of them. They belong rather to the dictionary than to the grammar. In the vocabulary at the end of this work the broken plurals will be marked, and should be committed to memory as well as the corresponding singulars.

The number of broken plurals entirely depending on the whim of the writer or speaker, is unlimited.

Though an exhaustive list of broken plurals cannot be given here, yet some of those most frequently used are added as examples:

Singular.		Plural.	
شجر	*shajar* tree	اشجار	*ashjār*
برج	*burj* tower	بروج	*burūj*
قنات	*qanāt* subterranean watercourse	قنوات	*qanavāt*
ساحل	*sāhil* coast	سواحل	*savāhil* [1])
لوطی	*lūtī* a good for nothing	الواط	*alvāt*
فاکهه	*fākiha* fruit	فواکه	*favākih*
مسجد	*masjid* mosque	مساجد	*masājid*
لون	*loun* colour	الوان	*alvān*

1) From this plural *savāhil*, coasts, is derived the name of the language of the eastern coasts of Africa: Savāhili (Suaheli)

قسم	*qism* kind	اقسام	*aqsām*
اسم	*ism* name	اسامی	*asāmī*
ملك	*milk* landed property	املاك	*amlak*
مملكت	*mamlikat* province	ممالك	*mamālik*
معبر	*maᶜbar* passage	معابر	*maᶜābir*
ولد	*valad* child	اولاد	*oulād*
طفل	*tifl* infant	اطفال	*atfāl*
امر	*amr* affair, an order	امور	*umūr*
امير	*amīr* chief	امرا	*umarā*
فقير	*faqīr* indigent	فقرا	*fuqarā*
وزير	*vazīr* minister	وزرا	*vuzarā*
حكيم	*hakīm* doctor	حكما	*hukamā*
طبيب	*tabīb* physician	اطبّا	*atibbā*
قانون	*qānūn* law	قوانين	*qavānīn*
مكان	*makān* place	اماكن	*amākin*
بهيمه	*bahīma* beast	بهايم	*bahāyim*
وحش	*vahsh* wild beast	وحوش	*vuhūsh*
طير	*teir* bird	طيور	*tuyur*
قوم	*qoum* nation	اقوام	*aqvām*
طايفه	*tāyifa* tribe	طوايف	*tavāyif*
ملّت	*millat* community	ملل	*milal*
دكّان	*dukkān* shop	دكاكين	*dakākīn*
سبب	*sabab* thing, reason	اسباب	*asbāb*
يوم	*youm* day	ايّام	*ayyām*
بلد	*baln̈d* town	بلاد	*balād*
خادم	*khādim* servant	خدّام	*khuddām*
شخص	*shakhs* person	اشخاص	*ashkhās*
قلب	*qalb* heart	قلوب	*qulūb*
بندر	*bandar* port	بنادر	*banādir*

Adverbs.

Arabic adverbs are formed by adding the accusative ending اً *an* to the noun or adjective ex:

	Adverbs.
تقریب *taqrīb* approach	تقریباً *taqrīban* approximately.
فرض *farz* supposition	فرضاً *farzan* supposing
ابد *abad* eternity	ابداً *abadan* never
مثل *masal* example	مثلاً *masalan* for instance
غالب *ghālib* most	غالباً *ghāliban* mostly
مستقیم *mustaqīm* straight	مستقیماً *mustaqīmam* straight
اقلّ *aqall* least	اقلاً *aqallan* at least
مجدّد *mujaddad* renewed	مجدّداً *mujaddadan* renewedly

Gender.

The *Arabic Gender* is sometimes used with Arabic adjectives, especially in writing ex:

این زن در شهر مشهورهٔ شد *īn zan dar shahr mashhūra shud*, this woman became celebrated in the town.

جهات اربعه *jihāti arbaʿa* the 4 points of the compass.

It is, however, never necessary to use it in speaking.

Some Arabic Locutions commonly used in Persian.

بین الاثنین *bein ul isnein* between the two

کالنقش فی الحجر *ka an-naqshu fi'l hajar* like the carving on the stone

وقس علی هذا *va qis ᶜalā hāzā* and conclude from this

وغیره *va gheira* etc.

علی هذا القیاس *ᶜalā hāzā 'l qīās* in the same way (lit. by this analogy)

و الله *v'Allāhi* or *v'Allāh* } by God

باالله *b'Illāhi* or *l'Illāh* }

والله اعلم *v'Allāhu aᶜlam* and God knows best

الله اکبر *Allāhu akbar* God is great

استغفر الله *istaghfir Ullāh* may God forgive, God forbid

بارك الله *bārik Allāh* may God bless you, bravo.

انشاء الله *in shā Allāh* if God will

ما شاء الله *mā shā Allāh* as God will

بسم الله *b'ism Illāh* in God's name

بسم الله الرحمن الرحیم *b'ism Illāh ar Rahmān ar Rahīm* in the name of God the Merciful, Bountiful.

الحمد لله *al hamdu l'Illāh*! praise be to God!

لا حول ولا قوة الا بالله *lā houla va lā qūvata illā b'Illāh* there is no help nor strength except in God.

يا امير المؤمنين *yā Amīr ul Muᶜminīn!* O Lord of the Believers! (Alī)

يا سيّد الشهدا *yā Seyid ash Shuhadā!* O Prince of Martyrs! (Husein)

يا سيّد المرسلين *yā Seyid ul Mursilīn!* O Prince of Prophets'. (Muhammad)

يا على *yā ᶜAlī!* o Alī!

يا على مدد *yā ᶜAlī madad!* o Alī help! (dervishes cry)

نعوذ بالله *naᶜūzu b' Illāh!* let us take refuge to God!

بينى و بين اللّه *beinī va bein Ullāh* between me and God (truly)

معهذا *maᶜ hāzā* all the same (lit. with this)

لهذا *li hāzā* therefore

هكذا *hakizā* thus

على الاتّصال *ᶜalā 'l ittisāl* continually

لاينقطع *lā yanqatiᶜ* without interruption

لم يزرع *lam yuzraᶜ* uncultivated (land)

بعينه *bi ᶜeinih* exactly alike (lit. as its eye).

CHAPTER III.

DIALOGUES.

دید و باز دید	*Dīd u bāzdīd.*	*Visiting.*
آقا تشریف دارد	Āghā tashrīf dārad?	Is your master at home?
بلی اقا خانه است	Bálī, aghā khāna ast.	Yes, my master is at home.
سوار شدند بیرون تشریف بردند	savār shudand, bīrūn tashrīf burdand.	He (they) [1]) has mounted, has gone out riding.
اندرون رفته است	andarūn rafta ast.	He is gone into the harem.
خلوت کرده اند	khalvat karda and. [1])	He has gone into his private apartment.
بسم اللّه بفرمائید	b'ism Illah, bifarmāyīd!	In the name of God, please walk in.
خوش آمدید صفا آوردید	khush āmadīd, safā avurdīd.	You are welcome, you have brought happiness.
بفرمائید بنشینید	bifarmāyīd binshīnīd.	Pray be seated.

1) Here the plural is used instead of the singular to denote respect.

سلامٌ علیکم	salāmun aleikum!	Peace be with you!
علیکم السّلام	aleikum assalām!	With you be peace!
احوال شریف چه طور است	ahvāl-i sharīf chi tour ast?	How are you? (lit. How is your august health?)
الحمد للّه	al hamdu l'Illāh.	Praise be to God! (i. e. Quite well, thank you.)
انشاء اللّه احوال شریف سرکار خیلی خوب است	in shā Allāh ahvāl-i sharīf-i sarkār kheilī khūb ast.	I hope (If God will) your (worship's) august health is very good.
الحمد للّه از التفات سرکار	al hamdu l'Illah, az iltifāt-i sarkār.	Thank God, by your kindness.
از مرحمت جناب عالی بسیار خوب است	az marhamat-i janāb-i ālī bis-yār khub ast.	By your Excellency's kindness, very good.
خیلی زحمت کشیدید	kheilī zahmat kashīdīd.	You have had much trouble.
زحمتی نیست راحت است	zahmatī nīst, rāhat ast.	It was no trouble, it was a pleasure (rest).
فردا به بنده منزل تشریف خواهید آورد	fardā bi banda-manzil tashrīf khāhīd āvurd?	Will you come (bring honour) to my (the slave's) house?

انشاء اللّه شرفیاب میشوم	in shā Allāh sharafyāb mī-shavam	I hope (if God will) to have the honour.
اگر مانعی پیدا نشود خدمت سرکار میرسم	agar mānīʿ peidā nashavad, khidmat-i sarkār mīrasam.	If I am not prevented, I will come to you (will wait upon you).
پریروز که سرکار بمنزل بنده تشریف آورده بودید من همان وقت منزل سرکار رفته بودم	parīrūz, ki sarkār bi manzil-i banda tashrīf āvurda būdīd, man hamān vakht manzil-i sarkār rafta būdam.	The day before-yesterday, when your worship had come to the slave's dwelling, at that moment I had gone to your Excellency's house.
افسوس میخورم که ملاقات سرکار میسّر نشد از بد بختی من بود	afsūs mīkhuram ki mulāqāt-i sarkār muyassar na shud; az badbakhtī-yi man būd.	I am sorry that I did not meet (did not obtain a meeting with) your Excellency. It was my ill-luck.
بچه ها چای بیارید	bachahā! chāī bīārīd!	Servants! (children) bring tea.
قلیان میل میفرمائید یا سیگار بیارند	qaliān meil mīfarmāyīd, ya sigār bīārand?	Will you have a Kalian [1]), or shall they bring cigars?

1) The Persian water-pipe or hubble-bubble.

بقلیان هنوز عادت نکرفته ام	bi qaliān hanuz ādat na girifta am.	I have not yet got used to a Kalian.
یك قلیان کدوی با سلیقه چاق کن بیار صاحب ببیند	yak qaliān-i kaduī bā salīqa chaq kun, sāhib bibīnad.	Get ready a gourd Kalian with great care, so that the gentleman may try (see) it.
شربت بیار قهوهٔ شیرین بیار	Sharbat bīār, qahva-yi shīrīn bīār.	Bring something to drink (sherbet), bring sweet coffee.
قدری میل میفرمائید از این شیرینی	qadrī meil mīfarmāyīd az īn shīrīnī?	Will you take some of these sweets?
مرحمت شما زیاد همه چیز خوردم	marhamat-i shumā zīād! hama chīz khurdam.	Thank you! (your kindness is great!) I have eaten of everything.
حالا دیکر رفعِ زحمت میکنم مرخّص میشوم	hala dīgar raf'-i zahmat mīkunam, murakhkhas mīshavam.	Now I will remove the cause of trouble, I will take my leave.
باین زودی تشریف میبرید	bi īn zūdī tashrīf mībarīd?	You wish to go so soon?
ببخشید جائی وعده دارم	bibakhshīd, jāī va'da dāram.	Excuse me, I have promised to go somewhere else.
خدا حافظ	Khudā hafiz!	Goodbye, (God keep you)

خدا حافظ شما	Khudā hāfiz-i shumā!	Goodbye!
لطف شما زیاد	lutf-i shumā zīād!	Thank-you (your favor is great).
التفات شما زیاد	iltifāt-i shumā zīād!	Thank-you (your kindness is great).
مرحمت شما زیاد	marhamat-i shumā zīād!	Thank-you (your benevolence is great).
محبّت شما زیاد	mahabbat-i shumā zīād!	Thank-you (your friendship is great).
عزّت شما زیاد	izzat-i shumā zīād!	Thank-you (your glory is great).
سایهٔ شما کم نشود	sāya-yi shumā kam na shavad!	Thank-you (may your shadow never grow less.)
دست شما درد نکند	dast-i shumā dard na kunad!	Thank-you (may your hand not hurt you!)
از لطف شما	az lutf-i shumā!	Thank you (by your favor).
از التفات شما	az iltifāt-i shumā!	Thank you (by your kindness).
از شفقت شما	az shafaqat-i shumā!	Thank you (by your mercy).
از توجّه شما	az tavajjuh-i shumā!	Thank you (by your condescension).

احوال پرسی	*Ahval pursī.*	*Asking after health.*
احوال شریف شما امروز چه طور است	ahvāl-i sharīf-i shumā imrūz chi tour ast?	How is your august health to day?
قدری کسلم	qadrī kasil am.	I am rather unwell.
قدری ناخوشم	qadrī nākhush am.	I am rather ill.
خدا نکند	Khudā na kunad!	God forbid! (may God not do it!)
چه کسالت دارید	chi kasālat darīd?	What indisposition have you?
چند روز است سرم درد میکند و مزاجاً کسل هستم	chand rūz ast sar-am dard mīkunad va mizājan kasil hastam.	For several days I have had a headache and my health has not been good.
دیشب چه طور گذشت	dīshab chi tour guzasht?	What kind of a night did you have? (How did last night pass?)
بواسطهٔ کم خوابیِ دیشب خیلی کسل هستم و از امروز صبح دردِ سر شدّت کرده است	bi vāsita-yi kamkhābī-yi dī-shab kheilī kasil hastam, va az imrūz subh dard-i sar shiddat karda ast.	I am feeling very tired because I slept little last night, and since this morning my head-ache has become violent.

نبض شمارا ببینم تب نداشته باشید	nabz-i shumārā bibīnam, tap na dāshta bāshīd.	Let me feel (see) your pulse, I hope you have no fever.
در این فصل هوا بسیار بد و موریث امراض سخت است اینجاها درد چشم هم خیلی فراوان است	dar īn fasl havā bisyār bad va mūris-i amrāz-i sakht ast. īnjāhā dard-i chashm ham kheilī farāvān ast.	In this season the air is very bad, and is the cause of serious illnesses. In these parts also bad eyes are very common.
من هم چند روز است مبتلا به تپ و نوبهٔ سخت بودم	man ham chand rūz ast mubtalā bi tap va nouba-yi sakht būdam.	I also have been troubled with fever and strong intermittent fever for some days.
معلوم است چایده باشید	ma'lūm ast chāīda bāshīd.	You must have caught a cold.
بلی آقا بشکار رفته از گرما عرق زیاد کرده بودم سرما خوردم زکام شدم وقتیکه بمنزل رسیدم سرم درد گرفت و نوبه آمد و لرز کردم وقت صبح بنوبهٔ شدیدی	Bálī āghā, bi shikār rafta az garmā araq-i zīād karda būdam va sarmā khurdam, zukkām shudam. vakhtī-ki bi manzil rasīdam, sar-am dard girift va nouba āmad va larz kardam. vakht-i subh bi nouba-yi shadīdī va tap,	Yes, sir, I had gone out shooting, and had perspired very much on account of the heat. I then took a chill and caught cold. When I got home, my head began to ache and I shivered. The next morning I had strong intermittent fe-

و تپ که مرضِ این ولایت است	ki maraz-i īn vilāyat ast,	ver, which is the illness of
دوچارشدم بسیاربد و بکسالت گذشت	duchār shudam; bisyār bad va bi kasālat guzasht.	this country. I felt very ill and weak.
وقتِ صبح چه طور بودید	vakht-i subh chi tour būdīd?	How were you in the morning?
تپ تا صبح طول کشید صبح با سردردِ شدیدی از خواب برخاسته حکیمرا خواستم معالجه کرد	tap tā subh tūl kashīd; subh bā sardard-i shadīdī az khāb barkhāsta hakīm-rā khāstam, muʿālija kard.	The fever lasted till the morning; I woke early with a very bad head-ache, and sent for the doctor, who cured me.
دوا بشما داد یا خیر	davā bi shumā dād yā kheir?	Did he give you any medicine?
حبّ کنه کنه داد	habb-i gana-gana dād.	He gave me a quinine-pill.
شبِ دیگر هم باز نوبه کردم صبح بهتر شدم	shab-i dīgār ham bāz nouba kardam, subh bihtar shudam.	In the evening I had fever again; in the morning I felt better.
الحمد للّه	al hamdu l'Illāh!	Praise be to God!
بسیار جای شکر است	bisyār jā-yi shukr ast.	It is a cause of thankfulness.
دیروز بجهتِ دردِ دل خیلی	dīrūz bijihat-i dard-i dil kheilī khasta būdam. chūn atibbā	Yesterday I felt very tired because I had indigestion

خسته بودم چون اطبّا منع از میوه و ترشی کرده اند هیچ چیز صرف نشد گردش باغ بیمزه بود و مثل شخص روزه‌دار بودم	man^{c} az mīva va turshī karda and, hīch chīz sarf na shud, gardish-i bāgh bī-maza būd va misl-i shakhs-i rūzadār būdam.	(lit. pain at the heart). As the doctors had forbidden me to eat fruit or anything acid, I could not eat anything. My walk in the garden gave me no pleasure, and I was like one who is fasting.
امروز احوالم الحمد لله خوب است حکیم از من خون گرفته است گفت باید بروید استحمام آب گرم معدنی بنمائید	Imrūz ahvāl-am al hamdu l' Illah khūb ast. hakīm az man khūn girifta ast; guft: bāyad biravīd istihmām-i āb-i garm-i ma^{c}danī bina-māyīd.	Today, praise be to God! my health is good. The doctor bled me. He said "You must go and take baths of warm mineral water".
دندانساز خوبی در طهران هست	dandānsāz-i khūbī dār Tahrān hast?	Is there a good dentist in Teheran?
یک دندانساز فرنگی هست و دلاکهای ایرانی هم دندان کشی میکنند	yak dandānsāz-i farangī hast va dallākha-yi īrānī ham dandān-kashī mīkunand.	There is a European dentist there, and the Persian barbers also extract teeth.

آب و هوا	*āb u havā.*	*The Weather.* (lit. Water and Air).
امروز هوا بسیار صاف و بی ابر ومه است جای شکرِ بسیار است	imrūz havā bisyār sāf va bI abr u mih ast, jā-yi shukr-i bisyār ast.	To-day the air is very clear, and there are neither clouds nor mist. It is a cause of much thankfulness.
هوای مازندران پر مه و تاریك است رطوبتِ آن ولایت مشهور است	havā-yi Māzandarān pur mih va tārīk ast; rutūbat-i ān vilāyat mashhūr ast.	The air of Māzandarān is very cloudy and dark; that province is known for its moisture.
منتظر هستم که هوا باز شود	muntazir hastam ki havā bāz shavad.	I am waiting for the air to become clear.
شب باران و بادِ شدیدی آمد	shab bārān va bād-i shadīdI āmad.	In the evening it rained, and there was a strong wind.
دیشب باران و رعد و برقِ شدیدی بود و قدری تگرگ هم بارید حالا باران ایستاده است و هوا باز شد	dishab bārān va raʿd va barq-i shadīdI būd va qadrI tagarg ham bārId. hālā bārān Istāda ast va havā bāz shud.	Last night it rained, thundered, and lightened; it also hailed a little. Now the rain has stopped and the air has become clear.

چند روز پیش از تشریف آوردنِ شما اینجاها خیلی سرد بود کوههای بلندِ اطراف را برف زده بود وآب یخ بسته بود

chand rūz pīsh az tashrīf āvurdan-i shumā īnjāhā kheilī sard bud. kuhhā-yi buland-i atrāf-rā barf zada būd va āb yakh basta bud.

A few days before your arrival it was very cold in these parts. It had snowed on the high mountains near by, and the water was frozen.

یخ در ایران بسیار است یا کم

yakh dar Irān bisyār ast yā kam?

Is there much ice in Persia or little?

اغلبِ جاها پیدا میشود اهل ایران در یخچال انبار میکنند وقتِ تابستان توی آبِ خوردن می‌اندازند

aghlab-i jāhā peidā mīshavad. ahl-i Irān dar yakhchāl ambār mīkunand, vakht-i tabistān tū-yi āb-i khurdan mīandāzand.

It is found in most places. The Persians keep it in an ice-cellar, and in the summer-time they put it in their drinking-water.

دیروز حوالیِ صبح بادِ سخت وزید و هوا پوشیده از ابر شد بیم باران بود امّا الحمد للّه نبارید

dīrūz havālī-yi subh bād-i sakht vazīd va havā pūshīda az abr shud; bīm-i bārān būd, ammā al hamdu l'Illah na bārid.

Yesterday at daybreak a strong wind was blowing, and the sky was cloudy. It looked like rain, but, thank God, it did not rain.

امروز هوا گرم و پوشیده از ابر و خفه است

imrūz havā garm va pūshīda az abr va khafa ast.

To day it is warm and the weather is cloudy and oppressive.

صبح هوا بسیار بد بود پوشیده از ابر و دلتنگ و خفه باران متصل میبارید گاهی شدید گاهی خفیف	subh havā bisyār bad būd, pūshīda az abr va diltang va khafa. bārān muttasil mībārīd, gāhī shadīd, gāhī khafīf.	This morning the weather was very bad, it was cloudy, dreary, and oppressive. It rained unceasingly, sometimes much, sometimes little.
منتظرِ ایستادن باران هستم	muntazir-i īstādan-i bārān hastam.	I am waiting for the rain to stop.
باران نم نم میآید اوقاتم را تلخ میکند	bārān nam nam mīāyad, ouqāt-am-rā talkh mīkunad.	The rain comes down steadily. It depresses me. (lit. it makes my times bitter).
در سفرِ کوهستان باران مبدّل به برف شد برفِ زیادی بارید بواسطهٔ ارتفاعِ کوه ها آفتاب هیچ بزمین نمیتابید	dar safar-i kuhistān bārān mubaddal bi barf shud. barf-i zīadī bārīd. bi vāsita-yi irtifāʿ-i kūhhā āftāb hīch bi zamīn na mītābīd.	On our journey across the mountains, the rain turned to snow. It snowed very much. On account of the height of the mountains, the sun did not shine at all on to the ground.
آبِ رودخانه از کثرتِ باران گل آلوده است	āb-i rūdkhāna az kasrat-i bārān gil-ālūda ast.	The water of the river is muddy on account of the excess of rain.

هوا از گرد و غبار تیره و تار است	havā az gard u ghubār tīra va tār ast.	The air is dark with the dust.
باد از جلو است	bād az jilou ast.	The wind is (blowing) from the front.
باد از عقب میوزد	bād az aqab mīvazad.	The wind is blowing from behind.
هوا مثل بهار است	havā misl-i bahār ast.	It is like Spring weather.
هوا مثل نسیم بهشت است	havā misl-i nasīm-i bihisht ast.	The air is like the zephyr from Paradise.
آب و هوای عراق مثل بهشت است هوا خشک است باران کم میبارد شبنم هیچ نیست	āb u havā-yi Irāq misl-i bihisht ast: havā khushk ast, bārān kam mībārad, shabnam hīch nīst.	The climate of Irāq is like Paradise: the air is dry, it rains little, and there is no dew.
آب و هوای تمام مملکت ایران همین است	āb u havā-yi tamām-i mamlikat Irān hamīn ast?	Is the climate of the whole country of Persia the same?
خیر آقا آب و هوای سواحل دریای خزر یعنی گیلان و مازندران و استراباد شبیه بآب و	kheir āghā, āb u havā-yi savāhil-i daryā-yi Khazir, yaʿnī Gīlān u Māzandarān u Astarābād shabīh bi āb u havā-	No, sir, the climate on the shores of the *Caspian Sea*, namely of *Gīlān*, and *Māzandarān* and *Astārābād* is

هـوای هند اسـت هوا کرم و تر و خفه است	yi Hind ast, havā garm va tar va khafa ast.	like the climate of *India*. The air is hot, damp, and oppressive.
وقت و ساعت	*vakht va sā^{c}at.*	*The time and the hour.*
چه وقت است	chi vakht ast?	What time is it?
چهار ساعت بغروب مانده است	chahār sā^{c}at bi ghurūḳ munda ast.	It is four hours before sunset [1]).
سه ساعت از طلوعِ آفتاب گذشته است	si sā^{c}at az tulū^{c}-i āftāb guzashta ast.	Three hours have passed since sunrise.
چند ساعت بظهر داریم	chand sā^{c}at bi zuhr dārīm?	How many hours have we till noon?
دو ساعـت داریـم بظهر	du sā^{c}at dārīm bi zuhr.	We have two hours till noon.
مطابقِ ساعتِ فرنکی ساعتِ ده است	mutābiq-i sā^{c}at i frangī sā^{c}at-i dah ast.	By European time it is ten o'clock.
قـریـب بظهر اسـت تـوب هنوز	qarīb bi zuhr ast, tūp hanūz	It is near noon-day, the

1) The Persians reckon their time by sunrise, noon, and sunset.

نینداخته‌اند و ساعت نزده است	nayandākhta and va sāᶜat na zada ast.	gun has not yet been fired and the clock has not struck.
امروز چه ساعت از خواب برخاستید	imrūz chi sāᶜat az khāb barkhāstīd?	At what time did you wake to-day?
دمِ صبح بیدار شدم باز خوابم برد وقتیکه دو باره بیدار شدم یک ساعت و نیم از آفتاب گذشته بود	dam-i subh bīdār shudam, bāz khāb-am burd. vakhtī-ki du bāra bīdār shudam yak sāᶜat u nīm az āftāb guzashta būd.	At day-break I awoke, then I went off to sleep again. When I again awoke, it was an hour and a half after sunrise.
اولِ افتاب خوابیدن خوب نیست مسلمانان پیش از آفتاب برخاسته نماز میخوانند	avval-i āftāb khābīdan khūb nīst. Musalmānān pīsh az āftāb barkhāsta namāz mīkhānand.	It is not good to sleep after sunrise. The Mohammedans get up before sunrise and say their prayers.
بهتر است پیش از غذا یا بعد از غذا قدری راحت کنید	bihtar ast pīsh az ghazā ya baᶜd az ghazā qadrī rāhat kunīd.	It is better if you rest a little before or after meals.
چه وقت میخواهید بیائید خزینهٔ شاهرا تماشا کنیم	chi vakht mīkhāhīd bīāyīd, khazīnā-yi Shāh-rā tamāshā kunīm?	At what time do you wish to come to see the Treasury of the Shah?
فردا و پس‌فردا فرصت ندارم	fardā va pasfardā fursat na-	To-morrow and the day after-

وچهار روز بیشتر بعید نداریم اگرمیل دارید تا یك هفتهٔ دیگر خدمتِ شما خواهم رسید	dāram va chahār rūz bīshtar bi ʿId nadārīm. agar meil dārīd tā yak hafta-yi dīgar khidmat-i shumā khāham rasīd.	to-morrow I have no time, and we have not more than four days till the festival. If you like I will come (will wait upon you) next week.
بسیار خوب معلوم است پیش از عید نمیشود رفت من هم بیشتر وقتها کار دارم بعد از چند روزِ دیگر انشاء اللّه فرصتِ زیاد خواهم داشت	bisyār khūb, maʿlūm ast pīsh az ʿId namīshavad raft. man ham bīshtar vakhthā kār dāram. baʿd az chand rūz-i dīgar in shā Allāh fursat-i zīād khāham dāsht.	Very well, of course we cannot go before the festival. I also am generally engaged. In a few days, please God, I shall have more time.
شما در روزِ عید چه کار دارید	shumā dar rūz-i ʿId chi kār dārīd?	What do you do on the day of the festival?
خانهٔ دوستها عیدیه میفرستم و از هرکسی که میآید پذیرائی میکنم و تهنیت و تبریك عید	khāna-yi dūsthā ʿIdīa mīfiristam va az har kasī-ki mīāyad pazīrāī mīkunam va tahnīyat va tabrīk-i ʿId mīgūyam,	I send presents to the houses of my friends, and I receive every one who comes. I congratulate them, (*lit*: I say con-

میگویم یعنی عید شما مبارك	ya^{c}nī "^{c}Īd-i shumā mubārak!"	gratulations and blessings for the feast) saying: "May your festival be blessed!"
امشب بمهمانیِ وزیر مختارِ انگلیس نمیروید بایـد لباسِ رسمی بپوشید دیر نشود	imshab bi mihmānī-yi vazīr mukhtār-i Inglīs na-mīravīd? bāyad libās-i rasmī bipūshīd, dīr nashavad.	Are you not going this evening to the English Minister's party? You must put on evening-dress before it gets late.
هنوز زود است اگر تا بعد از یك ربعِ دیکر تبدیـلِ لباس بکنم سرِ وقت خواهم رسید	hanūz zūd ast. agar tā b^{c}ad az yak rub^{c}-i dīgar tabdīl-i libās bikunam, sar-i vakht khāham rasīd.	As yet it is too early. If I change my clothes in a quarter of an hour, I shall get there in time.
بناهای این شهر از کی بنا شده است	bināhā-yi In shahr az kei binā shuda ast?	When have the buildings of this town been erected?
مسجدِ جمعه در زمانِ سلطنت شاه صفیِ اول و حمام دفتاد سال قبل از ایـن در زمانِ خـاقانِ	masjid-i jum^{c}a, dar zamān-i saltanat-i Shah Safī-yi avval va hammām haftād sāl qabl az In, dar zamān-i Khāqān-i	The Friday Mosque [1]) was erected in the time of the reign of Shah Safī the First, and the bath was built seventy

1) The Principal Mosque, in which the Persians assemble on a Friday.

مغفور بنا شده است	maghfūr [1]) binā shuda ast.	years before this in the days of the Deceased Sovereign [1]).
سال گذشته پارسال	sāl-i guzashta, pārsāl.	Last year.
امسال	im-sāl.	This year.
سال آینده	sāl-i āyanda.	Next year.
سال بسال	sāl bi sāl.	Year after year.
در سنهٔ یک هزار و سیصد و سیزده هجری مطابق یک هزار و هشتصد و نود و پنج عیسوی	dar sana-yi yak hazār u sī-sad u sīzdah hijrī, mutābiq-i yak hazār u hasht sad u navad u panj Isavī.	In the year 1313 of the Mahommedan era, which corresponds to the year 1895 of the Christian Era.
پسرِ شما چند سال دارد	pisar-i shumā chand sāl dārad?	How old is your son?
بچهٔ پنجساله است دخترِ چهار ساله هم دارم	bacha-yi panjsāla ast, dukhtar-i chahārsāla ham dāram.	He is five years old; I also have a daughter, who is four years old.

1) This term is used in speaking of Fath Ali Shah, great-grandfather of the late Shah.

در خانهٔ من هیچ اطفالِ خوردساله نیست همه الحمد لله بزرك شده اند	dar khāna-yi man hīch atfāl-i khurdsāla nīst; hama al hamdu l'Illāh buzurg shuda and.	At home I have no very young children; thanks be to God, they have all grown up.
پس خودِ شما چند سال دارید	pas khud-i shumā chand sāl dārīd?	Well, how old are you yourself?
قریبِ پنجاه سال دارم	qarīb-i panjāh sāl dāram.	I am nearly fifty years of age.
باور نمیکنم از صورتتان هیچو معلوم میشود که سنِّ تان از سی و پنج یا سی و شش سال بیشتر نیست	bāvar na-mīkunam! az sūrat-i tān hamchi ma'lūm mīshavad ki sinn-i tān az sī u panj yā sī u shish sāl bīshtar nīst.	I cannot believe it! From your looks it is plain that you are not more than 35 or 36 years old.
خیر آقا چرا دروغ بکویم لایقِ ریشِ من است	kheir gāhā! chirā durūgh bigūyam? lāïq-i rīsh-i man ast?	No sir! Why should I tell an untruth? Would it be worthy of me (of my beard)?
احوالِ والد شما خوب است	ahvāl-i vālid-i shumā khūb ast?	Is your father's health good?
الحمد لله اگرچه پیر است و ریشش سفید شده است لیکن	al hamdu l'Illāh, agarchi pīr ast va rīsh-ash safīd shuda	Thanks be to God! Though he is old and his beard has

مردِ قوی هیکل و با بنیهٔ است واحوالش از بچگی تا پیری همین بوده است	ast, līkan mard-i qavī heikal va bā bunya-ī-st va ahvāl-ash az bachagī tā pīrī hamīn būda ast.	become white, he is a powerful-looking and strong man, and his health has been the same from childhood to old age.
خدا عمرِ والدِ شمارا زیاد کند خدا پدرِ شمارا بیامرزد	Khudā ʿumr-i vālid-i shumārā zīād kunad! khudā padar-i shumā-ra bīāmurzad!	May God augment the years of your father's life! May God forgive your father!
	Short sentences.	
اسمِ تو چه چیز است	ism-i tu chi chīz ast?	What is thy name?
غلامِ شما خلیل	ghulām-i shumā Khalīl.	Your slave Khalīl.
اسمِ شریفِ شما	ism-i sharīf-i shumā?	What is your honoured name?
محمد حسین خان نوکرِ شما	Muhammad Husein Khān, noukar-i shumā.	Mohammed Hussein Khan, your servant.
یکی از دوستانِ من مشهدی رضا نام کویا با شما آشنا است	yakī az dūstān-i man Mashhadī Rizā nām gūyā bā shumā ashanā-st.	One of my friends named Mashhadi Riza is perhaps an acquaintance of yours.
بنده نمی‌شناسم	banda na-mīshanāsam.	I do not know him.

همسایهٔ من است بسیار تعریف از جنابِ عالی میکرد	hamsāya-yi man ast, bisyār taᶜrīf az janāb-i ālī mīkard.	He is a neighbour of mine, he praised Your Excellency very much.
بنده قابل تعریف نیستم خیلی التفات دارند	banda qābil-i taᶜrīf nīst, kheīli iltifāt dārand.	This slave is not worthy of praise, you have much kindness.
میخواهم شمارا با چند نفر دیکر از دوستانِ خودم معرّفی بکنم	mīkhāham shumārā bā chand nafar-dīgar az dūstān-i khudam muᶜarrafī bikunam.	I want to introduce you to some other friends of my own.
کمالِ تشکررا خواهم داشت	kamāl-i tashakkurrā khāham dāsht.	I shall be most grateful.
میخواهم خدمتی بشما رجوع کنم	mīkhāham khidmatī bi shumā rujūᶜ kunam.	I would confide a certain service to you.
بفرمائید آقا با جان و دل برایِ انجامِ فرمایشاتِ سرکار حاضرم	bifarmāyīd āghā, bā jān u dil barāyi anjām-i farmāyishāt-i sarkār hāzir-am.	Be pleased to command, sir. I am ready, with life and heart, to carry out your worship's orders.
به به آفرین بر تو	bah bah! — āfarīn bar tu!	Bravo! — Bravo!
خوب نفهمیدم دو باره بفرمائید	khūb na-fahmīdam, du barā	I have not understood rightly,

	bifarmāyīd, dar khidmat-i janāb-i ālī muqassar na-shavam.	please say it once more, so that I should not fail in my service to Your Excellency.
عیب ندارد	ᶜeib na-dārad.	It does not matter (*lit:* there is no fault).
اگر جای دیگر دعوت نشده‌اید التفات بفرمائید به بنده منزل تشریف بیارید	agar jā-yi dīgar dᶜavat na shuda-īd, iltifāt bifarmāyīd bi banda-manzil tashrīf bi-ārīd.	If you are not invited elsewhere, have the kindness to come to the dwelling of the slave.
اگرچه دیگر هیچ بمهمانی نمیروم لیکن با کمال میل دعوت سرکاررا قبول میکنم	agarchi dīgar hīch bi mihmānī na-mīravam, līkan bā kamāl-i meil daᶜvat-i sarkār-rā qabūl mīkunam.	Though I otherwise do not go out to parties, yet with the greatest pleasure do I accept your worship's invitation.
چند روز است بملاقات برادر شما مشرف شدم جناب وزیر مارا با هم آشنا کرده بود	chand rūz ast bi mulāqāt-i barādar-i shumā musharraf na-shudam. janāb-i aāzīr mā-rā bā ham āshanā karda būd.	For some days I have not had the honor of seeing your brother. His Excellency the Minister had made us acquainted with one another.

کجا بود	kujā būd?	Where was this?
در عمارتِ حضرتِ صدرِ اعظم که ما هر دو آنجا آمد و رفت داریم	dar ʿimārat-i hazrat-i Sadr-a'zam, ki mā har du āmad u raft dārīm.	In the Palace of His Excellency the Grand-Vizier, where we both have free access.
برادرم برای استقبالِ ایلچیِ انگلیس مهماندار شده است	barādar-am barāyi istiqbāl-i ilchī-yi inglīs mihmāndār shuda ast.	My brother has been appointed to receive the English Ambassador.
دیروز جنابِ وزیرِ مختار بملاقات وزرا وارکانِ دولت رفته بودند و امروز همه اعیان و نجبا ببازدیدِ ایلچیِ جدید آمدند	dīrūz janāb-i vazīr mukhtār bi mulāqāt-i vuzarā va arkān-i doulat rafta budand, va imrūz hama aʿyān va nujabā bi bāzdīd-i ilchī-yi jadīd āmadand.	Yesterday His Excellency the Minister had gone to see the Viziers and Ministers of State, and to-day all the lords and nobles came to return the new Minister's call.
شما بحضور پادشاه رفته اید	shumā bi huzūr-i pādishah rafta-id?	Have you had an audience with the King?
بلی شرفیاب شدم	balī, sharafyāb shudam.	Yes, I have had the honor.
وضعش چه طور بود	vazʿash chi tour būd?	What was it like?
ما همه صف کشیده در طلارِ تختِ	mā hama saff kashīda dar tā-	We were all standing drawn

مرمر ایستاده بودیم وقتیکه اعلیحضرت رسیدند ما همه تعظیم نمودیم شاه باهمه کس از آشنا و غریب با کمالِ مهربانی صحبت فرمودند بعد از آن مرخص شدیم	lār-i takht-i marmar īstāda budīm. vakhtī-ki aʿlāhazrat rasīdand mā hama taʿzīm na-mudīm. Shāh bā hama kas az āshanā va gharīb bā kamāl-i mihribānī suhbat farmūdand, baʿd az ān murakhkhas shudīm.	up in a line in the Hall of the Marble Throne. When His Majesty entered we all bowed. The Shah condescended to converse with everyone in the kindest possible way, as well with those whom he knew, as with the strangers. After that we were dismissed.
چه عرض کنم	chi ʿarz kunam?	What shall I say? (lit. what petition shall I make?)
دیگر چه عرض کنم	dīgar chi ʿarz kunam?	What else shall I say?
خلاف عرض نمیکنم	khilāf ʿarz na-mīkunam.	I am not telling an untruth.
عرضی دارم	ʿarzī dāram.	I have a petition.
زحمت میدهم که	zahmat mīdaham ki.	I beg you to ... (lit. I give you the trouble that ...)
دیگر زحمتی نیست	dīgar zahmatī nīst.	I will trouble you no more (lit. there is no more trouble).

بازار رفتن	*Bāzār raftan.*	*Going to the Bazaar.*
غریب راهِ بازار از کدام طرف است	*Gharīb.* Rāh-i bāzār az kudām taraf ast?	*Stranger.* Which is the way to the Bazaar?
بلد[1] از همین راه که میروید تا سبزِ میدان باید رفت آنجا اوّلِ بازار است	*Balad.* Az hamīn rah ki mīravīd, tā Sabz-i Meidān bāyad raft. ānjā avval-i bāzār ast.	*Native.* It is the same way that you are going. You must go to the "Green Square". That is the entrance to the Bazaar.
غریب دستِ چپ است یا دستِ راست	*Gharīb.* Dast-i chap ast yā dast-i rāst?	*Stranger.* Is it on the left hand side or on the right?
بلد پیشِ روی شماست راست راست که میروید میرسید ببازار	*Balad.* Pīsh-i rū-yi shumā-st, rāst rāst ki mīravīd, mīrasīd bi bāzār. kudām bāzār mīkhāstīd biravīd?	*Native.* It is in front of you; if you go quite straight, you will reach the Bazaar. Which Bazaar did you wish to go to?
کدام بازار میخواستید بروید غریب میخواهم بازارِ فرش فروشها بروم قالی و نمد بخرم و ساعت	*Gharīb.* Mīkhāham bāzār-i farsh furūshhā biravam, qālī u namad bikharam va sāᶜat-i khu-	*Stranger.* I want to go to the carpet-sellers' Bazaar, and buy a carpet and a felt car-

1) derived from greek πολίτης, means a citizen, a native. Also one who knows his way about, a guide, and lastly, one who knows in the most general sense of the word. Ex: Har kas piano balad ast, bizanad. Whoever knows how to play the piano let him play.

خودمرا هم بدهم درست بکنند	dam-rā ham bidaham durust bikunand.	pet. I also want to give my watch to be repaired.
بلد خیلی خوب برای شما بلدی میکنم اوّل بازار بازار بزّازهاست بعد از آن بازار زرگرهاست دکّانهای ساعت‌سازها بآن متّصل است	*Balad.* Kheilī khūb! barāyi shumā baladī mīkunam. avval-i bāzār bāzār-i bazzāzhāst, bᶜad az ān bāzar-i zargarhā-st. dukkanhā-yi saᶜatsāzhā bi un muttasil ast.	*Native.* Very well, I will be your guide. The nrst part of the Bazaar is the linendraper's bazaar; after this comes the goldsmith's bazaar. The watch-makers' shops are quite near this.
غریب خیلی خوب اوّل میرویم دکّانِ ساعت ساز آنجا کارِ خودم را انجام داده مشخّص میکنم که دکّانهای دیکر کجا است	*Gharīb.* Kheilī khūb! avval mīravīm dukkān-i sāᶜatsāz, ānjā kār-i khudam-rā anjām dādā mushakhkhas mīkunam ki dukkānha-yi dīgar-kujā-st.	*Stranger.* Very well! I shall first go to the watchmaker's shops. When I have given my work to be done there, I shall ascertain where the other shops are.
نوکر عرض میکنم دکان ساعت ساز رسیدیم	*Noukar.* ᶜArz mīkunam dukkāni sāᶜatsāz rasīdīm.	*Servant.* I beg to state that we have arrived at the watchmaker's shop.

ساعت‌ساز چه چی میخواستید آقا	*Sāᶜatsāz.* Chi chī mīkhāstīd āghā?	*Watchmaker.* What did you wish for, sir?
آقا ساعتم هر روز بقدرِ ده یا دوازده دقیقه کند کار میکند و شیشه اش شکسته است میتوانید زود درستش کنید	*Aghā.* Sāᶜat-am har rūz bi qadr-i dah yā yāzdah daqīqa kund kār mīkunad, va shīsha-yash shikasta ast; mītavānīd zūd durust-ash kunīd?	*Master.* Every day my watch goesten or eleven minutes too slow, and its glass is broken. Can you quickly get it right?
ساعت ساز چرا تا فردا درست میکنم	*Sāᶜatsāz.* Chirā, tā fardā durust mīkunam.	*Watchmaker.* Why (not)? By to-morrow I will have it ready.
آقا نمیشود تا امشب پس بگیرم ساعتمرا بسیار لازم دارم	*Aghā.* Na-mīshavad tā imshab pas bigīram sāᶜat-am-rā bis-yār lāzim dāram.	*Master.* Can I not have it back by this evening? I want my watch very badly.
ساعتساز خیلی خوب نوکرتان نیم ساعت بغروب مانده قدری قبل از بستن بازار بیاید بگیرد	*Sāᶜatsāz.* Kheilī khūb! noukar-i-tān nīm sāᶜat bi ghurūb munda qadrī qabl az bastan-i bāzār bīāyad, bigīrad.	*Watchmaker.* Very well! If your servant can come back half an hour before sunset, shortly before they shut the Bazaar, he can take it.
آقا (به نوکر) دهنه و رکاب اسپم را بگیر سوار شوم	*Aghā* (bi noukar). Dahana va ri-kāb-i aspam-rā bigīr, savār shavam.	*Master* (to the servant). Hold the horses' bridle and the stirrup, I want to mount.

نوکر چشم

Noukar. Chashm!

Servant. By my eyes!

آقا برو جلو و دکّان قالیفروش سراغ کن

Aghā. Birou jilou va dukkān-i qālīfurūsh surāgh kun.

Master. Go on in front and find the carpet-seller's shop.

نوکر (سوارشده داد میزند که) خبردار خبردار بپا

Noukar (savār shuda dād mīzanad ki). Khabardār! khabardār! bipā!

Servant. (having mounted, calls out) Take care, take care! look out!

کسبهٔ دکاکینِ طرفینِ راه (متّصل صدا میکنند که) آقا آقا چه چی میخواستید بیائید اینجا اسبابِ مارا سیل بکنید چیزی از من بگیرید

Kasasba-yi dakākīn-i tarafein-i rāh (muttasil sadā mīkunand ki). Aghā! āghā! chi chī mīkhāstīd? bīāyīd īnjā asbāb-i mārā seil (1) bikunīd, chīzī az man bigīrīd!

Tradesmen in the shops on both sides of the road (continually cry out) Sir! Sir! What were you wishing for? look at our things, buy something off us.

نوکر دکّانِ فرش فروش همین است قالی میخواستید یا کلیم

Noukar. Dukkān-i farshfurūsh hamīn ast. qālī mīkhāstīd yā gilīm?

Servant. This is the carpet-seller's shop. Did you want a knotted carpet or a woven carpet?

آقا قالی و نمد لازم دارم کلیم هم بکو نشانم بدهند

Aghā. Qālī va namad lāzim dāram, gilīm ham bigū nishānam bidahand.

Master. I need a knotted carpet and a felt carpet; tell them also to show me some woven carpets.

1) *seil* vulg for *seir*.

نوکر بچه بیا دهنهٔ اسبهارا بگیر یك چیزی انعام بتو میدهم	*Noukar*. Bacha bīā, dahana-yi asphārā bigīr, yak chīzī in'ām bi tu mīdaham.	*Servant*. Boy, come here! Hold the horse's bridles. I will give you something as a reward.
تاجر عرض میکنم آقا که اگر قالی خوبی خواسته باشید چیزی نشانتان میدهم که مثلش را تا امروز هرگز ندیده باشید (بشاگرد) قالی بزرك مال کردستان را بیار واکن (بآقا) ملاحظه بفرمائید آقا چیزی غریبی خدمت سرکار حاضر کردم باغ ارم از این قالی قشنگتر نیست مال کردستان است	*Tājir*. Arz mīkunam, āghā, ki agar qālī-yi khūbī khāsta bāshīd, chīzī nishun-i tun mīdaham, ki misl-ash-rā tā imrūz har giz na dīda bāshīd. (bi shāgird) qālī-yi buzurg māl-i Kurdistān-rā bīār, vā kun. (bi āghā) mulāhaza bifarmāyīd, āghā, chīzī gharībī khidmat-i sarkār hāzir kardam. Bāgh-i Iram az īn qālī qashangtar nīst, māl-i Kurdistān ast.	*Merchant*. I beg to state, sir, that if you wish for a good carpet, I will show you something, the like of which you have never seen until this day. (to his apprentice) Bring the large Kurdistan carpet, and spread it out. (to the gentleman) Please to look at it, sir. I have got ready a wonderful thing for your worship's service. The garden of Iram is not more beautiful than this carpet. It comes from Kurdistan.
آقا پشتش را ببینم جای	*Aghā*. Pusht-ash-rā bibīnam,	*Master*. Let me see its back.

وصله و رفو نشده باشد	jāī vasla va rufū na-shuda bāshad.	It has no join nor darn, I suppose.
تاجر خیر آقا هیچ جا یك سولاخ ندارد	*Tājir.* Kheir āghā, hīch jā yak sūlākh [1]) na-dārad.	*Merchant.* No, sir. It has not a hole anywhere.
آقا حالا کوشهٔ قالیرا زمین بکذار خوب پهن کن معلوم شود کجی دارد یاخیر میبینم کج است کیس دارد وصاف نمیشود	*Aghā.* Hālā gūsha-yi qālī-rā zamīn bugzār, khūb pahn kun. maʿlūm shavad kajī dārad yā kheir. mībīnam kaj ast, kīs dārad va sāf na-mīshavad.	*Master.* Now put down a corner of the carpet on to the ground, and spread it well, so that I can see whether it is uneven or not. I see that it is uneven; it makes a fold and does not lie smoothly.
تاجر عیب ندارد همهٔ قالیها چنین اند	*Tājir.* ʿEib na-dārad, hama-yi qālīhā chunin and.	*Merchant.* That does not matter all carpets are like that.
آقا رنکش هم جوهر است	*Aghā.* Rang-ash ham jouhar ast.	*Master.* It is also coloured with Aniline dyes.
تاجر نه خیر نشان بدهید رنکش ثابت است	*Tājir.* Na kheir, nishan bidahīd, rang-ash sābit ast.	*Merchant.* No, look at it, its colours are fast.
آقا قیمت این قالی چه چیز است	*Aghā.* Qīmat-i īn qālī chi chīz ast?	*Master.* What is the price of this carpet?

1) Vulg. for سوراخ *sūrākh*, hole.

تاجر بنده چه عرض کنم هرچه دلتان بخواهد بمن مرحمت بفرمائید پیشکش شما است ببرید	*Tājir.* Banda chi ʿarz kunam? har chi dil-i tun bikhāhad bi man marhamat bifarmāyīd. pīshkash-i shumā-st, bibarīd.	*Merchant.* What petition shall the slave make? Whatever your heart wishes, you can give me, by your kindness. I make you a present of it, take it.
آقا قیمت یک کلمه بگوئید فرصت کفتکوی زیاد ندارم کار دارم	*Aghā.* Qīmat yak kalama bigūyīd, fursat-i guftugū-yi zīād nadāram, kār dāram.	*Master.* Say the price in one word; I have not too much time for discussions. I have work to do.
تاجر قیمت این قالی پانزده تومان است امّا بسرکار دوازده تومان میدهم	*Tājir.* Qīmat-i īn qālī punzdah tuman ast, ámmā bi sarkār davāzdah tuman mīdaham.	*Merchant.* The price of this carpet is 15 tumans, but I will give it to your worship for 12 tumans.
آقا (بنوکر) ده تومان بده	*Aghā* (bi noukar). Dah tuman bidih.	*Master* (to his servant). Give (him) 10 tumans.
تاجر خیر آقا دوازده تومان عرض کرده بودم تمام بازار را بگردید باین خوبی قالیچه پیدا نمیشود	*Tajir.* Kheir āghā, davāzdah tuman arz karda būdam, tamām i bāzār bigardīd bi īn khūbī qālīcha peidā namīshavad.	*Merchant.* No sir, I had said 12 tumans. Go over the whole Bazar; you will not find such a good rug anywhere.

آقا بیشتر از ده تومان نمیارزد اگر میخواهید پولش‌را بگیرید خوب است اختیار باشما است

Aghā. Bīshtar az dah tuman na-mīarzad. agar mīkhāhīd pūl-ash-rā bigīrīd, khūb ast. ikh-tiār bā shumā-st.

Master. It is not worth more than 10 tumans. If you like to take the money for it, all right. The decision rests with you.

تاجر چه عرض کنم از ده تومان خودم بیشتر خریدم اما نمیخواهم شما رنجیده بروید ده تومان و نیم بدهید آقا

Tājir. Chi arz kunam, az dah tuman khudam bīshtar kha-rīdam, ammā na-mīkhāham shumā ranjīda biravīd. dah tuman u nīm bidahīd, āghā!

Merchant. What shall I say? I bought it myself for more than 10 tumans, but I do not want you to go away displea-sed. Give (me) 10 tumans and a half!

آقا از حرف خودم بر نمیگردم (ببچه) اسب‌را اینجا بیار سوار شوم

Aghā. Az harf-i khudam bar na-mīgardam (bi bacha) asp-rā īnjā bīār, savār shavam!

Master. I never take my word back. (to the boy). Bring the horse here, so that I can mount.

تاجر بگیرید آقا ده تومان بدهید اگر چه ضرر من است تابحال دشت نکردم (نوکر پول را ادا میکند) خدا برکت بدهد

Tājir. Bigīrīd āghā, dah tuman bidahīd, agarchi zarar-i man ast; tā bi hāl dasht na-kar-dam. (noukar pūl-rā adā mī-kunad) khudā barakat bida-

Merchant. Take it sir, give me 10 tumans, although I lose by it. I have not yet struck a bargain to-day, (the servant pays the money) May God

had! lutf-i shumā zīād! dīgar chi mīkhāstīd! qālīhā-yi māl-i Arabistān va māl-i Kirmān va māl-i Khurāsān va māl-i īlāt-i Fārs kheilī dāram. gilīmha-yi khūb ham hast, ki vakht-i safar kheilī bi kār mīkhūrad: yakī gilīm-i pashm andar pashm-i māl-i Shīrvān, dīgar pashm andar pamba māl-i Shīrāz va misl-i gūsh-i gurba garm va narm va sabuk ast.

bless you! Thank you! What else are you wishing for? I have many Arabian, Kirmān and Khorassan carpets; also carpets made by the Nomads of Fars. There are also good woven carpets, which are very useful for travelling purposes. One of them is a woven carpet from Shirvan, in which the warp and the woof are both of wool; the other one is a woven carpet from Shiraz, wool and cotton mixed, and it is like the ear of a cat: warm, soft and light.

لطف شما زیاد دیگرچه میخواستید قالیهای مال عربستان و مال کرمان و مال خراسان و مال ایلات فارس خیلی دارم گلیمهای خوب هم هست که وقت سفر خیلی بکار میخورد یکی گلیم پشم اندر پشم مال شیروان دیگر پشم اندر پنبه مال شیراز و مثل گوش گربه گرم و نرم و سبك است

Aghā. Man, ki safar na-mīravam, gilīm-i safarī lāzim nadāram.

Master. I who do not travel, do not need travelling carpets.

آقا من که بسفر نمیروم گلیم سفری لازم ندارم

Tājir. Barāyi khāna namad-i

Merchant. For the house, a

تاجر برای خانه نمد یزدی

از همهٔ فرشها بهتر است ببینید چه قدر کلفت و نرم است	Yazdī az hamā-yi farshhā bihtar ast. bibīnīd chi qadr kuluft u narm ast.	Yezd felt carpet is better than any other carpet. Look how thick and how soft it is.
آقا امروز دیگر فرصت ندارم بعد از دو سه روز دیگر انشاء الله میآیم جنسِ شمارا میبینم	*Aghā.* Imrūz dīgar fursat nadāram baᶜd az du sih rūz-i dīgar in shā Allāh mīāyam, jins-i shumā-rā mībīnam.	*Master.* I have no more time to-day. If God will, I shall come (back again) in two or three days to see your goods.
خدا حافظ	Khudā hāfiz!	Goodbye.
تاجر خدا نگهدار شما انشاء الله زودتر برمیگردید مرا سرافراز میفرمائید	*Tājir.* Khudā nigahdār-i shumā! in shā Allāh zūdtar bar mīgardīd, marā sarafrāz mīfarmāyīd.	*Merchant.* May God be your keeper! I hope you will return very soon and condescend to honor me.
در سفره	*dar sufra.*	*Dinner-time.*
آقا اسمعیل	*Aghā.* Ismaᶜīl!	*Master.* Ismail!
اسمعیل بلی صاحب	*Ismaᶜīl.* Balī sāhib! [1])	*Ismail.* Yes, sir!
آقا عبد الله پیش خدمت هم بگو بیاید	*Aghā.* Abdullāh-i pīshkhidmat ham bigū bīāyad.	*Master.* Tell Abdullah the butler to come also.

1) صاحب *sāhib*, Sir, is a title given to Europeans only.

اسمعیل عبدالله حاضر است	*Ismaʿīl.* Abdullāh hāzir ast.	*Ismail.* Abdullah is ready.
آقا حالا برو غلام رضای فراش را با استاد مهدی آشپز حاضر کن و خودت هم بیا	*Aghā.* Hālā birou Ghulām Rizā-yi farrāsh-rā bā ustād Mehdī-yi āshpaz hāzir kun, va khudat ham bīā.	*Master.* Now go and tell Ghulam Riza, the second servant, and Master Mehdi, the cook to get ready, and then come back.
اسمعیل همه حاضراند صاحب	*Ismaʿīl.* Hamah āzir and, sāhib.	*Ismail.* All are ready, sir.
آقا خیلی خوب گوش کنید دیدم برای شما زحمت است یك شام مفصّلی بمن بدهید از این جهت امشب نان و پنیر و کره چیزی دیگر نمیخواهم باخورم میتوانید بوقت و بی دردِ سر حاضر کنید	*Aghā.* Kheilī khūb, gūsh kunīd! dīdam barāyi shumā zahmat ast yak shām-i mufassalī bi man bidahīd. Az īn jihat im-shab nun u panīr u kara chizī dīgar na-mīkhāham bikhu-ram. Mītavānīd bi vakht va bī dard-i sar hāzir kunīd?	*Master.* Very well, listen! I have seen that for you it is a great trouble to give me an elaborate dinner. For this rea-son, this evening I do not wish to eat anything but bread and cheese and butter. Can you get this ready at the right time and without trou-bling (me)? [1]
همهٔ نوکرها استغفر الله صاحب ما برای هر خدمتی حاضریم	*Hama-yi noukarhā.* Istaghfir Ullāh, sahib! mā barāyi har	*All the servants.* God forbid, sir! We are ready for any

1) litt.: without giving me a headache.

هرچه بفرمائید واسطهٔ تان پیدا میکنیم خدمت سرکار را بزرگترین نعمتها میدانیم	khidmatī hāzir-īm har chi bi-farmāyīd vasaʿyi-tun (vulg. for vāsita-yi tān) peidā mī-kunīm. Khidmat-i sarkār-rā buzurgtarīn-i niʿmathā mī-dānīm.	service; whatever you order, we will get for you. We consider it the greatest blessing to be in your service.
آشپز عرض میشود صاحب برای امشب یك خوراك خیلی خوبی میخواستم واسطهٔ سرکار درست بکنم بعد از سوپ آزاد ماهی و بعد از آن فسنجان چلو و بعد از آن کباب شکار با کاهو و نخود فرنکی ویك شیرینی بسیار اعلی که تا بحال نخورده باشید میخواستم درست کنم حالا میفرمائید	*Ashpaz.* Arz mīshavad, sāhib, barāyi imshab yak khurāk-i kheilī khūbī mīkhāstam va-sayi sarkār durust bikunam: baʿd az sūp[1]) āzād-māhī va baʿd az un fisinjān chilou va baʿd az un kabāb-i shikār bā kāhū va nukhud-i farangī va yak shīrīnī-yi bisyār aʿlā ki tā bi hāl na khurda bāshīd mīkhāstam durust kunam. — hālā mīfarmāyīd durust na-	*Cook.* I make the petition, sir, that for this evening I wished to prepare a very good dinner for your Excellency. After the soup, salmon, then "fisinjanchilou" (a Persian rice dish), then some roast venison with lettuce and peas, and lastly, an excellent sweet dish, the like of which you have not yet tasted. Now if you order me not to

1) taken from the English or French.

درست نکنم نمیکنم اطاعت میکنم	kunam, durust na-mīkunam, itā'at mīkunam.	get this ready, I will not do it, I will obey you.
آقا اسباب آن همهٔ خوراك حاضر است	*Agha.* Asbāb-i un hama-yi khurāk hāzir ast?	*Master.* Are the things ready for all these dishes?
آشپز چرا همهٔ اش توی آشپز خانه حاضر است بفرمائید تماشا بکنید	*Ashpaz.* Chirā! hama-y-ash tū-yi āshpazkhāna hāzir ast, bifarmāyīd, tamāshā bikunīd.	*Cook.* Certainly! Everything is ready in the kitchen. *If you wish to see.*
آقا پس نخود فرنکی و ماهی را بیار ببینم	*Aghā.* Pas nukhud-i farangī va māhīrā bīār bibīnam.	*Master.* Well then bring me the peas and the fish so that I may see them.
آشپز شاگردم رفته بازار حالا میآرد	*Ashpāz.* Shāgird-am rafta bāzār, hālā miārad.	*Cook.* My boy has gone to the bazar, he will bring them at once.
آقا پس حاضر نیست خوراك دیگر را هرچه هست بیار اینجا	*Aghā.* Pas hāzir nīst. khurāk-i dīgar-rā har chi hast bīār īnjā.	*Master.* Then they are *not* ready. Bring whatever else there is here.
آشپز چشم (میرود بیرون)	*Ashpaz.* Chashm! (mīravad bīrūn).	*Cook.* By my eyes! (very good Sir) (he goes out).

آقا حالا باز بشما میگویم ساعت هفت بعد از ظهر میخواهم شام بخورم نان و پنیر و کره باید حاضر باشد	*Aghā.* Hālā bāz bi shumā mī-gūyam sāᶜat-i haft baᶜd az zuhr mīkhāham shām bikhu-ram. nun u panīr u kara bā-yad hāzir bashad.	*Master.* Now once more I tell you that I want to have sup-per at seven hours after noon. The bread and cheese and butter must be ready.
همهٔ نوکرها چشم حاضر میکنیم (تعظیم کرده بیرون میروند)	*Hama-yi noukarhā.* Chashm! Hāzirm mīkunīm. (taᶜzīm kar-da bīrun mīravand).	*All the servants.* Very well! We will get it all ready. (Ha-ving bowed, they go out).
آقا (صدا میکنند) آشپز را بفرستید اینجا	*Aghā.* Sadā mīkunad) Ashpaz-ra bifiristīd īnjā!	*Master* (calls) Send the cook here!
نوکرها (از بیرون) چشم	*Noukarha* (az bīrūn). Chashm!	*Servants.* (outside). By our eyes!
آشپز فرمایشی داشتید آقا	*Ashpaz.* Farmāyishī dāshtīd āghā?	*Cook.* Have you any orders, sir?
آقا آن خوراکی که گفتی آشپز خانه حاضر است کجا است	*Aghā.* Un khurākī, ki guftī āshpazkhāna hāzir ast, kujā-st?	*Master.* Where is that food, which you said was ready in the kitchen?
آشپز فرمودید نان و پنیر میخواهم	*Ashpaz.* Farmūdīd nun u panīr	*Cook.* You said you wished to

بخورم خوراك دیکر پیدا نکردم	mīkhāham bikhuram, khurāk-i dīgar peidā na-kardam.	eat bread and cheese, so I did not get any other food.
آقا پس انچه کفتی همهٔ اش دروغ بود	*Aghā.* Pas unchi guftī hama-y-ash durūgh būd.	*Master.* Well then, all you said was a lie!
آشپز چه عرض کنم شما میفرمائید دروغ است دروغ باشد ولی بنده حالا ده سال است نوکری فرنکی میکنم تا بحال هیچ کس از من خیانتی ندیده است	*Ashpaz.* Chi ᶜarz kunam? Shumā mīfarmāyīd durūgh ast; durūgh bāshad, valī banda hālā dah sāl ast noukarī-yi farangī mīkunam, tā bihāl hīch kas az man khīānatī nadīda ast.	*Cook.* What petition shall I make? If you order it to be an untruth, it probably is an untruth, but (your slave) I have been in European service for ten years, and until now no one has seen any dishonesty in me.
آقا (میخواهد چند تا شلّاق بآشپز بزند) کویا عرق خوردی و مستی	*Aghā.* (Mīkhāhad chand tā shallāgh bi āshpaz bizanad) gūyā ᶜaraq khurdī va mast-ī.	*Master.* (threatening the cook with a whip) Perhaps you have had some arak and are tipsy.
آشپز ببخشید صاحب کُه خوردم دروغ کفتم دیکر نمیکنم	*Ashpaz.* Bibakhshīd sāhib! guh khurdam, durūgh guftam, dīgar na-mīkunam.	*Cook.* Forgive me, sir! I have eaten dirt, I have told a lie, I will not do it again.

آقا کم شو (بیرونش میکند)	*Aghā.* Gum shou! (bīrūn-ash mīkunad).	*Master.* Be off! (turns him out).
آقا اسمعیل ساعت هشت است و شام هنوز حاضر نیست	*Aghā.* Ismaʿīl! Sāʿat-i hasht ast va shām hanūz hāzir nīst.	*Master.* Ismail! It is eight o'clock, and the supper is not yet ready.
اسمعیل حاضر است صاحب	*Ismaʿīl.* Hāzir ast, sāhib.	*Ismail.* It is ready, sir.
آقا چه طور حاضراست هنوز سفره نینداخته اید	*Aghā.* Chi tour hāzir ast? hanūz sufra na-y-andākhta-īd.	*Master.* How can it be ready? you have not yet laid the cloth.
اسمعیل میبندازم صاحب (سفره میارد)	*Ismaʿīl.* Mīandāzam, sāhib (sufra mīārad).	*Ismail.* I will lay it, sir (he brings the table-cloth).
آقا خیلی طول میکشد عبد الله کجا است	*Aghā.* Kheilī tūl mīkashad. Abdullāh kujā-st?	*Master.* It is taking a long time. Where is Abdullah?
اسمعیل رفت حمّام	*Ismaʿīl* Raft hammūm.	*Ismail.* He has gone to the bath.
آقا پس غلام رضا بیاید	*Aghā.* Pas Ghulām Rizā bīāyad.	*Master.* Then let Ghulam Riza come.

اسمعیل غلام رضا نیستش [1]	*Ismaʿīl.* Ghulām Rizā nīst-ash.	*Ismail.* Ghulam Riza is not here.
—		
آقا کجاست	*Aghā.* Kujā-st?	*Master.* Where is he?
اسمعیل رفت پی کره	*Ismaʿīl.* Raft pei-i kara.	*Ismail.* He has gone for the butter.
—		
آقا آشپز بیاید	*Aghā.* Ashpaz bīāyad.	*Master.* The cook is to come here.
اسمعیل رفت نان بگیرد	*Ismaʿīl.* Raft nun bigīrad.	*Ismail.* He has gone to fetch the bread.
—		
آقا پنیر آوردید	*Aghā.* Panīr āvurdīd?	*Master.* Have you brought the cheese?
اسمعیل چه پنیری میفرمائید بیارم پنیر فرنکی یا پنیر ایرانی	*Ismaʿīl.* Chi panīrī mīfarmāyīd bīāram? panīr-i farangī yā panīr-i īrānī?	*Ismail.* What kind of cheese do you wish me to bring? European cheese, or Persian cheese?
—		
آقا بکو آورده یا نه	*Aghā.* Bigū āvurda-ī yā na?	*Master.* Say, have you brought it or not?

1) *nīst-ash* vulgar for *nīst.*

اسمعیل چه عرض کنم ببینم شاکرد آشپز آورده است یا خیر	*Ismaʿīl.* Chi ʿarz kunam? bibīnam shāgird-i āshpaz āvurda ast yā kheir.	*Ismail.* What petition shall I make? I will see whether the cook's boy has brought it or not.
آقا شاکرد آشپز بکو بیاید تو	*Aghā.* Shāgird-i āshpaz bigū bīāyad tū.	*Master.* Tell the cook's boy to come in.
اسمعیل چشم	*Ismaʿīl.* Chashm!	*Ismail.* By my eyes!
شاکرد آشپز سلام	*Shāgird-i āshpaz.* Salām!	*The cook's boy.* Salaam!
آقا استاد مهدی کو	*Aghā.* Ustād Mehdī kū?	*Master.* Where is Master Mehdi?
شاکرد از ظهری که کم التفاتی فرمودید احوالش بهم خورده [1]) تب کرده رفته منزل افتاده خوابیده	*Shāgird* Az zuhr, ki kam iltifatī farmūdīd ahvāl-ash bi ham khurda [1]), tap karda, rafta manzil, uftāda, khābīda.	*The cook's boy.* From the time of noon, when you showed him a lack of kindness, his health became bad, he got fever, went home, lay down and slept.
آقا برو کم شو زهرمار	*Aghā.* Birou, gum shou, zahr-i mār!	*Master.* Be off, disappear, serpent's poison!

1) The omitting of the copula *ast* is very frequent among the common people

اسمعیل شیخ حسن آمد خدمت سرکار	*Ismaʿīl.* Sheikh Hasan āmad khidmat-i sarkār.	*Ismail.* Sheikh Hassan has come to see your Excellency.
آقا بسم اللّه تشریف بیارد	*Aghā.* B'ism Illāh! tashrīf bīārad.	*Master.* In the Name of God! let him come in.
شیخ حسن سلام علیکم انشاء اللّه کسالتی ندارید	*Sheikh. Hasan* Salāmun ʿaleikum! in shā Allāh kasālatī na-dārīd.	*Sheikh Hassan.* Good evening! (Peace be with you!) I hope you are not indisposed.
آقا خیر احوالم از التفات شماخوب است اما اوقاتم مثل سك تلخ است	*Aghā.* Kheir, ahvāl-am az iltifāt-i shumā khūb ast, ammā ouqāt-am misl-i sag talkh ast.	*Master.* No, my health is good, thanks to your kindness, but my times are bitter like those of a dog.
شیخ حسن پس چه شده است	*Sheikh. Hasan.* Pas chi shuda ast?	*Sheikh Hassan.* Well, what has happened?
آقا چون نوکرها هیچوقت شام و نهار بوقت معیّن نمیدادند گفتم امشب یك خوراك خیلی مختصری بخورم نان و پنیر	*Aghā.* Chun noukarhā hīch-vakht shām u nahār bi-vakht-i muʿeiyan na-mīdādand, guftam imshab yak khurāk-i kheilī mukhtasarī bikhuram,	*Master.* As the servants never gave dinner and lunch at the appointed time, I said that this evening I would eat very simple food: bread, cheese,

وکره چیزی دیکر نخواسته بودم اینرا هم بمن ندادند با این جور مردم چه کار بکنم	nun u panīr u kara chīzī dīgar na-khāsta būdam. Inrā ham bi man na-dādand. bā īn jūr mardum chi kār bikunam?	and butter. Anything else I did not want. Even this they did not give me. What shall I do with such men?
شیخ حسن میدانید آقا چیزی خواسته بودید که انجامش محال است	*Sheikh Hasan.* Mīdānīd, āghā, chīzī khāsta būdīd, ki anjāmash máhāl ast.	*Sheikh Hassan.* Do you know, sir, you have asked for something, the accomplishment of which is impossible.
آقا چه طور نان و پنیر در تمام طهران پیدا نمیشود	*Aghā.* Chi tour? nun u panīr dar tamām-i Tahrān peidā na-mīshavad?	*Master.* How is that? Is it impossible to find bread and cheese in all Tehran?
شیخ حسن نان و پنیر از فضل خدا فراوان است امّا نوکر درست کاری یافت نمیشود این همه نوکرها مواجبی که دارند کفایتشان نمیکند کرانی هم هست همه میخواهند در خرید و فروش مداخل زیادی	*Sheikh Hasan.* Nun u panīr az fazl-i Khudā faravān ast, ammā noukar-i durustkārī yāft namīshavad. In hama noukarhā mavājibī-ki dārand kafāyat-i-shun namīkunad; girānī ham hast. Hama mīkhāhand dar kharīd u furūsh	*Sheikh Hassan.* Bread and cheese praise be to God! are plentiful, but honest servants are not to be found. All these servants cannot manage to live on their wages, living is also expensive nowadays. They all wish to make an

بکنند از این سبب است که نان و پنیر حاضر نکردند	madākhil-i zīādī bikunand. Az īn sabab ast, ki nun u panīr hāzir na-kardand.	enormous profit by buying and selling. For these reason they did not get the bread and the cheese.
آقا پس خوراك دیکر را چرا هیچ وقت خوب و بوقت فراهم نمیآرند و برای هرکاری که بآنها رجوع میکنم یك عذری دارند	*Aghā.* Pas khurāk-i dīgar-rā chirā hīch vakht khūb va bi-vakht farāham na-mīārand va barāyi har kārī ki bi unhā rujūᶜ mīkunam yak ᶜuzrī dārand?	*Master.* Well then, why do they not serve other dishes properly and punctually? And why do they have an excuse for anything I tell them to do?
شیخ حسن این طبیعتشان است آدم تنبل عوض یك کار هزار عذر میآرد اکر در ایران میخواهید بمانید باید خیلی صبر و حوصله داشته باشید	*Sheikh Hasan.* In tabᶜīat-i-shun ast. Adam-i tambal ᶜavaz-i yak kār hazār ᶜuzr mīārad. Agar dar Irān mī-khāhīd bimānīd, bāyad kheilī sabr u housala dāshta bāshīd.	*Sheikh Hassan.* That is their nature. A lazy man will give a thousand excuses instead of doing one thing. If you wish to remain in Persia, you must have much patience.

در سواری	*dar savārī.*	*About riding.*
آقا دو ساعت بعد از ظهر اسپِ کهر را برای من و قزل را برای خودت زین کن	*Aghā* [1]). Du sāᶜat baᶜd az zuhr asp-i kahar-rā barāyi man va qizil-rā barāyi khudat zīn kun.	*Master.* At two o'clock in the afternoon you must saddle the bay horse for me and the grey horse for yourself.
جلودار چشم برای سرکار دهنه بزنم یا آبخوری	*Jiloudār.* Chashm! barāyi sarkār dahana bizanam yā ābkhurī?	1st *Groom.* By my eyes! — Shall I put on a curb or a snaffle for your Excellency?
آقا آبخوری بزن	*Aghā.* Abkhurī bizan.	*Master.* Put on the snaffle.
جلودار آبخوری شکسته است	*Jiloudar.* Abkhurī shikasta ast.	1st *Groom.* The snaffle is broken.
آقا پس همان دهنه را بزن	*Aghā.* Pas hamun dahana rā bizan.	*Master.* Then just put on the curb.
جلودار دهنه زنجیرش کم شده است جلو هم پاره است	*Jiloudār.* Dahana zanjīr-ash gum shuda ast, jilou ham pāra ast.	1st *Groom.* The chin-chain of the curb is lost, the bridle is also torn.

1) آقا master and آغا eunuch are both pronounced alike.

آقا پس چه باید کرد عجالتاً یکی امانت بگیر تا فردا بده تعمیر کنند	*Aghā.* Pas chi bāyad kard? — ʿijālatan yakī amānat bigīr, tā fardā bidih taʿmīr kunand.	*Master.* Well then, what is to be done? for the present borrow one, and get ours mended by to-morrow.
جلودار خیلی خوب	*Jiloudār.* Kheilī khūb!	1st *Groom.* Very well!
آقا اسبِ سمند چه طور است	*Aghā.* Asp-i samand chi tour ast?	*Master.* How is the dun horse?
جلودار عیب ندارد قدری سینه کبیر شده است	*Jiloudār.* ʿEib na dārad, qadrī sīna-gīr shuda ast.	1st *Groom.* There is nothing the matter with him, he has only caught cold.
آقا خانم میخواست سمندرا سوار شود زینِ زنانه به اسبِ کرند بزن	*Aghā.* Khānum mīkhāst samandrā savār shavad, zīn-i zanāna bi asp-i kurand bizan.	*Master.* Your mistress wished to ride the dun horse. Put the lady's saddle on the chestnut horse.
جلودار کرند قدری میلنگد	*Jiloudār.* Kurand qadrī mīlangad.	1st *Groom.* The chestnut is rather lame.
آقا از کی میلنگد	*Aghā.* Az kei mīlangad?	*Master.* Since when is he lame?

جلودار از دیروز که نعلش کردند میلنکد میخ خورده است و دستشرا زمین نمیگذارد

Jiloudār. Az dīrūz, ki naʿl-ash kardand, mīlangad, mīkh khurda ast va dast-ash-rā zamīn na-nīguzārad.

1st *Groom.* Since yesterday, when they shod him, he limps, a nail has gone into his hoof (lit. he has eaten a nail) and he does not put his leg on the ground.

آقا پس اسب قره کهر را بیرون بکش خیلی بد تیمار شده است

Aghā. Pas asp-i qara kahar-ra bīrūn bihash. — kheilī bad tīmār shuda ast.

Master. Then bring out the dark bay. — He has been very badly groomed.

مهتر سر شما هر روز سه دفعه تیمار میکنم شال میمالم یال و دمش را هر روز میشورم

Mihtar. Sar-i shumā! har rūz si dafʿa tīmār mīkunam, shāl mīmālam· yāl u dum-ash-rā har rūz mīshūram.

2d *Groom.* By your head! Every day I groom him three times, I rub him down. I wash his mane and his tail every day.

آقا پس چرا اینقدر کثیف است خیلی هم لاغر است یقینًا جوش را تمام نمیدهی

Aghā. Pas chirā īnqadr kasīf ast? kheilī ham lāghir ast yaqīnan jou-ash-rā tamām na-mīdahī.

Master. Well then, why is he so dirty? He is also very lean. Surely you do not give him the whole of his barley.

مهتر و اللّه بسر شما و جان خانم یک دانه جو خیانت

Mihtar. Vallāh! bi sar-i shumā va jān-i khānum yak dūna

2d *Groom.* By God! By your head and by the soul of my

نمیکنم نمک بحرامی نکردم
اگر میخواهید این اسپ چاق
شود باید بقصیل ببندید

jou khīānat na-mīkunam na-mak bi harāmī na-kardam. Agar mīkhāhīd īn asp chāq shavad, bāyad bi qasīl bi-bandīd.

mistress I do not steal a single grain of barley. I have not stolen your salt (i. e. I am not ungrateful). If you want to make this horse get fat, you must give it green fodder.

آقا حالا وقت قصیل نیست
علف هنوز خیلی کران است
یک هفتهٔ دیکر سبز میدهیم

Aghā. Hālā vakht-i qasīl nīst, ᶜalaf hanūz kheilī girān ast. Yak hafta-yi dīgar sabz mī-dahīm.

Master. Now is not the season for green fodder. As yet grass is very dear. In a week we will give him green fodder.

مهتر این اسبها هیچکدام نه
جل دارد نه نمد همه اش
تیکه پاره است میفرمائید بازار
میروم تازه میخرم

Mihtar. In asphā hīch kudām na jul dārad, na namad, hama-y-ash tika pāra ast. Mīfarmāyīd, bāzār mīravam, tāza mīkharam.

Groom. Not one of these horses have a cloth, nor a felt rug, all are torn. If you allow it, I will go to the bazar and buy new ones.

آقا خیر بعد از چند روز دیکر
جل پیراهن میبندیم هوا کرم

Aghā. Kheir, baᶜd az chand rūz-i dīgar jul-pīrāhan mī-

Master. No, in a few days we will give the horses their

	bandīm, havā garm shuda ast.	summer clothing (lit. shirt-covers) the weather has become warm.
مهتر یك پا بند و دو تا میخ طویله و یك افسار هم لازم است	*Mihtar.* Yak pāband u du tā mīkh-i tavīla va yak afsār ham lāzim ast.	*Groom.* A rope and two iron pegs and a halter are also necessary.
آقا هر روز میخواهی بازار بروی مداخل برای خودت پیدا بکنی آنچه هست خوب نگاهدار و تعمیر کن برای چند روز کاه و یونجه داریم	*Aghā.* Har rūz mīkhāhī bāzār biravī madākhil barāyi khūdat peidā bikunī. Unchi hast khūb nigāh dār va taʿmīr kun. — Barāyi chand rūz kāh u yunja dārīm?	*Master.* Every day you want to go to the bazar to make a profit for yourself. Whatever we have you must look after well, and have it repaired. For how many days more have we got straw and hay?
جلودار برای امشب و فردا شب داریم میفرمائید فردا بروم میدان بخرم	*Jiloudār.* Barāyi imshab u fardā shab dārīm. Mīfarmāyīd fardā biravam meidān bikharam?	1st *Groom.* We have (enough) for this evening and to-morrow evening. Do you wish me to go to-morrow to the market to buy some?
آقا بسیار خوب بخر	*Aghā.* Bisyār khūb, bikhar.	*Master.* Very well, buy some.

جلودار پس پول التفات کنید کاه و جو بخرم و اسپهارا هم نعل بندی بکنم	*Jiloudar.* Pas pūl iltifāt kunīd kāh u jou bikharam, asphārā ham naʿlbandī bikunam.	1st *Groom.* Then please give me some money to buy straw and barley. I must also get the horses shod.
آقا تخته پهین خیلی کم است گویا پهین‌را همه فروختی بحمامی خیلی هم کاه قاتی کردی بهتر توجّه بکنید اکر فردا طویله مثل امروز شلوق است شمارا پنج هزار جریمه میکنم	*Aghā.* Takhta-pahīn kheilī kam ast, gūya pahīn-rū hama furūkhtī bi hammāmī. Kheilī ham kāh qātī kardī. Bihtar tavajjuh bikunīd! Agar fardā tavīla misl-i imrūz shulūq ast, shumārā panj hazār jarīma mīkunam.	*Master.* The dung-litters [1]) are very scanty; I suppose you have sold the dung to the bath-man [2]). You have also mixed it with much straw. You must take more care! If to-morrow the stable is in disorder as it is to-day, I will fine you five qarāns. (lit. five thousand dinars).
مهتر چشم اطاعت میکنم	*Mihtar.* Chashm! itāʿat mīkunam.	2d *Groom.* By my eyes! I will obey.
آقا رکاب و دهنه خیلی زنك	*Aghā.* Rikāb u dahana kheilī	*Master.* The stirrups and the bit

1) In Persia, dried dung is used for the horses' litter.

2) In Persia, the baths are heated with dung.

زده است و زینها پر از کرد و خاك شده است	zang zada ast va zīnhā pur gard u khāk shuda ast	are very rusty and the saddles are full of dust and earth.
جلودار سمباده نداریم و زره هم از اصل نداشتیم	*Jiloudār.* Sambāda na-dārīm va zara ham az asl na-dāshtīm.	1st *Groom.* We have no emery paper, and we have never had a polishing-chain.
آقا عذر بدتر از گناه نیار با خاك آجر خوب پاك میشود خوب مواظبت کن اسبابها ضایع نشود	*Aghā.* ʿUzr badtar az gunāh na-y-ār! bā khāk-i ājur khūb pāk mīshavad. khūb mavāzi-bat kun, asbābhā zāiʿ na-shavad.	*Master.* Do not give excuses worse than the faults. With brick-powder they will get quite clean. Take great care not to let my things get spoilt.

Extracts from Nāsir ed-Dīn Shāh's Diaries.

At an Exhibition in London.

صورت خری دیده شد پرسیدم قیمتش چند است رئیس اکسپوزیسیون که مرد فربه ریش سفیدی بود و قیمتهارا	Sūrat-i kharī dīda shud. Pur-sīdam: »qīmat-ash chand ast?" — Raīs-i akspūzīsyūn, ki mard-i farbih-i rīsh safīdī būd va qīmathārā mī-khund, guft: »sad līra-yi in-	The picture of a donkey was seen and I asked the price of it. The Director of the Ex-hibition, a fat, white-beard ed man, who gave information about the prices, told me it

was a hundred pounds sterling, equivalent to two hundred and fifty tumāns of Persia. I remarked: "The value of a live donkey is at the outside five pounds. How is it then, that this, which is but a picture of an ass, is to be paid so dearly for?" The Director said: "Because it is not a source of expense, as it eats neither straw nor barley (the eastern substitutes for hay and oats.)" I replied: »True; it is not a source of outlay; but neither will it carry a load, or give one a ride".

We laughed heartily.

---

glīsī", ki muʿādil-i davīst u panjāh tumān-i Irān ast. Guftam: »Qīmat-i khar-i zinda muntahā panj līra ast; īn ki shikl-i khar ast, chirā bāyad bi īn girānī bāshad?" — Raīs guft: »Chun kharjī na dārad, jou va kāh na mīkhurad." — Guftam: »Agar kharj na dārad, bār ham na mīkashad va savārī na mīdahad. Bisyār khandīdīm.

میخواند کفت صد لیره انکلیسی که معادل دویست و پنجاه تومان ایران است کفتم قیمت خر زنده منتها پنج لیره است اینکه شکل خراست چرا باید باین کرانی باشد رئیس کفت چون خرجی ندارد جو و کاه نمیخورد کفتم اکرخرج ندارد بار هم نمیکشد و سواری نمیدهد بسیار خندیدیم

سفر ایران	*Safar-i Irān.*	*Journey to Persia.*
فرنگی میخوام سفر بروم	*Farangī.* Mīkhāham safar biravam.	*European.* I want to go on a journey.
ایرانی کجا انشاء الله خیال دارید بروید	*Irānī.* Kujāin shā Allāh khayāl dārīd biravīd?	*Persian.* Where, if God will, do you think of going?
فرنگی میخوام بایران سفر بکنم	*Farangī.* Mīkhāham bi Irān safar bikunam.	*European.* I want to travel to Persia.
ایرانی برای کار مخصوصی میروید یا همین برای سیرو سیاحت	*Irānī.* Barāyi kār-i makhsūsī mīravīd, yā hamīn barāyi seir u sīāhat?	*Persian.* Are you going there with a special purpose, or only for the pleasure of sightseeing travelling?
فرنگی خیر آقا میخوام زبان فارسی‌را یاد بگیرم	*Farangī.* Kheir āgha, mīkhāham zabān-i fārsī-rā yād bigīram.	*European.* No sir, I want to learn the Persian language.
ایرانی خیلی خوب برای تحصیل	*Irānī.* Kheilī khūb, barāyi tah-	*Persian.* Very well, for lear-

sīl-i zabān hīch chīz az safar bihtar nīst. bi zūdī mīravīd?	*Farangī.* Ín shā Allāh baᶜd az yak māh-i dīgar. va khāhish dāram ki baᶜzī ittilāᶜāt az vazᶜ-i mamlikat va rāh u rasm-i safar-i Irān bi banda bidahīd.	ning a language, nothing is better than travelling. Do you start soon?
		European. If God will, in another month. I should like you to give me some information about the ways of the country, and its roads and the manner of travelling in Persia.
Irānī. Bifarmāyīd āghā! bā dil u jān ānchi ittilāᶜ dāram ᶜarz mīkunam. chi chīz ast mīkhāstīd bifahmīd?		*Persian.* Please to command, sir! With heart and soul I will give you any information I can. What were you wishing to know?
Farangī. Mīkhāstam bidānam az kudām rāh az Inglīs bi Irān mītavān raft.		*European.* I want to know by which route one can go from England to Persia.
Irānī. Agar az rāh-i daryā		*Persian.* If you like to go by

زبان هیچ چیز از سفر بهتر نیست بزودی میروید

فرنگی انشاء الله بعد از یك ماه دیگر وخواهش دارم که بعضی اطلاعات از وضع مملکت و راه و رسم سفر ایران به بنده بدهید

ایرانی بفرمائید آقا با دل وجان آنچه اطلاع دارم عرض میکنم چه چیز است میخواستید بفهمید

فرنگی میخواستم بدانم از کدام راه از انکلیس به ایران میتوان رفت

ایرانی اگر از راه دریا میل

دارید بروید باید از لندن سوار کشتی بشوید آن کشتی از لندن میرود به جبل الطارق و از آنجا به جزیرهٔ مالت که میانِ دریای سفید واقع است از نهرِ سویس گذشته داخلِ دریای احمر میشوید بعد از آن میرسید به بندر عدن که از شهرهای عربستان است خلاصه از راهِ بحرالهند وارد بندرِ بمبئی میشوید که آنجا چند روز باید توقف نمود	meil dārīd biravīd, bāyad az *Landan* savār-i kashtī bishavīd. ān kashtī az Landan mīravad bi *Jabal ut Tāriq* va az ānjā bi jazīra-yi *Mālt*, ki mīān-i *Daryā-yi Safīd* vāqi^{c} ast. az *Nahr-i Savīs* guzashta dākhil-i *Daryā-yi Ahmar* mīshavīd. ba^{c}d az ān mīravīd bi bandar-i ^{c}*Adan*, ki az shahr-hā-yi ^{c}Arabistān ast. khulāsa az rāh-i *Bahr ul Hind* vārid-i bandar-i *Bambaī* mīshavīd, ki ānjā chand rūz bāyad tavaqquf namūd.	sea, you must take a ship from *London*. That ship goes from London to *Gibraltar*, and from there to the island of *Malta*, which lies in the middle of the *Mediterranean* (the White Sea). Having passed through the *Suez Canal*, you enter the *Red Sea*. After that you go to the port of *Aden*, which is a town in Arabia. At last, crossing the *Indian Ocean*, you reach the port of *Bombay*, where you must stop for some days.
فرنگی از هندوستان میتوان از راهِ خشکی به ایران رسید یاخیر	*Farangī*. Az Hindūstān mītavān az rāh-i khushkī bi Irān rasīd, yā kheir?	*European*. Can I get from India to Persia by land, or not?
ایرانی چون میان هندوستان	*Irānī*. Chun mīān-i Hindūstān	*Persian*. As between India and

وایران ممالک افغانستان و بلوچستان واقع است که آدم‌های آن طرف نمیگذارند خارجه از ملکشان عبور بکند نمیشود از راهِ برّی بروید	va Irān mamālik-i *Afghānistān* va *Balūchistān* vāqi^{c} ast, ki ādamhā-yi ān taraf namīguzārand khārija az mulk-i-shān ^{c}ubūr bikunad, namīshavad az rāh-i barrī biravīd.	Persia lie the countries of *Afghanistan* and *Beluchistan*, whose inhabitants do not allow strangers to pass through their country, it is impossible to go by land.
فرنگی پس از راهِ بحری باید رفت	*Farangī.* Pas az rāh-i bahrī bāyad raft?	*European.* Then I must go by sea?
ایرانی البتّه از بندرِ بمبئی تا بندرِ ابو شهر که لبِ خلیجِ فارس واقع است هر هفته یک دفعه یک کشتیِ بخارِ مالِ انکلیس میرود شما با کمال آسایش و راحت سفر خواهید کرد	*Irānī.* Albatta! az bandar-i *Bambaī* tā bandar-i *Abū-shahr*, ki lab-i khalīj-i Fārs vāqi^{c} ast, har hafta yak daf^{c}a yak kashtī-yi bukhār-i māl-i Inglīs mīravad. shumā bā kamāl-i āsāyish va rāhat safar khāhīd kard.	*Persian.* Of course! From the port of *Bombay* to the port of *Bushire*, which lies on the coast of the Persian Gulf, an English ship goes once a week. You will be able to travel in perfect ease and comfort.
فرنگی از سفرِ دریا هرگز خوشم	*Farangi.* Az safar-i daryā har	*European.* I never care for

نمیآیـد و از تکان و جنبشِ کشتی بیشتر وقتها حالتم بهم میخورد واوقاتم مثلِ سگ تلخ میشود	giz khush-am na-mīāyad va az takān u jumbish-i kashtī bīshtar-i vakhthā hālat-am bi ham mīkhurad va ouqāt-am misl-i sag talkh mīshavad.	a sea journey. The shaking and rocking of the ship generally upsets me and I become melancholy. (lit. my times are bitter like those of a dog).
ایرانی پس چرا سفر میروید	*Irānī.* Pas chirā safar mīravīd?	*Persian.* Then why do you go on a journey?
فرنگی نمیدانستم که این قدر سفرِ دریـا بـایـد کرد و کرنه شاید خیالِ ایـن سفر هـرگز نمیکردم	*Farangi.* Na-mīdānistam ki īn qadr safar-i daryā bāyad kard va garna shāyad khayāl-i īn safar hargiz na-mīkardam.	*European.* I did not know that one had such a long journey by sea. Had I known, I should never perhaps, have conceived the thought of (going on) this journey.
ایرانی خیر آقا سفر از هرچه باشد برای تربیتِ آدم بهتر است تا شخصی سفر نکند پخته	*Irānī.* Kheir āghā, safar az har chi bāshad barāyi tarbīat-i ādam bihtar ast. tā shakhsī safar na-kunad pukhta na-	*Persian.* No sir, a journey is better than anything else for the education of a man. Till a person has travelled, he

نمیشود و شیخ سعدی میگوید	mīshavad va Sheikh Saᶜdī mīgūyad:	does not become experienced (lit. ripe), and Sheikh Sadi says:
تا بدکان خانه در کروی	"tā bi dukkān-i khāna dar gi-rou-ī,	"As long as you remain a for-feit in the shop of the house.
هرگز ای خام آدمی نشوی	"hargiz, ei khām, adamī na-shavī.	"Surely, you will not, oh un-ripe one! become a man.
برو اندر جهان تفرج کن	"birou andar jahān tafarruj kun,	"Go into the world and look about you.
پیش از ان روز کز جهان بروی	"pīsh az ān rūz k'az jahān bi-ravī! —	"Before the time comes when you have to leave the world.
فرنگی درست است و شعرا هم کفته اند	*Farangi.* Durust ast, va shuᶜarā ham gufta and:	*European.* That is true, and the poets have also said:
مشکلی نیست که آسان نشود	"mushkilī nīst, ki āsān na-shavad,	"There is nothing difficult which may not become easy
مرد باید که هراسان نشود	"mard bāyad ki harāsān na-shavad.	"A man must not be frighte-ned."
پس بفرمائید از بندرِ بمبئی تابندرِ ابو شهر چند روز راه است	pas bifarmāyīd az bandar-i *Bambaī* tā bandar-i *Abushahr* chand rūz rāh ast.	Now then, tell me, how many days' journey is there be-tween *Bombay* and *Bushire*?

ایرانی اگر میخواهید مسقط را که شهر مشهورِ عربستان است به بینید دوازده روز طول میکشد

Irānī. Agar mīkhāhīd *Masqat*-rā, ki shahr-i mashhūr-i ᶜArabistān ast, bibīnīd, davāzdah rūz tūl mīkashad.

Persian. If you wish to see *Masqat*, which is a celebrated Arabian town, the journey takes 12 days. Otherwise it takes 10 days.

فرنکی میان بمبئی و بوشهر چند منزل است

Farangī. Mīan-i Bambaī va Bushahr chand manzil ast?

European. How many stations are there between Bombay and Bushire?

ایرانی کشتی اول رو بشمال میرود تا بندرِ کراچی که یکی از بنادرِ معظم ممالکِ هند است وآنجا یک شب و یک روز توقف میشود اگر میل داشته باشید میتوانید در مهمانخانهٔ شهرِ کراچی منزل کنید

Irānī. Kashtī avval rū bi shamāl mīravad tā bandar-i *Karāchī*, ki yakī az banādir-i muᶜazzam-i mamālik-i Hind ast va ānjā yak shab u yak rūz tavaqquf mīshavad. agar meil dāshta bāshīd mītavānīd dar mihmānkhāna-yi shahr-i *Karāchī* manzil kunīd.

Persian. At first the ship goes in a northerly direction to the port of *Karāchi*, which is one of the most important Indian ports, there it stops for a night and a day. If you like you can stay at the hotel of the town of Karāchi.

فرنکی کراچی شهرِ بزرگی است یاخیر

Farangī. Karāchī shahr-i buzurgī-st yā kheir?

European. Is Karāchi a large town or not?

ایرانی چرا شهر بزرك و آباد است از صد و چهار هزار نفر بیشتر جمعیت دارد	*Irānī.* Chirā, shahr buzurg va ābād ast. az sad u chahār hazār nafar bīshtar jamʿīat dārad.	*Persian.* Yes, the town is large and populous. It has more than 104,000 inhabitants.
فرنکی اهالی شهر همهٔ شان مسلمان هستند	*Farangī.* Ahālī-yi shahr hamayi-shān Musalmān hastand?	*European.* Are the inhabitants of the town all Mohammedans?
ایرانی خیر نصفشان مسلمان هستند و نصف دیکر هندی (یعنی بت‌پرست) و پارسی (یعنی گبر یا آتش پرست) و عیسوی	*Irānī.* Kheir, nisf-i-shān Musalmān hastand va nisf-i dīgar Hindī (yaʿnī butparast) va Pārsī (yaʿnī Gabr yā ātash parast) va ʿIsavī.	*Persian.* No, half of them are Mussulmans and the other half are Hindus (namely: idol-worshippers), Parsees (namely: fire-worshippers), and Christians.
فرنکی شنیده ام که تجارتکاه بزرکی است	*Farangī.* Shanīda am ki tijāratgāh-i buzurgī-st.	*European.* I have heard that it is an important commercial town.
ایرانی درست است از هر طرف دنیا کشتیهای بخار و بادبانی	*Irānī.* Durust ast, az har taraf-i dunyā kashtīhā-yi bukhār va bādbānī mīāyand, māl va	*Persian.* That is true. From all parts of the world steamers and sailing-vessels come

میآیند مال وجنسِ هندوستان را بار کرده به ولایتهای دیکر میبرند مرکزِ تجارتِ عمدهٔ است	jins-i Hindūstān-rā bār karda bi vilāyathā-yi dīgar mībarand. markaz-i tijārat-i ʿumdaī-st.	to fetch Indian goods and wares, and take them to other countries. It is an important centre of commerce.
فرنکی پس از کراچی کجا باید رفت	*Farangī.* Pas az Karāchī kujā bāyad raft?	*European.* Well, where do we go to after Karāchi?
ایرانی اوّلاً بگوادر که بندرِ کوچکِ مکران است	*Irānī.* Avvalan bi *Gvādar*, ki bandar-i kūchik-i *Makrān* ast.	*Persian.* First to *Gvadar*, which is a small port in *Makran.*
فرنکی مکران چه مملکتی است	*Farangī. Makrān* chi mamlikatī-st?	*European.* What country is Makran?
ایرانی مکران اسمِ ساحلِ بلوچستان است از کوادر میروید بمسقط	*Irānī. Makrān* ism-i sāhil-i Baluchistān ast. az Gvādar mīravīd bi *Masqat.*	*Persian.* Makran is the name of the coast of *Beluchistan* From Gvadar you go to *Masqat.*
فرنکی مسقط قابلِ دیدن است	*Farangī.* Masqat qābil-i dīdan ast?	*European.* Is Masqat worth seeing?
ایرانی بغیر از سنك و دریا	*Irānī.* Bi gheir az sang va daryā	*Persian.* There is nothing to

چیزی دیده نمیشود چهار
پنج تا قصر و قلعه سر سنگ
بنا کرده اند دو تا خانهٔ
باصفا بیشتر ندارد یکی خانهٔ
سفیرِ انکلیس و آن دیگر عمارتِ
سیّد

chīzī dīda na-mīshavad. chahār panj tā qasr va qalʿa sar-i sang-binā karda and. du tā khāna-yi bā safā bīshtar nadārad, yakī khāna-yi safīr-i Inglīs va ān dīgar ʿimārat-i Seyyid.

be seen but rocks and sea. Four or five forts have been built on the rock. Masqat has only two fine houses; one is the house of the English resident, the other is the palace of the Seyyid.

فرنگی سید که را میگویند

Farangī. Seyyid ki-rā mīgūyand?

European. Whom do they call Seyyid?

ایرانی سلطانِ مسقط را سید
میگویند چرا که از خاندانِ
پیغمبر است اسمِ سیّدِ مرحوم
سید ترکی بود برادرِ سلطانِ
مغفورِ زنگبار بود سیدِ حالیه
پسرِ بزرگِ سید ترکی است
اسمش سید فیصل است

Irānī. Sultān-i Masqat-rā Seyyid mīgūyand, chirā ki az khāndān-i Peighambar ast. ism-i Seyyid-i marhūm *Seyyid Turkī* būd. barādar-i sultān-i maghfūr-i *Zangbār* būd. Seyyid-i hālīa pisar-i buzurg-i Seyyid Turkī-st; ism-ash *Seyyid Feisal* ast.

Persian. They call the Sultan of Masqat Seyyid, because he is a descendant of the Prophet. The name of the deceased Seyyid was Seyyid Turkī. He was the brother of the deceased Sultan of *Zanzibar*. The present Seyyid is the eldest son of Seyyid Turkī; his name is *Seyyid Feisal*.

European. Is the commerce of Masqat great or small?

Persian. It is not much, and the bazaar is small. There is much slave-trading. They bring the negroes from *Zanzibar* to *Masqat*, and from there they send them to *Persia* and to *Baghdad* There is little cultivation in the vicinity of the town. From the environs of the city, dates are brought, and are sold. American merchants take the Masqat dates in their ships to their own country. Near the town nothing green is to be seen. The cows and donkeys of those parts eat

Farangī tijārat-i Maskat zīād ast yā kam?

Irānī. Chandān zīād nīst. bāzār-ash ham kūchik ast banda-furūshī bisyār ast. zangīhā-rā az *Zangbār* mīārand bi *Masqat* va az ānjā mīfiristand bi *Irān* va bi *Baghdād*. ābādī-yi havālī-yi shahr kam ast. az atrāf-i shahr khurmā mīā-varand, mīfurūshand. tājirhā-yi Yangī Dunyā khurmā-yi Masqat-rā bā kashtī mībarand bi vilāyat-i khud-i shān. qa-rīb-i shahr hīch sabzī dīda na-mīshavad. gāv va ulāgh-i ānjā ʿavaz-i ʿalaf māhī-yi khushk mīkhurand. halvā-yi Masqat mashhūr ast; tā bi

فرنکی تجارتِ مسقط زیاد است یا کم

ایرانی چندان زیاد نیست بازارش هم کوچک است بنده فروشی بسیار است زنگی‌ها را از زنگبار میآرند به مسقط و از آنجا میفرستند بایران و ببغداد آبادیِ حوالیِ شهر کم است از اطرافِ شهر خرما میآورند میفروشند تاجرهای ینکی دنیا خرمای مسقط را با کشتی میبرند بولایتِ خودِ شان قریبِ شهر هیچ سبزی دیده نمیشود کاو و الاغِ آنجا عوضِ علف ماهیِ

خشك مبخورند حلواى مسقط مشهور است تا بهند و ايران حمل و نقل ميشود	Hind u Irān haml u naql mīshavad.	dried fish instead of fodder. The halvā (a sweet) of Masqat is famous and is exported to India and Persia.
فرنكى آب و هواى مسقط چه طور است	*Farangī.* Ab u havā-yi Masqat chi tour ast?	*European.* What is the climate of Masqat?
ايرانى مثل جهنّم است از هند هم كرم‌تر است با وجود اين امراض سخت در آنجا كم است	*Iranī.* Misl-i jahannam ast, az Hind ham garmtar ast. bā vujūd-i īn amrāz-i sakht dar ānjā kam ast.	*Persian.* It is like hell; it is hotter than India. Nevertheless, serious illnesses are rare there.
فرنكى در مسقط چند ساعت توقّف ميشود	*Farangī.* Dar Masqat chand sā'at tavaqquf mīshavad?	*European.* How many hours do we stop at Masqat?
ايرانى دوازده ساعت صبح رسيده شام از آنجا ميرويد صبح ديكر انشاء اللّه ميرسيد	*Irānī.* Davāzdah sā'at. subh raesīda shām az ānjā mīravīd, subh-i dīgar in shā Allāh mīrasīd bi Jāskh, ki langargāh-i	*Persian.* Twelve hours. You arrive in the morning and leave in the evening. If God will, you then reach *Jaskh*,

به جاشک که لنگرگاه کوچك مکران است

kūchik-i Makrān ast.

which is a small landing-place in Makran.

فرنکی جاشك هم شهر عمده است

Farangī. Jāshk ham shahr-i ᶜumdaī-st?

European. Is Jashk also an important place?

ایرانی خیر قصبهٔ کوچکی است صفائی ندارد تلگرافخانهٔ انکلیس در جاشک است از جاشک تا بندر عباس یک شبانه روز راه است

Irānī. Kheir, qasaba-yi kūchikī-st, safāī na-dārad. talagrāf-khāna-yi inglīs dar Jāshk ast. az Jāskh tā *Bandar ᶜAbbās* yak shabāna rūz rāh ast.

Persian. No, it is a small village. It is not pretty. There is an English telegraph-office at Jaskh. From Jashk to *Bandar-Abbas* it is one night and one day's journey.

فرنکی شنیدم که بندر عباس را شاه عباس بنا کرده و در آن زمان شهرِ معتبری بوده است

Farangī. Shanīdam ki Bandar ᶜAbbās-rā Shāh ᶜAbbās binā karda va dar ān zamān shahr-i muᵓtabarī būda ast.

European. I have heard that Shah Abbas built Bandar Abbas, and that in his days, it was an important town.

ایرانی بلی احوالاتِ بندر عباس از تاریخ ایران معلوم است حالا هم مرکز تجارت است

Irānī. Balī ahvālāt-i Bandar ᶜAbbās az tārīkh-i Irān maᶜlūm ast. hālā ham markaz-i tijārat ast, ammā Linga az

Persian. Yes, the condition of Bandar Abbas is known from Persian history. It is still today a centre of commerce,

اما لنکه از بندرِ عباسی بزرك تر و پر جمغیّت تر است	bandar-i ʿAbbāsī buzurgtar va pur-jamʿiattar ast.	but *Linga* is larger and more densely populated than Bandar Abbas.
فرنکی لنکه کجا واقع است	*Farangī.* Linga kujā vāqiʿ ast?	*European.* Where does Linga lie?
ایرانی داخلِ خلیجِ فارس است ولنگرگاهش خوب است چرا که از بادِ شمال که بادِ سختِ تمامِ خلیجِ فارس است محفوظ است بازارهای خوب دارد قالی و کلیم و نمد مالِ ایران از لنکه میبرند بمسقط و زنکبار کشتیِ خوب هم در لنکه میسازند	*Irānī.* Dākhil-i khalīj-i Fārs ast va langargāh-ash khūb ast, chirā ki az bād-i shamāl, ki bād-i sakht-i tamām-i *Khalīj-i Fārs* ast, mahfūz ast. Bāzārhā-yi khūb dārad qālī va gilīm va namad māl-i Irān az Linga mībarand bi Masqat va Zangbār. kashtī-yi khūb ham dar Linga mīsāzand.	*Persian.* It lies in the Persian Gulf, and its landing-place is good, because it is protected from the North Wind, which is very violent in the whole *Persian Gulf.* It has good bazaars. They export Persian woven and felt carpets from Linga to Masqat and to Zanzibar. They also build good ships at Linga.
فرنکی بعد از لنکه کدام منزل است	*Farangī.* Baʿd az Linga kudām manzil ast?	*European.* Which is the station after Linga?

Persian. It is the island of *Bahrein*, where they find pearls at the bottom of the sea. Perhaps you have heard that the pearls of the Persian Gulf are famous. Most of them come from Bahrein. The soil of the Island of Bahrein is well cultivated, and covered with verdure full of date-palms. The donkeys of Bahrein, are very strong, tall, well made, and swift. For riding they are better than ponies. From Bahrein to *Bushire* you teke a northerly direction.

Irānī. Jazīra-yi *Bahrein* ast, ki murvārīd dar unjā az tah-i daryā peidā mīkunand. gūyā shanīda-īd ki murvārīd-i kha-līj-i Fārs mashhūr ast. agh-lab-ash māl-i Bahrein ast. Za-mīn-i jazāyir-i Bahrein ābād va sabz va pur az dirakht-i khurmā-st. ulāghhā-yi Bah-rein bisyār qavī va buzurg va khush tarkīb va tundrou va barāyi savārī az yābū bihtar and. az Bahrein bi *Būshahr* rū bi shamāl mīravīd.

ایرانی جزیرهٔ بحرین است که مروارید در آنجا از تهِ دریا پیدا میکنند گویا شنیده اید که مروارید خلیج فارس مشهور است اغلبش مالِ بحرین است زمینِ جزایرِ بحرین آباد و سبز و پر از درختِ خرما است اولاغهای بحرین بسیار قوی و بزرك و خوش ترکیب و تندرو و برای سواری از یابو بهتر اند از بحرین ببوشهر رو بشمال میروید

European. Thanks be to God

Farangī. Al hamdu l'Illāh ki

فرنکی الحمد لله که در بوشهر

از عذابِ سفرِ دریا خلاص خواهم شد در بوشهر مهمانخانهٔ خوبی یافت میشود یاخیر

dar Būshahr az ʿazāb-i safar-i daryā khalās khāham shud. Dar Būshahr mihmānkhāna-yi khūbī yāft mīshavad yā kheir?

that in Bushire I shall be delivered from the sufferings of this sea-journey. Is there a good Hotel at Bushire?

ایرانی خیر مهمانخانهٔ ندارد کاروان سرا دارد امّا برای شما بهتر است خانهٔ وکیل الدّولهٔ انکلیس منزل کنید

Irānī. Kheir, mihmānkhāna-yī na-dārad, kārvānsarā dārad, ammā barāyi shumā bihtar ast khāna-yi vakīl ad doula-yi Inglīs manzil kunīd.

Persian. No, there is no Hotel; there is a caravansery. But for you it is better to stop at the house of the English Resident.

فرنکی چه طور در خانهٔ وکیل الدّولهٔ انکلیس منزل کنم نمیشناسمش

Farangī. Chi tour dar khāna-yi vakīl ad doula-yi Inglīs manzil kunam? na-mīshanāsam-ash.

European. How can I stop at the house of the English Resident? I do not know him.

ایرانی او نمیگذارد جای دیگر منزل کنید هرکس از فرنکیها ببوشهر میآید مهمانِ وکیل الدوله میشود بسیار آدمِ

Irānī. U na-mīguzārad jā-yi dīgar manzil kunīd. har kas az Farangīhā bi Būshahr mīāyad, mihmān-i vakīl ad doula mīshavad. bisyār ādam-

Persian. He will not allow you to stay anywhere else. Whatever European comes to Bushire, becomes the guest of the Resident. He is a very

مهماندوستِ مهربانی است	i mihmāndūst i mihribānī-st.	hospitable and very kind man.
فرنگی دیگر از فرنگیها در بوشهر کسی هم هست	*Farangī.* Dīgar az Farangīhū dar Būshahr kasī ham hast?	*European.* Is there any other European at Bushire?
ایرانی بلی ده دوازده نفر تاجر دارد و چند نفر تلگرافچی هم در بوشهر ساکن اند خودِ شهر تجارتگاه بزرگی و پر جمعیت است خرید و فروش بسیار دارد هر مال التجاره که از طرف اصفهان و شیراز میبرند بلبِ دریا و هر چه از خارجه میآرند داخلِ ایران بنمایند از بوشهر میگذرد	*Irānī.* Balī dah davūzdah nafar tājir dārad va chand nafar talagrāfchī ham dar Būshahr sākin and. khud-i shahr tijāratgāh-i buzurg va pur jamʿīat ast. kharīd u furūsh bisyār dārad. har māl at-tijāra ki az taraf-i Isfahān va Shīrāz mībarand bi lab-i daryā va har chi az khārija mīarand dakhil-i Irān binamāyand, az Būshahr mīguzarad.	*Persian.* Yes. There are ten or twelve merchants, and several telegraph-clerks living at Bushire. The city itself is an important commercial place and densely populated. There is much trade (buying and selling). All commercial goods, exported from Isfahan and Shiraz to the seacoast, or imported from foreign parts into Persia, pass through Bushire.
فرنگی بغیر از بازار چیزی دارد	*Farangī.* Bi gheir az bāzār chīzī	*European.* Besides the bazaars,

که قابلِ دیدن باشد	dārad, ki qābil-i dīdan bāshad?	is there anything worth seeing?
ایرانی چیزی ندارد بعد از توقّف چهار پنج روز باید راه بیفتید بروید شیراز	*Irānī.* Chīzī na-dārad. ba'd az tavaqquf-i chahār panj rūz bāyad rāh bīuftīd biravīd *Shīrāz.*	*Persian.* There is nothing. After a stay of four or five days, you must set out for *Shiraz.*
فرنگی بفرمائید چه طور میتوان سفر کرد مگر کالسکه و ترمتاس پیدا میشود	*Farangī.* Bifarmāyīd chi tour mītavān safar kard? magar kālaska va turumtās peidā mīshavad?	*European.* Please tell me how I can make the journey? can I get a carriage or a tarantas?
ایرانی نه کالسکه دارد نه ترمتاس و نه راهِ آهن دو جور میتوان مسافرت کرد یکی با قافله میتوان رفت دیگری چاپاری	*Irānī.* Na kālaska dārad, na turumtās va na rāh-i āhan. du jūr mītavān masāfirat kard, yakī bā qāfila mītavān raft va dīgarī chāpārī.	*Persian.* There is no carriage, nor tarantas, nor railway. There are two modes of travelling; you can either go by caravan or with post-horses.
فرنگی بمن تعلیم بفرمائید بدانم چه طور باید رفت	*Farangī.* Bi man ta'līm bifarmāyīd bidānam chi tour bāyad raft.	*European.* Please to tell me all about it, so that I know which route to take.

ایرانی چشم بشما حالی میکنم میانِ بوشهر و شیراز چاپار نیست پس با قافله باید رفت یعنی دو سه راس قاطر برای بنه وبار و یك یابو برای سوارِی خودتان کرایه کرده روزی یك منزل یعنی مسافت پنج شش فرسخ را طیّ میکنید	*Irānī.* Chashm! bi shumā hālī mīkunam: mīān-i Būshahr va Shīrāz chapar nīst, pas bā qāfila bāyad raft, yaʿnī du si rās qātir barāyi buna va bār va yak yābū barāyi savārī-yi khud-i tān kirāya karda, rūzī yak manzil, yaʿnī masāfat-i panj shish farsakh-rā tei mīkunīd.	*Persian.* With pleasure! (lit: by my eyes!) I will explain all to you. As between Bushire and Shiraz there are no posthorses, you must go by caravan; that is to say: you must hire two or three mules for the baggage and loads, and one pony for yourself to ride. Every day you can do one station, which is a distance of five on six leagues.
فرنگی همین را قافله میگویند بنده خیال کرده بودم که قافله جمعیّتِ بزرگی است از مرد و شتر و اسب و قاطر و غیره که باهم مسافرت میکنند	*Farangī.* Hamīn-rā qāfila mīgūyand? banda kheyāl karda būdam, ki qāfila jamʿīat-i buzurgī-st az mard u shutur u asp u qātir va gheira, ki bā ham musāfirat mīkunand.	*European.* I this what they call a caravan? I had thought that a caravan consisted of many men, camels, horses, and mules etc. that travel together.

ایرانی قافله عبارت است از این که با هر مالی که از محلّ حرکت سوار شدید تا محلّ مقصود تمام مسافتِ سفر را طیّ کنید و معنی چاپار این است که در هر منزل اسب عوض بکنید شما که بلد راه نیستید باید که یک نوکر که بلد باشد همراه بگیرید بنده بی نوکر رفته ام و شاکرد چاپار بقدرِ لزوم خدمت میکرد

Irānī. Qāfila ʿibārat ast az īn. ki bā har mālī ki az mahall-i harakat savār shudīd tā mahall-i maqsūd tamām-i masāfat-i safar rā tei kunīd; va maʿnī-yi chāpār īn ast, ki dar har manzil asp ʿavaz bikunīd. shumā ki balad-i rāh nīstīd, bāyad ki yak noukar ki balad bāshad hamrāh bigīrīd. banda bī noukar rafta am va shāgird chāpār bi qadr-i luzūm khidmat mīkard.

Persian. The meaning of caravan is this: that you should ride the whole way to your destination on the same animals which you started with. The meaning of travelling by post is this: that in each station you should change horses. You, who do not know the way, must take a servant with you who knows it. I (the slave) went without a servant, and the post-boy did the necessary service.

فرنگی عرض میکنم که حالیم بفرمائید سفر شما از بوشهر تا به شیراز چه طور گذشت

Farangī. ʿArz mīkunam ki hālī-am bifarmāyīd safar-i shumā az Būshahr tā bi Shīrāz chi tour guzasht.

European. I beg that you will tell me how you travelled from Bushire to Shiraz.

ایرانی چشم تفصیلِ سفرِ خودم‌را خدمتِ سرکار مختصراً عرض میکنم با دو نفر رفیق شده از بوشهر حرکت نمودم که در عربی میگویند الرّفیق ثم الطّریق یعنی اوّل رفیق پیدا کن و بعد از ان سفر برو خلاصه روزی اوّلِ صبح سوارِ کرجی شده تا شیف رفتیم که در طرفِ دیکرِ مرداب بوشهر واقع است آنجا چاروادار با مال منتظرِ ما بود اسبابِ سفر را بار کرده سوار شدیم براه افتادیم تا

Irānī. Chashm! tafsīl-i safar i khudam-rā khidmat-i sarkār mukhtasaran ᶜarz mīkunam; bā du nafar rafīq shuda az Būshahr harakat namūdam, ki dar ᶜarabī mīgūyand: "ar-rafīq thumm at-tarīq" yaᶜnī avval rafīq peidā kun va baᶜd az un safar birou. khulāsa rūzī avval-i subh savār-i karajī shuda tā *Shīf* raftīm, ki dar taraf-i dīgar-i murdāb-i Būshahr vāqiᶜ ast. ānjā chār-vādār bā māl muntazir-i mā būd. asbāb i safar-rā bār karda savār shudīm, bi rāh uftādīm.

Persian. With pleasure! I will relate for your benefit all the particulars of my own journey. Together with two companions, I started from Bushire, for in Arabic they say "A companion, then the road", which means: find a companion before going on a journey.

Well, one day at day-break we took a boat and went to *Shīf*, which lies at the other end of the lagoon of Bushire. There the mule-driver was waiting for us with the mules. After having put up the loads, we mounted and started on our way. Till the foot of the mountain, there

بدامنهٔ کوه ریکستان است	tā bi dāmana-yi kūh rīgistān ast. kheilī garm būd. jā bi jā āb peidā mīshud va līkan aghlab-ash shūr ast. dirakht-i khurmā dar ān sahrā ki mashhūr bi *Garm-sīr* ast, bīshumār ast.	is a sandy soil. It was very hot. Here and there we found some water, but it was mostly brackish. The date-palms in that plain, which is known as *Garmsir*, are innumerable.
خیلی گرم بود جابجا آب پیدا میشد و لیکن اغلبش شور است درختِ خرما در آن صحرا که مشهور به گرمسیر است بیشمار است		
یک ساعت بغروب مانده رسیدیم به برازجون دِه کوچکی است امّا کاروانسرای عظیمی دارد بنده در تلگرافخانه مهمان شدم و از تلگرافچی که ارمنی است مسافتِ راه را پرسیدم گفت که هفت فرسخ راه طیّ کرده اید	yak sā'at bi ghurūb munda rasīdīm bi *Burāzjūn*. dih-i kūchikī st, ammā kārvānsarā-yi 'azīmī dārad. banda dar talagrāf khāna mihmān shudam va az talagrāfchī, ki *Armanī*-st masāfat-i rāh-rā pursīdam. guft ki haft farsakh rāh tei karda-īd.	At one hour before sunset we arrived at *Burazjun*. It is a small village, but it has a large caravansery. I was a guest in the telegraph-office, and we asked the telegraph-clerk, who is an *Armenian*, about the distance of our way. He said: "You have travelled seven farsakhs".
صبح سوار شده رفتیم به کنار تخته شش فرسخ راه است	subh savār shuda raftīm. bi *Kunār Takhta*. shish farsakh	In the morning, having mounted, we went to *Kunar*

Takhta. It is a distance of six farsakhs. It is all stony, mountainous and bad. On the right was the mountain, and on the left the plain. At the foot of the hill, warm sulphur water springs forth; there are also several petroleum-springs there. In consequence of the quantity of horse-flies, it was very bad for man and beast.

Two hours before noon we reached the village of *Dalaki*. We had luncheon near the caravansery of *Dalaki*. From there the road went along the foot of the hills. There are dangerous defiles and dreadful precipices here.

rāh ast. tamām-ash sanglākh va kūh va bad ast, dast-i rāst kūh va dast-i chap dasht. az dāmana-yi kūh āb-i garm-i gūgird mīrīzad, bū-yi badī mīdahad. chand tā chashma-yi naft ham dar ānjā-st. bi jihat-i kasrat-i kharmagas bi mardum va bi mālhā kheilī bad guzasht. du sāʿat bi zuhr munda bi qarīa-yi *Dālakī* rasīdīm. nahār dam-i kārvānsarā-yi *Dālakī* sarf shud az anjā rāh bi dāmana-yi kūh uftād: tangahā-yi makhūf va baghalahā-yi muhīb dārad. az rūdkhānā-yi *Khisht* guzashtīm, ki āb ash shūr ast.

تمامش سنگلاخ و کوه و بد
است دستِ راست کوه بود
دست چپ دشت از دامنهٔ
کوه آب گرم گوگرد میریزد
بوی بدی میدهد چند تا
چشمهٔ نفت هم در آنجاست
باجهتِ کثرتِ خرمگس بمردم
و بمالها خیلی بد گذشت دو
ساعت بظهر مانده بقریهٔ دالکی
رسیدیم نهار دم کاروانسرای
دالکی صرف شد از آنجا راه
بدامنهٔ کوه افتاد تنگه‌های
مخوف و بغله‌های مهیب
دارد از رود خانه خشت
گذشتیم که آبش شور است

We passed the river *Khisht*, whose waters were brackish. A stone bridge has been built across the river. After that we reached the *Pass of Mallu*, which is exceedingly steep and elevated. There is also a built road there but its pavement is such that a horse cannot walk on it. When we got to the top, a plain was to be seen; it was flat and smooth, like an expanse of water. Evidently a small lake was there in olden times. Jujube-bushes and date-palms are there in plenty.

pul-i sangī bar rū-yi rūd-khāna basta and. baʿd az ān rasīdīm bi *kūtal-i Mallū*, ki bisyār past u buland ast, rāh-i sākhta ham hast, ammā sangfarsh-ash bi tourī-st, ki asp na-mītavānad rāh biravad. bālā ki rasīdīm meidānī peidā būd, sāf va humand mānand-i sath-i āb. maʿlūm ast unjā qadīman daryāchaī būda ast. buta-yi kunār va dirakht-i khurmā farāvān ast.

پل سنگی بر روی رودخانه بسته اند بعد از آن رسیدیم بکوتل ملّو که بسیار پست و بلند است راه ساخته هم هست اما سنگ فرشش بطوری است که اسب نمیتواند راه برود بالا که رسیدیم میدانی پیدا بود صاف وهمند مانند سطح آب معلوم است آنجا قدیمًا دریاچهٔ بوده است بوته کنار و درخت خرما فراوان است

We stayed in the telegraph-office which happened to be empty. The servant at the

dar talagrāfkhāna, ki ittifāqan khālī būd, manzil kardīm. ghulām-i talagrāfkhāna

در تلگرافخانه که اتفاقًا خالی بود منزل کردیم

غلامِ تلگرافخانه هیزم و آب
و برنج و پیاز و روغن و نان
تازه حاضر کرد میانِ باغ آتش
روشن کرده طعام پختیم
خوردیم فرش وبالا پوش آنچه
داشتیم روی بوریا انداخته
راحت شدیم

صبح زود برخاستیم سوار شدیم
معلوم شد که امروز تا کازرون
باید رفت هشت فرسخ سنگین
راه است از رود خانه و از
گوتل کمارج گذشتیم این
کردنه هم خیلی پست و
بلند و خطرناك است گاهی
قاطرها پرت شده تا ته درّه
میغلطند میمیرند پیاده

hīzum va āb va birinj va pīāz va roughan va nun-i tāza hāzir kard. mīān-i bāgh ātash roushan karda tuʿām pukhtīm, khurdīm. farsh va bālāpūsh unchi dāshtīm rū-yi būrīā andākhta rāhat shudīm.

subh zūd barkhāstīm, savār shudīm. maʿlūm shud ki imrūz tā *Kāzarūn* bāyad raft. hasht farsakh-i sangīn rāh ast. az rūdkhāna va az kūtal-i *Kamārij* guzashtīm. īn gardana ham kheilī past u buland va khatarnāk ast. gāhī qātirha part ṣhuda tā tah-i darra mīghaltand, mīmīrand. pīāda shuda bālā raftīm. az

telegraph-office brought wood, water, rice, onions, melted butter, and fresh bread Having lit a fire in the middle of the garden, we cooked the food and ate it. Having spread all the rugs and over-coats, which we possessed on to the matting, we rested.

We rose very early, and mounted our horses. We knew we had to reach *Kazarun* that day.

It is 8 farsakhs and a hard road. We passed the river and the Pass of *Kamarij*. This pass is also very steep, high, and dangerous. Sometimes the mules fall and roll down to the bottom of the

شده بالا رفتم از آبادی ده کمارج وگردنهٔ کوچکی گذشته بجلگهٔ کازرون رسیدیم تمامش باصفا و سبز و آباد است زمینش خاك نرم خوبی است و یک وجب زمین در تمام آن جلگه خشك و لم یزرع نیست جاجا آب از کوه های دست چپ بقدر یک سنگ و دو سنگ میریزد باغهارا مشروب میکند اقسام و انواع میوه‌جات و فواکه بمتاز عمل میآید

ābādī-yi dih-i *Kamārij* va gardana-yi kūchikī guzashta bi julga-yi *Kāzarūn* rasīdīm. tamām-ash bā safā va sabz va ābad ast. zamīn-ash khāk-i narm-i khūbī-st va yak vajab-i zamīn dar tamām-i ān julga khushk va lam yazra[c] [1]) nīst. jā bi jā āb az kūhhā-yi dast-i chap bi qadr-i yak *sang* [2]) u du sang mīrīzad, bāghhā rā mashrūb mīkunad. aqsām u anvā[c]i [3]) mīvajāt va favākih-i [4]) mumtāz [c]amal mīāyad.

pass and perish. We walked to the top. After we had passed by the fields of the village of *Kamarij*, and by a small pass, we reached the valley of *Kazarun*. It is all beautiful, green, and cultivated. Its soil is a soft, good earth, and not one span in the whole of that valley is dry or uncultivated. Here and there to the left, flows water from the mountains, enough for one or two stones [1]), and waters the gardens. (All) kinds and sorts of fruit are grown there.

1) arabic for "not cultivated".
2) The Persians measure water by the number of mill-stones it can drive.
3) arabic plurals of قسم qism and نوع nou', both meaning "kinds."
4) arabic plural of فاكهه fākiha, fruit.

کازرون	*Kazarūn.*	*Kazarun.*
سه ساعت بغروب مانده بشهر کازرون رسیدیم در تلگرافخانه پائین آمدیم بعد از صرف عصرانه کردش نمودیم میزبانِ ما بلدی میکرد بازار و کوچهارا تماشا کردیم بعد رفتیم به باغ مسمّی به باغ نظر باغیست مثل بهشت وتازه‌تر از گلستان ارم	si sāᶜat bi ghurūb munda bi shahr-i *Kāzarūn* rasīdīm. dar talagrāfkhāna pāīn āmadīm. baᶜd az sarf-i ᶜasrāna gardish namūdīm. mīzbān-i mā baladī mīkard. bāzār va kūchahā-rā tamāshā kardīm, baᶜd raftīm bi bāgh musammā bi *bāgh-i Nazar*. bāghī-st misl-i bihisht va tāzatar az gulistān-i *Iram*.	At three hours before sunset we reached the town of *Kazarun*. We stopped at the telegraph-office. After partaking of an afternoon meal, we had a walk. Our host was our guide. We saw the bazaars and the streets, then we went into a garden, called "The garden of Nazar." It is a garden like Paradise and fresher than the rose-garden of *Iram*.
نظم	*Nazm.*	*Verse.*
گلستانی چو گلزار جوانی	"gulistānī chi gulzār-i javānī,	"A flower-garden like the bed of roses of youth,

گلش سیراب زاب زندانی

نوای عندلیبش عشرت انگیز

نسیم عطرسایش راحت آمیز

میانِ چهار باغ حوضی است

گد آبش بسیار صاف و خوش
گوار وخنک است جمیع
درختهای چهار باغ مرکبات
است یعنی نارنج و نارنگی
ولیمو و پرتقال اوّل شکوفهٔ
نارنج بود از بوی شکوفه‌ها
و از آواز بلبلها مست شدم
میگفتند هر درخت پرتقال
زیاده از هزار دانه بار میدهد

"gul-ash sīrāb 'z āb-i zindagānī,

"navā-yi ᶜandalīb-ash ᶜishrat angīz,

"nasīm-i ᶜitrsā-yash rāhatāmīz.

mīān-i chahārbāgh houz-īst, ki āb-ash bisyār sāf va khushgavār va khunak ast. jamīᶜ-i dirakhthā-yi chahārbāgh murakkabāt ast, yaᶜnī nāranj va nārangī va līmū va purtuqāl. avval-i shikūfa-yi nāranj būd. az bū-yi shikūfahā va az āvāzī-i bulbulhā mast shudam. mīguftand har dirakht-i purtuqāl zīāda az hazār dāna bār mīdahad.

"Its roses watered by the Water of Life,

"The Song of its Nightingales causing delight,

"Its perfumed Zephyr bringing peace".

In the middle of a cross-alley is a well, whose waters are very clear, agreeable to the taste, and cool. All the trees of this cross-alley bear golden fruits, such as bitter oranges, tangerines, lemons and sweet oranges. It was the beginning of the orange-blossom season. I was intoxicated by the smell of the blossoms and the singing of the Nightingales. We were told that each orange-tree

درخـتِ خـرمـا هم بسیار اسـت	dirakht-i khurmā ham bisyār ast. az *Kāzarūn* rū bi shamāl ki raftīm dīgar hīch dirakht-i khurmā dīda na-shud.	bears more than a thousand fruits. There are also many date-palms. Going north from *Kazarun*, we saw no more date palms at all.
از کـازرون رو بشمال که رفتیم دیگر هیچ درختِ خرما دیده نشد		
صبح زود ممکن نشد که بدون معطّلی راه بیفتیم قاطرچی میخواست بمال جـو بدهد هر چـه گشت جـو گیر نیاورد فصلِ علف دادن بود امّا عجب اینکه در همهٔ کـازرون یك من جو پیدا نشد	subh-i zūd mumkin na-shud ki bidūn-i muʿattalī rāh biuftīm. qātirchī mīkhāst bi māl jou bidahad. har chi gasht jou gīr nay-āvurd, fasl-i ʿalaf dādan būd, ammā ajab-inki dar hama-yi *Kazarūn* yak man jou peidā na-shud.	Early next morning we found it impossible to continue our journey without delay. The mule-driver wished to give his animals some barley. However much he tried, he could nowhere get barley. It was the season for giving green-fodder. Yet it was wonderful, that in all *Kazarun*, not one single "*man*" of barley was to be found.

1) see page 123.

ار کازرون تا شیراز

دو ساعت و نیم بظهر مانده
سوار شدیم باران متّصل
میبارید راه از شدّت بارندگی
پر گل و باطلاق شده بود و
لباسهای ما در راه تا کلاه گلی
میشد نزدیك کوه دست چپ
که رسیدیم دریاچهٔ پیداشد
موسوم بدریای پریشان نیزار
و لجن زار اطراف دریاچه بسیار
است و پر از نوکدراز و اردك
و مرغابی است پل چوبی
روی یك کوشهٔ دریای پریشان
بسته بودند که از او عبور

Az Kāzarūn tā Shīraz.

du sā'at u nīm bi zuhr munda savār shudīm. bārān muttasil mībārīd. rāh az shiddat-i bārandagī pur gil va bāṭlāq shuda būd va libashā-yi mā dar rāh tā kulāh gilī mīshud. nazdīk-i kūh-i dast-i chap ki rasīdīm, daryāchaī peidā shud mousūm bi *Daryā-yi Parīshān*. neizār va lajanzār atrāf-i daryācha bisyār ast va pur az nūkdirāz [1]) va urdak va murghābī-st. pul-i chubī rū-yi yak gūsha-yi Daryā-yi Parīshān basta būdand, ki az ū 'ubūr shud.

From Kazarun to Shiraz.

At two hours and a half before noon we mounted our horses. It rained incessantly. On account of the quantity of rain, the road was full of mud and mire, and on the road our clothes were covered with mud right up to our hats. As we approached the mountain, to the left, we saw a lake, called the *Parishan-Lake*. There are many reeds and much swamp round the lake. It is full of snipe, duck and water-fowl. A wooden bridge had been erected across

1) lit: long beak.

شد اکثر تخته‌های ان جسر شکسته و خراب شده بود امید است که تا امروز مرمّت کرده باشند	aksar-i takhtahā-yi an jisr shikasta va kharāb shuda būd, umīd ast, ki tā imrūz marammat karda bāshand.	a corner of the Parishan Lake. Over this we went. Many of the planks of that bridge were broken and rotten. Let us hope that they have now been repaired.
از آنجا راه بدرّهٔ کوه میافتد جمعیت از ایلات در راه و طرفین راه حرکت میکرد راه از عبور و مرور مردم و بنه بطوری باطلاق شده بود که پیاده نمیتوانستم راه برویم	az ānjā rāh bi darra-yi kūh mīuftad. jamʿīat az īlāt dar rāh va tarafein-i rāh harakat mīkard. rāh az ʿubūr u murūr-i mardum va buna bi tourī bātlāq shuda būd, ki piāda namītavānistīm rāh biravīm.	From there the road goes into a mountain-valley. A quantity of Nomads moved along the way, and on both sides of the way. The road had got so muddy, on account of the traffic of man and beast, that we could not go on foot.
خلاصه به کوتل دختر رسیدیم کوهِ سنگیِ مرتفع و بسیار مهیب و سراشیب است اما سنگ‌چینی کرده و سنگفرش و	khulāsa bi *Kūtal-i Dukhtar* rasīdīm. kūh-i sangī-yi murtafiʿ va bisyār muhīb va sarūshīb ast ammā sangchīnī karda va sangfarsh va	At last we reached the *Daughter's Pass*. The mountain is rocky, high, very imposing and precipitous, but they have removed all stones, and made a pavement and

steps, so that riders and camels with loads can pass quite well and easily.

darajahā sākhta būdand, bi tourī ki shutur bā bār khūb va bi rāhat mīguzarad.

درجها ساخته بودند بطوری که شتر با بار خوب و براحت میگذرد

When we reached the top of the Pass, the rain had stopped. The air had become clear and the *Parishan-Lake* was clearly to be seen. We rested a little, then continued our way. There was a forest called *Dasht-i Barm*, at the distance of the length of two gallops of a horse. It is a forest of oak-trees, and there was most probably a lake there formerly.

sar-i gardana ki rasīdīm bārān īstāda va havā sāf shud va *Daryā-yi Parīshān* khūb peidā būd. qadrī rāhat kardīm, bāz bi rāh uftādīm. jangalī mashhūr bi *Dasht-i Barm* bi fāsila-yi du meidān-i asp būd. jangal-i ballūt ast va ānjā ham ihtimāl mīravad qadīm daryāchaī būda ast.

سرِ گردنه که رسیدیم باران ایستاده و هوا صاف شد و دریای پریشان خوب پیدا بود قدری راحت کردم باز براه افتادیم جنگلی مشهور بدشت برم بفاصله دو میدان اسب بود جنگل بلوط است وآنجا هم احتمال میرود قدیم دریاچهٔ بوده است

In the mountains near *Dasht-i Barm* there are lions. Some years ago a male lion, very big, used to attack men

dar kūhhā-yi atrāf-i *Dasht-i Barm* shīr dārad. chand sāl qabl yak shīr-i nar-i bisyār buzurg bi mardum-i qāfila

در کوههای اطرافِ دشتِ برم شیر دارد چند سال قبل یک شیرِ نرِ بسیار بزرگ بمردم

قافله حمله میآورد یك صاحب
منصب انکلیس را هم نزدیك
بود بدرد خیز زده چنگل
بکفل اسب او زده بود صاحب
منصب زمین خورده گریخت
نمیدانست اسپش چه شد
آخر الامر اسب را بمنزل آوردند
زخم زیاد خورده بود همین
شیر نر را که گفتم یك نفر از
ایلات کشت ظلّ السلطان که
حاکم اصفهان و فارس بود
خلعت و هزار تومان به آن
شخص دلاور انعام فرمودند

hamla mīāvurd. yak sāhib-mansab-i Inglīs-rā ham nazdīk būd bidarad. khīz zada changāl bi kafal-i asp-i ū zada būd. sāhib-mansab zamīn khurda gurīkht, na-mīdānist asp-ash chi shud. ākhir-ul-amr asprā bi manzil āvurdand zakhm-i zīād khurda būd. hamīn shīr-i nar-rā ki guftam yak nafar az īlāt kusht. *Zill as Sultān* [1]), ki hākim-i *Isfahān* va *Fārs* būd, khalʿat va hazār tuman bi ān shakhs-i dilāvar inʿām farmūdand.

and caravans. He once nearly killed an English officer. Jumping, he thrust his claws into the horse's quarters. The officer fell to the ground, then fled, not knowing what had become of his horse. At last the horse was brought into the station very badly wounded. This same male lion that I have just mentioned, was killed by a Nomad. *Zill as Sultan*, who was Governor of *Isfahan* and *Fars*, gave this plucky man a cloak of honor and one thousand tumans reward.

1) "Shadow of the Sultan", the eldest son of the late Shah.

European. Does one still find lions in those parts?

Farangī. Hūlā ham dar ān samthā shīr dīda mīshavad?

فرنگی حالاهم در آن سمتها شیر دیده میشود

Persian. Not on the road itself, but in the mountain wildernesses one occasionnally finds them.

Irānī. Dar sar-i jādda kheir, ammā dar bīrāha-yi kūhhā tak tak peidā mīshavad.

ایرانی در سرِ جاده خیر اما در بیراههٔ کوهها تك تك پیدا میشود

After passing through (the forest) Dasht-i Barm, we again went up-hill. There are no roads on the mountain, which is covered with rolling stones. The name of this place is the *Old Woman's Pass.* They relate that an old woman discovered this passage over the Mountains and removed the stones from there; the tomb of the old woman is to be seen at the top of the Pass.

Baᶜd az guzashtan az *Dasht-i Darm* rah bāz sarbālā mīravad. kūh tamām-ash bī rāh va sanglākh ast. ism-i ān jā *Kūtal-i Pīr-i Zan* ast. mīgūyand pīr-i zanī īn maᶜbar-i kūhhā-rā ihdās karda va sangchīnī namūda ast va qabr-i pīra zan dar sar-i gardana namāyān ast.

بعد از گذشتن از دشت برم راه باز سرِ بالا میرود کوه تمامش بی راه و سنگلاخ است اسم آنجا کوتلِ پیرِ زن است میگویند پیر زنی این معبر کوهها را احداث کرده و سنگچینی نموده است و قبرِ پیره زن در سرِ گردنه نمایان است

بواسطهٔ ارتفاعِ کوه و بدیِ راه نمیشد همان روز تابسر کوتل برسیم در کاروانسرای مشهور بمیان کوتل اطراق نمودیم که عمارتِ وسیعِ خوبیست و در توی طاقچهٔ آتش افروخته شام خوردیم چون هیچ حصیر و فرش نبود روی سنگ خوابیدیم اینقدر سرد شد که بعد از نصف شب از زور سرما بیدار شده پا شدیم	Bi vāsita-yi irtifā-ʿi kūh va badī-yi rāh na-mīshud hamān rūz tā bi sar-i kūtal birasīm. dar kārvānsarāī mashhūr bi *Mūn Kūtal* utrāq namūdīm, ki ʿimārat-i vasī-i khūbī-st va dar tū-yi tāqchayī ātash afrūkhta shām khurdīm. chun hīch hasīr va farsh na-būd rū-yi sang khābīdīm. In-qadr sard shud, ki baʿd az nisf-i shab az zūr-i sarmā bīdār shuda, pā shudīm.	In consequence of the height of the mountain and the badness of the road, it was not possible to get that same day to the top of the Pass. We stopped at a caravansery known as "*Mian Kutal.* It is a fine spacions, building. Having made fire in a niche, we supped. As there were no mats nor carpets, we lay down on the stones. It got so cold, that after midnight we were awakened by the intensily of the cold, and so we rose.
آفتاب نزده راه افتادیم عبور از کوتل پیر زن بقدری مشکل است که هزارها قاطر سر راه	Aftāb na-zada rāh uftādīm. ʿubūr az *Kūtal-i Pīri Zan* bi qadrī mushkil ast, ki	Before sunrise we started on our way. The passing over the *Old Woman's Pass* is so

difficult, that thousands of mules die on the road. As far as one's eyes could see, the place was strewn with carcasses and bones of mules. For this reason, vultures are plentiful in those parts.

hazārhā qātir sar-i rāh mīmīrand. tā chashm kār mīkard lāsha va ustukhān-i qātir rīkhta shuda būd. bi īn jihat lāshkhūr dar ānjā farāvān ast.

میمیرند تا چشم کار میکرد لاشه و استخوانِ قاطر ریخته شده بود باین جهت لاشخور در آنجا فراوان است

On the Northern side of this Pass there is a plain named *Dasht-i Arjan*. All round it are high mountains, covered with snow. To the right is a lake with reeds and swamps, and to the left is an excellent spring whose water is strong enough to drive four mill-stones, and which flows from a cleft in the mountain-rock. A great many Nomads were passing through

Taraf-i shamāl-i īn kūtal dashtīst mousūm bi *Dasht-i Arjan*. dourādour-ash kūhhā-yi buland-i barfdār ast. dast-i rāst daryācha va lajan-zār va neizār ast, va dast-i chap chashma-yi ʿazīmī-st ki ābash bi qadr-i chahār sang az shigāf-i kūh-i sangī mīrīzad. jamʿīat-i buzurgī az

طرفِ شمالِ این کوتل دشتی است موسوم بدشتِ ارجن دورادورش کوههای بلندِ برفدار است دستِ راست دریاچه و لجن زار و نیزار است و دستِ چپ چشمهٔ عظیمی است که آبش بقدرِ چهار سنگ از شکافِ کوهِ سنگی میریزد جمعیّت بزرگی از

ایلات از آن آب عبور مینمود خیلی تماشا داشت بچها و برّه ها توی خرجین بسته روی کاو و اولاغ گذاشته بودند و مرغهارا سرِ بار بسته بودند زنها سوار اسپ بهمه کار مشغول بودند یکی کره درست میکرد دیگری پشم میرشت وغیره

Ilāt az ān āb ʿubūr mīnamūd, kheilī tamāshā dāsht: bachahā va barrahā tū-yi khurjīn basta rū-yi gāv va ulāgh guzāshta būdand, va murghā-rā sar-i bār basta būdand. zanhā savār-i asp bi hama kār mashghūl būdand: yakī kara durust mīkard, dīgarī pashm mīrisht va gheira.

this water. It was a curious sight: children and lambs were tied up in the saddle-bags, which were placed on the backs of cows and donkeys. Fowls were tied on top of the loads. The women, on horseback, were occupying themselves in various ways: one was making butter, another was spinning wool, etc.

تلگرافخانهٔ دشت ارجن قریب همان چشمه واقع است قدری استراحت نموده بالای کوه کوچکی رفتیم راه خوب و بی سنك و بی گل بود

Talagrāfkhāna-yi *Dasht-i Arjan* qarīb-i hamun chashma vāqiʿ ast. qadrī istirāhat namūda bālā-yi kūh-i kūchikī raftīm. rāh khūb va bī sang va bī gil būd.

The telegraph-office of *Dasht-i Arjan* lies near this spring. Having rested a little, we ascended a small hill. The road was good, and free from stones and mud.

نیم ساعت بغروب مانده به کاروانسرای خانه زنیون

Nīm saʿat bi ghurūb munda bi kārvānsarā-yi *Khāna Zan-*

Half an hour before sunset we reached the caravansery of

رسیدیم هوا بقدری سرد بود
که آب یخ میکرد شب خیلی
بد بما گذشت صبح تا دو
ساعت از آفتاب گذشته ژاله
روی زمین میماند

از خانه زنیون تا شیراز هشت
فرسخ سنگین راه است با وجود
سرمای شب گذشته قریب
ظهر هوا بسیار گرم شد قاطرها
خیلی خسته شده بودند که
نتوانستیم هیچ سوار بشویم تمام
راه را پیاده طی کردیم

دو ساعت از ظهر گذشته وارد
دار العلم شیراز شدیم

yūn rasīdīm. havā bi qadrī sard būd, ki āb yakh mīkard. shab kheilī bad bi mā guzasht. subh tā du sāᶜat az āftāb guzashta jāla rū-yi zamīn mīmānd.

Az *Khāna Zanyūn* tā *Shīrāz* hasht farsakh-i sangīn rāh ast. bā vujūd-i sarmā-yi shab-i guzashta qarīb-i zuhr havā bisyār garm shud. qātirhā kheilī khasta shuda būdand, ki na-tavānistīm hīch savār bishavīm. tamām-i rāh-rā pīāda tei kardīm.

Dū sāᶜat az zuhr guzashta vārid-i *Dār ul ᶜilm-i Shīrāz* shudīm.

Khana Zanyun. The air was so cold, that the water was frozen. We spent a very bad night. In the morning, until two hours after sunrise, the ground remained frozen.

Between *Khāna Zanyun* to *Shiraz* there are eight farsakhs of hard road. Notwithstanding the cold of the previous night, near midday it became very warm. The mules were so tired that we could not ride them. We did the whole distance on foot.

Two hours after mid-day, we arrived at the "*House of Science* [1]) *Shiraz*".

1) The principal Persian towns have titles. Tehran is called "House of the Chalifate" (Dār al Khilāfa) Isfahan is called House of the Sultanate (Dār as Saltana).

فرنگی در شیراز شاید خانهٔ دوست خود تان پیاده شدید

Farangī. Dar shāyad Shīrāz khāna-yi dūst-i khud-i tān piāda shudīd?

European. Did you stop at the house of your friend at Shiraz?

ایرانی بلی، دوستم قریب دروازهٔ شهر باغ و انگورستان و خانه دارد آنجا منزل کردیم

Irānī. Balī dūst-am qarīb-i darvāza-yi shahr bāgh va angūristān va khāna dārad. unjā manzil kardīm.

Persian. Yes, my friend has, near the gate of the town, a garden, a vineyard and a house. There we stayed.

فرنگی شما یقین از زحمتِ سفر بسیار خسته شده بودید

Farangī. Shumā yaqīn az zahmat-i safar bisyār khasta shuda būdīd?

European. I suppose you were much fatigued with the hardships of the journey.

ایرانی خیر آقا من که بار نکشیده بودم خسته هم نشدم ولی مالها نیم مرده بودند

Irānī. Kheir āghā, man ki bār na-kashīda būdam khasta ham na-shudam valī mālhā nīm murda būdand.

Persian. No sir, I who had not borne a load, was not tired, but the mules were half dead.

شیراز

Shīrāz.

Shiraz.

فرنگی شیراز میدانم که شهرِ بزرگ و مشهور و معروفِ دنیا

Farangī. *Shīrāz* mīdānam ki shahr-i buzurg va mashhūr va maʿrūf-i dunyā-st, ammā

European. I know that *Shiraz* is a large town, famous and celebrated all over the world.

	shumā bifarmāyīd ki chi chīz dar *Shīrāz* bāyad tamāshā bikunam.	But please tell me what I ought to see at Shiraz.
ایرانی یکی حافظیّه و سعدیّه یعنی قبرِ خواجه حافظ و شیخ سعدی هرکسیکه شیراز میآید زیارتِ مزارِ این دو شاعرِ نامدار را مینماید هر دو در خارجِ شهر واقع اند و باغاتِ خوب هم در اطرافِ شهر دارد باید گردش کنید	*Irānī.* Yakī *Hāfizīya* va *Saʿdīya*, yaʿnī qabr-i *Khāja Hāfiz* va *Sheikh Saʿdī*. har kasī ki *Shīrāz* mīāyad, zīārat-i mazār-i īn du shāʿir-i nāmdārrā mīnamāyad. har du dar khārij-i shahr vāqiʿ and va bāghāt-i khūb ham dar atrāf-i shahr dārad, bāyad gardish kunīd.	*Persian.* Firstly the "*Hafizya* and *Sadiya*, namely, the tombs of *Khaja Hafiz* and of *Sheikh Sadi*. Everyone who comes to *Shiraz* makes a pilgrimage to the tombs of these two celebrated poets. Both lie outside the town; there are also pretty gardens round about the town, in which you should take a walk.
فرنگی خودِ شهر بناهای خوبِ قدیم دارد	*Farangī.* Khud-i shahr banāhāyi khūb-i qadīm dārad?	*European.* Are there any fine old buildings in the town itself?
ایرانی عماراتِ شهر اکثرِ شان	*Irānī.* ʿImārāt-i shahr aksar-i shān az zamān-i *Karīm Khān-i*	*Persian.* Most of the buildings have remained from the time

of *Karīm Khan-i Vakil*, who died in the year 1193 of the Mohammedan era, which corresponds to the year 1779 of the Christian Era. It is he who built the houses, gardens, mosques, baths, forts, citadels, moats, gates, tanks, and bazaars. You, who are an European, will not be allowed to see the mosques and the baths; but the gardens and the bazaars, especially the *Vakil's Bazaar*, you must make a point of seeing properly.

Vakīl bāqī munda ast, ki dar sana-yi hazār u yak sad u navad u si hijrī mutābiq-i hazār u haft sad u haftād u nuh ʿīsavī fout shuda ast. hamīn ast, ki buyūtāt [1]) va bāghāt [1]) va masājid [1]) va hammāmāt [1]) va qalʿa va hisār va khandaq va darvāzahā va birkahā va bāzārhā binā karda ast. shumā, ki *Farangī* hastīd, ijāza-yi dīdan-i masjidhā va hammāmhā bi shumā na-khāhand dād, ammā bāghhā va bāzārhā va khusūsan *bāzār-i Vakīl*-rā khūb tamāshā bāyad bikunīd.

از زمانِ کریم خانِ وکیل باقی مانده است که در سنهٔ ۱۱۹۳ هجری مطابق ۱۷۷۹ عیسوی فوت شده است همین است که بیوتات و باغات و مساجد و حمّامات و قلعه و حصار و خندق و دروازه ها و برکه‌ها و بازارها بنا کرده است شما که فرنگی هستید اجازهٔ دیدنِ مسجدها و حمامها بشما نخواهند داد اما باغها و بازارها و خصوصًا بازار وکیل را خوب تماشا باید بکنید

1) Arabic plurals of بیت beit (house), باغ bāgh (garden), مسجد masjid (mosque), حمام hammām (bath).

فرنگی بسیار خوب من هرجای که ممکن باشد انشاء اللّه خواهم رفت	*Farangī.* Bisyār khūb, man har jāī ki mumkin bāshad in shā Allāh khāham raft.	*European.* Very well, I will go wherever it is possible to go, if God will.
ایرانی انشاء اللّه بعد از سیر شیراز باصفهان میروید	*Irānī.* In shā Allāh! baʿd az seir-i *Shīrāz* bi *Isfāhan* mīravīd.	*Persian.* May it be God's will! After having seen *Shiraz*, you will go to *Isfahan.*
فرنگی آن راه را هم با قافله طیّ باید کرد	*Farangī.* An rāh-rā ham bā qāfila tei bāyad kard?	*European.* Must I make this journey also by a caravan?
شرح سفرِ چاپاری از شیراز و اصفهان و طهران و قزوین و رشت تا لب دریای خزر	*Sharh-i safar-i chāpārī az Shīrāz va Isfahān va Tahrān va Qazvīn va Rasht tā lab-i Daryā-yi Khazir.*	*Description of a post-journey from Shiraz to Isfahan, Tahrān, Qazvin and Resht, to the coast of the Caspian Sea.*
ایرانی از شیراز رو بشمال چاپار خانه دارد اگر میخواهید تند راه بروید چاپاری بروید	*Irānī.* Az *Shīrāz* rū bi shamāl chāpārkhāna dārad. agar mīkhāhīd tund rāh biravīd, chaparī biravīd.	*Persian.* From Shiraz, going north, you will find post-houses. If you wish to travel quickly, go with post-horses.

فرنگی سفر چاپاری چه طور میشود مرحمت فرموده بیان کنید	*Farangī.* Safar-i chaparī chi tour mīshavad? marhamat farmūda beyān kunīd.	*European.* How does one travel with post-horses? Please have the kindness to explain.
ایرانی چشم از چاپارخانهٔ شیراز یك تذکره برای دو رأس اسپ بگیرید	*Irānī.* Chashm! az chaparkhāna-yi *Shīrāz* yak tazkira barāyi du raʿs [1]) asp bigīrīd.	*Persian.* With pleasure! you must take, from the post-house at Shiraz, a pass for two horses.
فرنگی اگر تنها بروم یك اسب کفایت نمیکند	*Farangī.* Agar tanhā biravam yak asp kafāyat na-mīkunad?	*European.* If I travel alone, is not one horse sufficient?
ایرانی خیر شما سوارِ یك اسب میشوید و شاگرد چاپار سوارِ اسپِ دیگر و او هم خرجینِ تانرا باخودش حمل مینماید بعد از ورود مقصد شاگرد چاپار مالهارا پس میبرد منزلِ	*Irānī.* Kheir, shumā savār-i yak asp mīshavīd va shāgird chapar savār-i asp-i dīgar, va ū ham khurjīn-i tun-rā bā khudash haml mīnamāyad baʿd az vurūd-i maqsad shāgird chapar mālhā-rā pas mībarad manzil-i khudash	*Persian.* No, you must ride one horse and the post-boy the other. He will also carry your saddle-bags. After arriving at your destination, the post-boy takes the horses back to their station.

1) see p.

حرکش شما در هر منزل اسپ عوض میکنید	shumā dar bar manzil asp ᶜavaz mīkunīd.	You, change horses, in each station.
فرنگی از منزل تا منزلِ دیگر چه قدر مسافت است	*Farangī.* Az manzil tā manzil-i dīgar chi qadr masāfat ast?	*European.* What is the distance between the stations?
ایرانی سه فرسخ الی هفت فرسخ و هشت فرسخ راه است	*Irānī.* Si farsakh ilā haft farsakh va hasht farsakh rah ast.	*Persian.* From three to seven or eight farsakhs.
فرنگی و کرایه اسپهای چاپار چند میشود	*Farangī.* Va kirāya-yi asphā-yi chāpārī chand mīshavad?	*European.* And as to the hire of post-horses, what does it come to?
ایرانی برای هر اسپی فرسخی یک قران	ᶜ*Irānī.* Barāyi har aspī farsakhī yak qarān.	*Persian.* For each horse one qaran a farsakh.
فرنگی روزی چند فرسخ میتوان طیّ نمود	*Farangī.* Rūzī chand farsakh mītavān tei namūd?	*European.* How many farsakhs can I do in one day?
ایرانی اگر آموخته باشید در یک روز بیست و پنج الی سی فرسخ راه میتوانید بروید	*Irānī.* Agar āmūkhta bāshīd dar yak rūz bīst u panj ilā sī farsakh rāh mītavānīd biravīd.	*Persian.* If you are used to it, you can do 20 or 30 farsakhs in one day.

فرنگی عجب این از تندی کالسکه بخار چندان کمتر نیست پس تمام روز را یورتمه یاچهار نعل باید رفت

Farangī. Ajab! ın az tundī-yi kālaska-yi bukhār chandān kamtar nīst. pas tamām-i rūz-rā yūrtma ya chahārnaʿl bāyad raft?

European. How wonderful! That is not much slower than a train. Then must I trot or gallop the whole day?

ایرانی خیر آقا یک میدانِ اسپ یورتمه یا چهار نعل که رفتید یک میدان قدم بروید تا مال نفس بگیرد

Irānī. Kheir āghā, yak meidān-i asp yūrtma ya chahārnaʿl ki raftīd, yak meidān qadam bi-ravīd tā māl nafas bigīrad.

Persian. No sir, if you trot or gallop the length of a horse's canter, you must walk a bit afterwards, so that your horse may recover his breath.

فرنگی اسپهای چاپاری چه طوراند خوب یا بد

Farangī. Asphā-yi chaparī chi tour and, khūb yā bad?

European. Are the posthorses good or bad?

ایرانی خوب و بد دارد اکثرِ شان این قدر ضعیف و بد و سست ولاغراند که هر کس سوار میشود خیال میکند که این مال بقدرِ یک فرسخ راه نخواهد رفت باوجودِ این لاغری

Irānī. Khūb u bad dārad. aksar-i shān ınqadr zaʿīf va bad va sust va lāghir and, ki har kas savār mīshavad, kheyāl mīkunad ki ın māl bi qadr-i yak farsakh rāh nakhāhad raft. bā vujūd-i ın

Persian. There are good ones and bad ones. Most of them are so weak, bad, tired and lean, that everyone who rides them thinks: this beast will not go one farsakhs' distance. Notwithstanding this leanness,

بعضی این اسپها که مثلِ چار	lāghirī baʿzī īn asphā, ki	some of these horses, which
چوبه میمانند سوار را با بار	misl-i chahārchūba mīmā-	look like frames, can carry
بمنزل میرسانند گاهی اسپِ	nand, savār-rā bā bār bi	a rider with a load to the
چاپاری دیدم که نهایت خوب	manzil mīrasānand. gāhī asp-	station. Sometimes I have
و تندرو بود و مثلِ آهو	i chaparī dīdam, ki nihāyat	seen post-horses, that were
میدویند قریب اصفهان سوارِ	khūb va tandrou būd va misl-	very good and swift, and they
یک اسپی شدم که اسبهای	i āhū mīdavīd. qarīb-i *Isfa-*	ran like gazelles.
شاه هم از او بهتر نیستند اسپ	*hān* savār-i yak aspī shudam,	Near *Isfahan* I rode a horse,
عربی بود صاحبش یعنی نایب	ki asphā-yi Shāh ham az ū	that was as good as the Shah's
چاپار معیار از عربها پانزده	bihtar nīstand. asp-i ʿarabī	horses. It was an Arab. Its
تومان خریده بود برای چاپار	būd. sāhib-ash, yaʿnī nāyib	master, namely the Post-
اسپهای بزرگ ترکمنی از	chapar-i *Maʿyār* az Arabhā	master of *Maʿyār*, had bought
یابوهای کوچک بهترند	punzdah tuman kharīda būd.	it from Arabs for fifteen tu-
	barā-yi chapar asphā-yi bu-	mans. As posthorses, tall Tur-
	zurg-i turkmanī az yābūhā-	koman horses are better than
	yi kūchik bihtar and.	small ponies.
فرنگی زین و دهنه خودم	*Farangī.* Zīn va dahana khu-	*European.* Must I take my own
همراه ببرم یا از نایب چاپار	dam hamrāh bibaram, yā	saddle and bridle, or cannot

امانت بگیرم	az nāyib-chapar amānat bi-gīram?	I borrow that from the Post-master.
ایرانی دهنه و زین و عرقگیر و خرجین و دو تا تنك برای بستنِ بار باید از خودِ تان باشد	*Irānī.* Dahana va zīn va ʿaraq-gīr va khurjīn va du tā tang barāyi bastan-i bār bāyad az khud-i tun bāshad.	*Persian.* You must have your own bridle, saddle, saddle-cloth, saddle bags, and two girths for fastening the loads.
فرنگی نزدیك چاپار خانه‌ها کاروانسرا یا مهمانخانه یا جای دیگری پیدا میشود که شبرا بگذرانم	*Farangī.* Nazdīk-i chaparkhā-nahā kārvānsarā yā mihmān-khāna yā jā-yi dīgarī peidā mīshavad, ki shab-rī bugza-rānam?	*European.* Near the post-houses are there caravanseries, inns, or such places, where one can spend the night?
ایرانی توی خودِ چاپار خانه باید ماند برای سیاحهای معتبر در بالا خانه خوابگاه موجود است رختِ خواب هم در بیشترِ جاها پیدا میشود	*Irānī.* Tūyi khud-i chapar-khāna bāyad mund. barāyi seiyāhhā-yi mūʿtabar dar bā-lākhāna khābgāh moujūd ast. rakht-i khāb ham dar bīshtar-i jāhā peidā mīshavad.	*Persian.* You must stay in the post-house itself. For distin-guished travellers there is, in the upper storey, a sleeping-room. Bed-covers too are to be found in most places.
فرنگی پس خوراك هم شاید	*Farangī.* Pas khurāk ham shā-	*European.* Perhaps food is also

در چاپار خانه‌ها حاضر میشود

ایرانی بلی جزوی نان و ماست و تخم مرغ و چای و قلیان همه جا پیدا میشود اگر چیز دیگر خواسته باشید از ده یا بازار میآرند اما هر کسیکه بزودی میخواهد حرکت کند بغیر از نان و ماست و تخم چیزی نمیخورد که اسباب معطلی نشود در چاپار خانهای شهرها و قصبه ها هر چیزی که میل داشته باشید موجود است

فرنگی التفات بفرمائید طول و اسم منزلهارا بیان کنید بدانم منزل بمنزل چه قدر راه است

yad dar chaparkhānahā hāzir mī-shavad?

Irānī. Balī, juzvī. nān u māst u tukhm-i murgh u chāī u qalyān hama jā peidā mī-shavad. agar chīz-i dīgar khāsta bāshīd, az dih yā bāzar mīārand, ammā har kasī-ki bi zūdī mīkhāhad harakat kunad, bi gheir az nān u māst u tukhm chīzī na-mī-khurad, ki asbāb-i muʿattalī na-shavad. dar chaparkhā-nahā-yi shahrhā va qasaba-hā har chīzī ki meil dāshta bā-shīd moujūd ast.

Farangī. Iltifāt bifarmāyīd tūl va ism-i manzilhārā beiān kunīd, bidānam manzil bi manzil chi qadr rāh ast va

to be found at the post-houses?

Persian. Yes, but it is scanty. Bread, sour milk, eggs, tea, and galyans are to be found everywhere. If you order anything else from the village or the bazaar, they bring it; but those who wish to move on quickly, do not eat anything except bread, sour milk, or eggs, so as not to be kept waiting. In the post-houses of towns and villages, there is everything that you can wish for.

European. Have the kindness to make me acquainted with the distances and names of the stations, so that I know

how far each station is, and how much I must give for horses' hire.

Persian. Very well. I will name the stations on the road from *Shiraz* to *Tehran*, and from there to the coast of the *Caspian Sea*.

From *Shiraz* to *Zarghan* 5 fars.

Pūza	5	„
Qavamabad	6	„
Mashhad-i Murghab	7	„
Dahbīd	7	„
Khan-i Khura	5	„
Surmak	7	„
Abada	6	„
Shulgistan	5	„
Yazdikhast	6	„
Maqsud Begi	6	„

kirāya-yi asphā chand bāyad bidaham.

Irānī. Kheilī khūb, manāzil-i rāh-rā az *Shīrāz* guzashta tā bi *Tahrān* va az unjā tā lab-i *Daryā-yi Khazir* ʿarz khāham namūd.

az *Shīrāz* ta *Zarghān* panj fars.

Pūza	panj	„
Qavāmābād	shish	„
Mashhad-i Murghāb	haft	„
Dahbīd	haft	„
Khān-i Khura	panj	„
Surmak	haft	„
Abāda	shish	„
Shulgistān	panj	„
Yazdikhāst	shish	„
Maqsūd Begī	shish	„

و کرایه اسپها چند باید بدهم

ایرانی خیلی خوب منازل راه را از شیراز کذشته تا بطهران و از آنجا تا لب دریای خزر عرض خواهم نمود

از شیراز تا زرغان ۵ فرسخ

پوزه	۵	
قوام‌آباد	۶	
مشهد مرغاب	۷	
دهبید	۷	
خان خوره	۵	
سرمك	۷	
آباده	۴	
شلکستان	۵	
یزدخاست	۶	
مقصودبکی	۶	

From *Shiraz* to *Qumishah* 5 fars.	az *Shīrāz* ta *Qumishah* panj fars.	از شیراز تا قمشه ٥ فرسخ
Mayar 5	*Ma'yār* panj „	معیار ٥
Margh 5	*Margh* panj „	مرغ ٥
Isfahan (Julfa) 3	*Isfahān* (Julfā) si „	اصفهان (جلفا) ٣
Between *Zarghūn* and *Puza* are tombs of kings of olden times, and ruins of buildings, fine palaces, and great fire-temples. The name of this place is *Takht-i Jamshid* [1]). It lies east of the road at a distance of one farsakh. You must go there and see it all. Near *Puza* there are also remains from olden times; these they call: *The Picture of Rustam*. Portraits of kings and heroes, and very old inscrip-	Miān-i *Zarghūn* va *Pūza* qabrhā-yi Shāhān-i ayyām-i qadīm va kharābahā-yi buyūtāt va 'imārāt-i 'azīm va ātashkadahā-yi buzurg ast, ki ism-i ān jā *Takht-i Jamshīd* ast. az rāh-i chaparī taraf-i mashriq bi fāsila-yi yak farsakh vāqi' ast. bāyad biravīd khūb tamāshā bikunīd. nazdīk-i *Pūza* ham āsār-i zamān-i qadīm moujūd ast va unjārā *Naqsh-i Rustam* mīgūyand. sūrat-i pādishāhān va pahla-	میانِ زرقان و پوزه قبرهای شاهانِ ایامِ قدیم و خرابه های بیوتات و عمارات عظیم و آتشکده‌های بزرك است که اسمِ آنجا تخت جمشید است از راهِ چاپاری طرف مشرق بفاصلهٔ یك فرسخ واقع است باید بروید خوب تماشا بکنید نزدیكِ پوزه هم آثارِ زمانِ قدیم موجود است و آنجارا نقش

1) The throne of [the Persian King] Jamshid is the name which the Persians have given to the ruins of *Persepolis*.

رستم میگویند صورت پادشاهان و پهلوان‌ها و خطوط بسیار قدیم هم میخی و هم پهلوی بر کمرکش کوه بلند سنگی نمایان است خیلی جای دلچسپ قابل دیدن است

vānhā va khutūt-i bisyār qadīm, ham mīkhī va ham pahlavī bar kamarkash-i kūh-i buland-i sangī namāyān ast. kheilī jā-yi dilchasp-i qābil-i dīdan ast.

tions, cuneiform and pahlavi[1]) are visible on the side of the high mountain. It is a very interesting spot, and well worth seeing.

از چاپارخانهٔ پوزه تا نقش رستم یک فرسخ راه است

Az chaparkhāna-yi *Pūza* tā *Naqsh-i Rustam* yak farsakh rāh ast.

From the post-house of *Puza* to *Naqsh-i Rustam* is a distance of one farsakh.

اینطرف قوام‌آباد میرسید بقصبهٔ سیوند تلگرافخانهٔ دارد که تلگرافچی انکلیس آنجا ساکن است جای با صفائی است و انگورستان زیاد دارد در صحرای مشهد مرغاب ستونها

Intaraf-i *Qavāmābād* mīrasīd bi qasaba-yi *Sīvand*. talagrāfkhānayī dārad, ki talagrāfchī-yi inglīs unjā sākin ast. jā-yi bā-safā-yī-st va angūristān-i zīād dārad. dar sahrā-yi *Mashhad-i Murghāb* sutūnhā dīda mīshavad, ki unhā ham

On this side of *Qavamabad*, you reach the village of *Sivand*. It has a telegraph-office, and an English telegraph-clerk lives there. It is a pretty place and has many vineyards. In the plain of *Mashhad-i Murghab* columns are to be

1) The Persian language at the period which proceded the muhammedan conquest.

دیده میشود که آنها هم از آثار زمان قدیم است و عمارتِ سنگی سرِ راه است که اهلِ اسلام میگویند قبر مادر سلیمان است و فرنگیها میگویند قبر کیخسرو است	az āsār-i zamān-i qadīm ast, va ʿimārat-i sangī sar-i rāh ast ki ahl-i islām mīgūyand *qabr-i Mādar-i Suleimān* ast va Farangīhā mīgūyand *qabr-i Kei Khusrou* ast.	seen; they also are remains of former days. A stone building lies near the road. The Mohammedans say that it is the *Tomb of Solomon's Mother*, and the Europeans say that it is the *Tomb of Cyrus*.
در دهبید تلگرافچی انکلیس سکنا دارد	dar *Dihbīd* talagrāfchī-yi inglīs suknā dārad.	An English telegraph-clerk lives at *Dihbid*.
آباده قصبهٔ بزرگی است قلعه و بازار و تلگرافخانه دارد قاشوق و کشکول مالِ آباده که از چوب کلاتی بسیار خوب و با سلیقه درست میکنند مشهور است	*Abāda* qasaba-yi buzurgī-st qalʿa va bāzār va talagrāf-khāna dārad. qāshuq va kashkūl māl-i *Abāda*, ki az chūb-i gulābī bisyār khūb va bā salīqa durust mīkunand, mashhūr ast.	*Abada* is a large village. It has a fort, a bazar, and a telegraph-office. The spoons and beggars' bowls of Abada, which are beautifully and tastefully carved in pear-wood, are celebrated.
یزدخاست هم قصبهٔ معتبریست روی کوهِ سنگیِ پست و بلندی	*Yazdikhāst* ham qasaba-yi muʿtabarī-st. rū-yi kūh-i	*Yazdikhast* is also an important village. It has been built

sangī-yi past u bulandī, ki dar vasat-i darra-yi īstāda ast, binā shuda ast. yak taraf-i qasaba pulī-st, ki az ū ʿubūr mīshavad. gheir az ān hīch jā darvāzayī na-dārad. kār-vānsarā va chapar-khāna dar khārij-i qasaba ast.

که در وسطِ درّهٔ ایستاده است
بنا شده است یک طرف قصبه
پلی است که از او عبور
میشود غیر از آن هیچ جا
دروازهٔ ندارد کاروانسرا و چاپار
خانه در خارج قصبه است

on a steep and high rocky hill which stands in the centre of a valley. On one side of the village is a bridge, over which one can pass. Except at this place, there is no other gate. The caravansery and the post-house are outside the village.

Qumishah shahr-i kūchikī-st, ki atrāf-ash zarāʿat-i bisyār ast.

قمشه شهر کوچکی است که
اطرافش زراعت بسیار است

Qumishah is a small town, the environs of which are very well cultivated.

Isfahān, chunānchi maʿrūf ast dar zamān-i sābiq pāyitakht-i Irān būda ast. agarchi shahr hālā bi buzurgī-yi zamān-ī

اصفهان چنانچه معروف است
در زمانِ سابق پای تختِ
ایران بوده است اگرچه شهر

Isfahan, as every one knows, was formerly the capital of Persia. Although the town is not as large now as it used to be,

and although it has a population of not more than 200,000 people, yet it is considered one of the towns of first degree, and is known as *Dār as Saltana* (House of the Kingdom). It has splendid bazaars, large squares, heavenly avenues, magnificent bridges over the river *Zandarūd*, buildings, mosques, and excellent schools, which have remained from the days of the *Safavi* kings.

The village of *Julfa* is situated near the town of *Isfahan*. The inhabitants of *Julfa* are all *Armenians*. The post-house

guzashta nīst va jamʿyyat-ash bīshtar az davīst hazār nafar na-bāshad, bāz az shahrhā-yi daraja-yi avval mahsūb va bi *Dār as Saltana* maʿrūf ast. bāzārhā-yi bā rounaq va meidānhā-yi vasīʿ va chahārbāgh-i jannat tarāz va pulhā-yi mumtāz-i rūdkhāna-yi *Zandarūd* va ʿimārāt va masājid va madāris-i ʿazīm dārad, ki bāqī munda-yi ayyām-i doulat-i salātīn-i *Safaviyya* ast.

qasaba-yi *Julfā* pahlū-yi shahr-i *Isfahān* vāqiʿ ast. ahl-i *Julfā* hama-yi shān *Armanī* and, chaparkhāna va khā-

حالا ببزرگی زمان گذشته نیست
و جمعیّتش بیشتر از دویست
هزار نفر نباشد باز از شهرهای
درجهٔ اوّل محسوب وبدار السلطنه
معروف است بازارهای بارونق
و میدانهای وسیع و چهار
باغ جنّت طراز و پلهای عتاز
رود خانه زنده رود و عمارات
و مساجد و مدارس عظیم
دارد که باقی ماندهٔ ایام دولت
سلاطین صفویه است

قصبهٔ جلفا پهلوی شهر اصفهان
واقع است اهل جلفا همهٔ شان
ارمنی اند چاپار خانه و خانهای

and the houses of *Europeans* are also at Julfa.	nahā-yi *Farangīhā* ham dar Julfā-st.	فرنگیها هم در جلفا است
The stations on the way to *Tehran* are the following:	manzilhā-yi rāh-i *Tahrān* az īn qarār ast:	منزلهای راهِ طهران از این قرار است
From *Isfahan* to *Gaz* 3 fars.	az *Isfahān* tā *Gaz* si farsakh	از اصفهان (جلفا) تا گز ۳ فرسخ
Murchakhar 6 „	*Mūrchakhār* shish „	مورچه‌خوار ۶
Bidashk 6 „	*Bīdashk* shish „	بیداشك ۶
Quhrud 6 „	*Quhrūd* shish „	قهرود ۶
Kashan 7 „	*Kāshān* haft „	کاشان ۷
Sinsin 6 „	*Sinsin* shish „	سن‌سن ۶
Pāisanǧan 7 „	*Parsangān* haft „	پاسنکان ۷
Qum 4 „	*Qum* chahār „	قم ۴
Marzaria 4 „	*Manzaria* „ „	منظریه ۴
Kushk-i Nusrat 4 „	*Kūshk-i Nusrat* „ „	کوشك نصرت ۴
Qalʿa-yi Muhammad Ali Khān 4 „	*Qalʿa-yi Muhammad Ali Khān* „ „	قلعه محمد علی خان ۴
Hasanābad 4 „	*Hasanābād* „ „	حسن‌آباد ۴
Kahrīzak 4 „	*Kahrīzak* „ „	کهریزك ۴
Tahrān 4 „	*Tahrān* „ „	طهران ۴

کوتل قهرود بقدری مرتفع است
که تا وسطِ تابستان برف در
آنجا باقی میماند خودِ ده قهرود
مثلِ بهشت است آبِ بسیار
دارد در زیرِ آبادیِ قریه بندِ
قدیمی است از چشم
اندازی که از سرِ گردنه
خواهید داشت حیران خواهید
شد تمامِ افقِ شمالی را رشتهٔ
کوهستانِ البرز گرفته است در
بهاری که گذشتم همهٔ این
کوهها برف داشتند واز همه بالاتر
و بلند تر کوه دماوند نمایان بود
کاشان شهر بزرگی است بازارها
و کاروانسراهای معتبر دارد و

Kūtal-i *Quhrūd* bi qadrī murtafi^{c} ast, ki tā vasat-i tābistān barf dar ānjā bāqī mīmānad. khud-i dih-i Quhrūd misl-i bihisht ast āb-i bisyār dārad. dar zīr-i ābādī-yi qarya band-i qadīmī-st az . chashmandāzī ki az sar-i gardana khāhīd dāsht heirān khāhīd shud. tamām-i ufuq-i shamālī-rā rishta-yi kūhistān-i *Alburz* girifta ast. dar bahārī ki guzashtam hama-yi īn kūhhā barf dāshtand va az hama bālātar va bulandtar kūh-i *Damāvand* namāyān būd.

Kāshān shahr-i buzurgī-st bāzārhā va kārvānsarāhā-yi mu^{c}-

The pass of *Quhrud* is so elevated, that the snow lies there till mid-summer [1]). The village of *guhrud* itself is like Paradise. It has much water. Beneath the cultivated land of the village is an ancient dyke. You will be astounded at the view, which you have from the top of the Pass. The whole northern horizon is bound in by the line of the *Alburz* mountains. When I passed there in the spring, all these mountains had snow, and the highest and tallest of them, the mountain *Damavand* was visible. *Kashan* is a large town. It has important bazaars and

1) This pass is about 9000 feet high.

caravanseries, and it also has a telegraph-office. In *Kashan* scorpions and mosquitoes are so plentiful, that I have never seen the like in any other place. At the time of going to rest, you must search your bed-clothes to see that no scorpion is in them.

tabar dārad va talagrāf khānayī ham dārad. dar *Kāshān* ʿaqrab va pasha bi qadrī farāvān ast, ki misl-ash-rā hīch jāī dīgar na dīda am. vakht-i khābīdan khūb nigāh bāyad kard tuyi rakht-i khāb-i tun aqrabī na-bāshad.

تلگرافخانهٔ هم دارد در کاشان
عقرب و پشه بقدری فراوانست
که مثلش‌را هیچ جای دیکر
ندیده ام وقتِ خوابیدن خوب
نکاه باید کرد توی رختِ
خوابتانِ عقربی نباشد

Qum is also a town like *Kashan*, having a population of 50,000 people. The tiles on the mosques of Qum are exceedingly fine in colour and very beautiful.

Qum ham misl-i *Kāshān* shahrīst, ki jamʿiyyat-ash bi qadr-i panjāh hazār nafar ast. kashīkārī-yi masājid-i Qum nihāyat khushrang va qashang ast.

قم هم مثلِ کاشان شهری ست
که جمعیت اش بقدر پنجاه
هزار نفر است کاشی‌کاری
مساجد قم نهایت خوش
رنك و قشنك است

Between *Qum* and *Houz-i Sultan* is a *Salt-Desert*, the water of which is brackish.

mīan-i *Qum* va *Houz-i Sultān Dasht-i Kavīr* ast, ki āb-i un hama-yash shūr ast. bāyad

میان قم و حوض سلطان دشت
کویراست که آب آن همهٔ اش

شور است باید مطارهٔ بلغاری
پر از آب خوردن همراه داشته باشید و حال در اینننقطه ده سال است که دریاچهٔ تشکیل یافته است

matāra-yi bulghārī pur az āb-i khurdan hamrāh dāshta bāshīd. va hāl dar īn nuqta dah sāl ast ki daryāchayī tashkīl yāfta ast.

You must have a leather bottle full of drinking-water with you. It is now 10 years ago that a lake formed itself at this place.

از قم تا طهران راه ساخته است که از روی آن کالسکه میتواند کار بکند

Az *Qum* tā *Tahrān* rāh-i sākhta ast, ki az rūyi un kālaska mītavānad kār bikunad.

From *Qum* to *Tehran* there is a made road, on which carriages can go.

در طهران خانهٔ کی میخواهید منزل بکنید

Dar *Tahrān* khāna-yi kī mīkhāhīd manzil bikunīd?

At whose house do you nean to stay at *Tehran*?

فرنگی نمیدانم با هیچ کس آشنا نیستم

Farangī. Na-mīdānam, bā hīch kas āshnā nīstam.

European. I do not know, I am not acquainted with any one.

ایرانی بنده میدانم که شما حکماً جائی مهمان خواهید شد و کرنه مهمانخانهٔ خوبی دارد

Irānī. Banda mīdānam ki shumā hukman jāī mihmān khāhīd shud, vagarna mihmānkhāna-yi khūbī dārad.

Persian. I know for certain that you will be some one's guest, but if not, there is a good hotel.

تعریف پای تخت ممالک محروسه را نخواهم کرد احوالات دار الخلافهٔ طهران در سفر نامجات سیاحهای فرنکی بقدر کفایت نوشته شده است بغیر از شرح خود سفر دیکر هیچ زحمتی نمیدهم از طهران تاقزوین راه ساختهٔ خوبیست که کالسکه و ترمتاس کار میکند اکر میل داشته باشید با کالسکه میتوانید بروید و منازل راه تا بقزوین از این قرار است

Taʿrīf-i pāyitakht-i *mamālik-i mahrūsa-rā* [1]) na-khāham kard. ahvālāt-i *Dār ul Khilāfa-yi Tahrān* dar safarnāmajāt-i seiyāhhā-yi Farangī bi qadr-i kafāyat navishta shuda ast. bi gheir az sharh-i khud-i safar dīgar hich zahmatī na-mīdaham. az *Tahrān* tā *Qazvīn* rāh-i sākhta-yi khūbī-st, kālaska vā turumtās kār mīkunad. agar meil dāshta bāshīd, bā kālaska mītavānīd biravīd va manāzil-i rāh tā bi *Qazvīn* az īn qarār ast:

I will not describe the capital of the "*Protected Provinces*". The "*House of the Chalifate, Tehran*", has been often enough described in the European Books of Travel. I will not trouble you with anything but an account of the journey itself. From *Tehran* to *Qazvin* there is a good, made road, over which carriages and tarantas can go. If you like, you can drive in a carriage. The stations on the way to *Qazvin* are the following:

1) ممالک محروسه mamālik-i mahrūsa i. e. the "protected provinces" is the official title of the Persian Empire.

از طهران تا شاه اباد چهار فرسخ حصارك چهار „ ینکی امام چهار „ کونده چهار „ قزوین چهار „	az *Tahrān* ta *Shāhābād* chah. f. *Hisārak* chahār farsakh *Yangī Imām* „ „ *Kavanda* „ „ *Qazvīn* „ „	From *Tehran* to *Shahabad* 4 fars. *Hisarak* 4 „ *Yangi Imam* 4 „ *Kavanda* 4 „ *Qazvin* 4 „
در قزوین مهمانخانهٔ خوبی بزرکی است بامبل و اسباب و خوراکی همه چیز در آنجا پیدا میشود	Dar *Qazvīn* mihmānkhāna-yi khūbī buzurgī-st, bā mubl [1]) u asbāb, va khurākī hama chīz dar unjā peidā mīshavad.	In *Qazvin* there is a good, big Hotel, with furniture and other things, and you can get any kind of food there.
و خود قزوین از بلاد معظمهٔ ایران است و سابقًا هم پای تخت بوده است میکویند اهل قزوین بسیار بد ذات و نادرست اند و این بیت مشهور است	Va khud-i *Qazvīn* az balād-i mu'zama-yi Irān ast va sābiqan *pāyitakht* būda ast. mīgūyand ahl-i *Qazvīn* bisyār bad zāt va nā-durust and va īn beit mashhūr ast:	*Qazvin* itself is an important Persian town, and was formerly the *capital* of Persia. They say that the inhabitants of *Qazvin* are great ruffians and rascals, and the following verse is well known:
مار و قزوینی چو بینی مرد هش	»Mār u Qazvīnī chu bīnī mard-i hush,	«If you see a serpent and an inhabitant of Qazvin, oh wise man!

1) مبل mubl furniture is the French word meubles.

»Leave the serpent alone, but kill the inhabitant of Qazvin."	»Mār-rā bugzār u Qazvīnī bi kush."	مار را بگذار و قزوینی بکش
From *Qazvin* to *Resht*, on account of the height of the mountains, the going to and fro of carriages and tarantasses is at present impossible; especially between *Mazraʿa* and *Paichinar*, where there is a high pass called *Kharzan*, the crossing of which causes great discomfort to man and beast.	Az *Qazvīn* tā *Rasht* bi jihat-i irtifāʿ-i kūhhā ʿubūr u murūr-i turumtās naqdan gheir mumkin ast, khusūsan mīān-i *Mazraʿa* va *Pāīchinār* kūtal-i bulandī-st mousūm bi *Kharzān* ki ʿubūr az ān bi māl va mardum kheilī sadama mīzanad.	از قزوین تارشت بجهت ارتفاع کوهها عبور و مرور ترمتاس نقدًا غیر ممکن است خصوصًا میان مزرعه و پای چنار کوتل بلندی است موسوم به خرزان که عبور از آن بمال و مردم خیلی صدمه میزند
The stations on the *Resht* road are the following:	Manzilhā-yi rāh-i *Rasht* az īn qarār ast.	منزلهای راه رشت از این قرار است
From *Qazvin* to *Mazraʿa* 5 fars.	az *Qazvīn* tā *Mazraʿa* panj fars.	از قزوین تا مزرعه پنج فرسخ
Pachiniar 5 „	*Pāchinar* „ „	پاچنار پنج „
Manjil 4 „	*Manjīl* chahār „	منجیل چهار „
Rustamabad 5 „	*Rustamābād* panj „	رستم‌اباد پنج „

کهدم پنج فرسخ رشت شش فرسخ	*Kuhdum* panj fars. *Rasht* shish „	*Kuhdum* 5 fars. *Rasht* 6 „
در منزل مزرعه یك جانوری پیدا میشود مشهور به ملة یا کنه از جنس ساس است و هم اورا غریب‌گز میگویند بجهت اینکه یك نوع سمی دارد که اگر بومی‌ها را بگزد اصلا اثر نمیکند امّا اگر غربارا گزید اثر سختی مینماید و گاهی منجر بهلاکت میشود بهیچ وجه آنجا نخوابید	Dar manzil-i *Mazraʿa* yak jānvarī peidā mīshavad, mashhūr bi *malla* yā *gana*. az jins-i *sās* ast va ham ūrā *gharībgaz* mīgūyand, bi jihat-i īnki yak nouʿ sammī dārad, ki agar būmīhā-rā bigazad, aslā asar na-mīkunad, ammā agar ghurabā-rā gazīd, asar-i sakhtī mīnamāyad va gāhī munjar bi halākat mīshavad. bi hīch vajh unjā na-khābīd!	In the station of *Mazraa* an insect is found, known as "*malla*" or "*gana*". It is a kind of bug, which is also called "*gharib gaz*", (biter of strangers), because it has a kind of poison, which never harms the natives, if they get bitten. But if this insect bites a stranger, it does much harm, and is sometimes the cause of death. Do not on any acoount stay the night there!
قریب بقریهٔ منجیل بکنار سفید رود میرسید رود خانهٔ خیلی عریض عمیقی است پلی سنگی	Qarīb bi qarya-yi *Manjīl* bi kanār-i *Safīdrūd* mīrasīd rūdkhāna-yi kheilī ʿarīz-i ʿamī-	Near the village of *Manjil* you reach the banks of the *Safidrud* river. The river is

very broad and deep. The stone bridge, which had been built across the water several years before, had been completely destroyed by the violence of a flood. Now it has been re-built. I (the slave) at that time crossed in a boat. On account of the quantity of water, and the strength of the wind, we were in danger of being drowned.	qī-st. pul-i sangī, ki dar unjā rū-yi āb basta būdand, chand sāl qabl az shiddat-i seilāb tamāman kharāb shuda būd. hālā durust karda and. banda dar ān safar bā karajī ᶜubūr karda būdam. bi vāsita-yi kasrat-i āb va shiddat-i bād bīm-i gharq shudan būd.	کـه در آنجا روی آب بسته بودند چند سال قبل از شدّت سیلاب تماماً خـراب شده بود حالا درست کرده‌اند بنده در آن سفر با کـرجـی عبور کرده بودم بواسطهٔ کثرت آب و شدّت باد بیم غرق شدن بود
Concerning the wind which blows at *Manjil*, His Majesty *Nasir ud din Shah*, in the description of his first journey to Europe, has written: Among the marvels and wonders of this place, is this: that at whatever season it may be,	Dar ḥāb-i bād ki dar *Manjīl* mīvazad, Aᶜlāḥazrat-i *Nāsir ad dīn Shāh* dar musāfarat nāma-yi avval-i *Farangistān* chunīn tahrīr farmūda and, ki az ᶜajāyib va badāyiᶜ īnki dar īn manzil, dar har fasl ki bāshad, nazdīk bi ᶜasr	درباب باد که در منجیل میوزد اعلیحضرت نـاصر الـدّین شاه در مسافرت نامهٔ اوّل فرنکستان چنین تحریـر فرمـوده اند که از عجایـب و بـدایع اینکه در ایـن منزل در هـر فصل کـه باشد نزدیک بعصر باد شدیدی

میوزد بطوری سخت و شدید است که درختهای زیتون که در اینجا رسته است یك سر بطرفی که باد میوزد کج و متمایل گشته است	bād-i shadīdī mīvazad, bi tourī sakht va shadīd ast, ki dirakhthā-yi zeitūn, ki dar īnjā rusta ast, yak sar bi tarafī ki bād mīvazad, kaj va mutamāyil gashta ast.	a strong wind blows every afternoon; it is so strong and violent that the olive-trees which grow there, are all of them crooked and bent over towards the direction in which the wind blows."
از منجیل که اول خاك گیلان است هم جا رو بشمال میروید تا قریب کهدم دست چپ کوه و دست راست رود خانه است کوههای سنگی و خاکی مرتفع بسیار مهیب و سراشیب طرفین راه است	Az *Manjīl*, ki avval-i khāk-i *Gīlān* ast hama jā rū bi shamāl mīravīd. tā qarīb-i *Kuhdum* dast-i chap kūh va dast-i rūst rūdkhāna ast. kūhhā-yi sangī va khākī-yi murtafiʿ-i bisyār muhīb va sarāshīb tarafein-i rāh ast.	From *Manjil*, which is the beginning of the province of *Gilan*, you go all the way in a northerly direction. Till you approach *Kuhdum* you have the mountains on your left, and the river on your right. Rocky, sandy, high, imposing and steep over-hanging hills are on both sides of the way.
بعد از گذشتن از قصبهٔ رودبار	Baʿd az guzashtan as qasaba-	After passing through the vil-

که مثلِ باغِ ارم سبز و خرّم
و آباد و پر درخت و پر گل
است راه بجنگل میرفتند و
طرفینِ راه هم کوهها پوشیده از
جنگل است زغالسازها اغلب
اشجارِ جنگل را بریده زغال
کرده اند از چند سال قبل
الی حال که این راهرا دیده
بودم اشجار زیاد انداخته
جنگلرا خالی کرده اند اگرچه
بعضی جاها باطلاقِ سخت
است باز خیلی جای با
صفائی است درختهای مو

yi *Rūdbār*, ki misl-i bāgh-i *Iram* [1]) sabz u khurram va ābād va pur dirakht va pur gul ast, rāh bi jangal mīuftad, va tarafein-i rāh ham kūhhā pūshīda az jangal ast. zughālsāzhā aghlab-i ashjār-i jangal-rā burrīda zughāl karda and. az chand sāl qabl ilā hāl, ki in rāh-rā dīda būdam, ashjār-i zīād andākhta jangal-rā khalī karda and. agarchi baʿzī jāhā bātlāq-i sakhtī-st, bāz kheilī jā-yi bā safāyī-st. dirakhthā-yi *mou-i*

lage of *Rudbar*, which, like the garden of *Iram*, is green, cheerful, cultivated, and full of trees and flowers, the road leads into the wood. On both sides of the way there are hills covered with forests. Coal-burners have cut down the forest-trees in many places, and have made char coal out of them. It is several years ago now since I saw this road; they must have cut down more trees by now and have made the forest bare. Although in many places there is deep morass, yet it is a lovely spot.

1) A fabulous garden much praised by Arabic and Persian poets.

جنگلی طبیعتًا روی درختهای نـارون وغـیـره کشیده شـده

jangalį tabīᶜatan rū-yi dirakhthā-yi nārvan va gheira. kashīda shuda ast.

Wild vines have sprung up and covered the *elms* and other trees.

است از همه جـا جویها وآب

az hama jā jūbhā va ābshārhā-yi bisyār sāf

Everywhere there are brooks, and very clear

شارهای بسیار صاف از بالای

az bālā-yi kūh mīrīzand.

water-falls,

کوه میریزند همهٔ آبها بسفید

hama-yi ābhā bi *Safīdrūd*

which flow from the summit of the hills. All these waters flow into the *Safidrud*

رود ریخته منصبِ دریای خزر میشود

rīkhta munsabb-i *Daryā-yi Khazir* mīshavad.

and then into the *Caspian Sea.*

از جـائـی کـه کـوهستان تمام میشود کـه اسم آن نقطه امام

Az jā-yī ki kūhistān tamām mīshavad, ki ism-i ān nuqta *Imāmzāda Hāshim* ast,

Just where the mountains end, the spot being named »*Imam zada Hashim*,

زاده هـاشـم اسـت خیـابـانِ دولتیِ خـیلی خـوبی است اما

khīābān-i doulatī-yi kheilī khūbīst, ammā

there is a very good state-road, but

بعضی جـاهـا تعمیر لازم دارد

baᶜzī jāhā taᶜmīr lāzim dārad.

in some places it wants repairing.

اهـل آن ولایـت اکثر سخت

ahl-i un vilāyat aksar takht-i ravān nishasta

The inhabitants of this province mostly travel in a litter [1]).

1) The »*takht-i ravān*« (travelling-throne), is generally carried between two mules.

روان نشته سفر میکنند بنده هرگز از این جور مسافرت خوشم نمیاید تکان تخت روان بمن خیلی صدمه میزند	safar mīkunand. banda har giz az īn jūr musāfirat khush-am na-mīāyad. takān-i takht-i ravān bi man kheilī sadama mīzanad.	I do not at all like this mode of travelling. The shaking of the litter causes me much discomfort.
آب وهوای گیلان مثل هند گرم و تر و خفه است و مورث امراض سخت است چند نفر از دوستهای من در رشت ناخوش شده تب کرده اند	Ab u havā-yi *Gīlān* misl-i Hind garm u tar u khafa ast, va mūris-i amrāz-i sakht ast. chand nafar az dūsthā-yi man dar *Rasht* nākhush shuda tap karda and.	The climate (water and air) of *Gilan*, like the Indian climate, is warm, damp and oppressive, and is the cause of many severe illnesses. Several friends of mine became ill at *Resht* and had fever.
فرنگی مگر خود شهر رشت لب دریای طبرستان واقع است	*Farangī.* Magar khud-i shahr-i *Rasht* lab-i *Daryā-yi Tabaristān* vāqi^{c} ast?	*European.* Is the town of *Resht* itself situated on the shores of the *Caspian Sea*?
ایرانی خیر از رشت تا پیره بازار یك فرسخ بیشتر راه است از آنجا سوار کرجی شده میروید تا انزلی	*Irānī.* Kheir, az *Rasht* tā *Pīra Bāzār* yak farsakh bīshtar rāh ast. az unjā savār-i karajī shuda mīravīd tā *Anzalī*.	*Persian.* No, from *Resht* to *Pira Bazaar* it is more than one farsakh. From there you go by boat to *Anzeli*.

شهر انزلی سر نیم جزیرهٔ در دهنهٔ مرداب افتاده است که یك طرف دریای بزرك و طرف دیکرش دریای کوچك است کشتی های بخار مال روسیه نزدیك انزلی لنکر میاندازند و به استرا که سرحد ایران و روس است رفته از آنجا به لنکران و به بادکوبه میرود	Shahr-i *Anzalī* sar-i nīm jazīra-yī, dar dahana-yi *Murdāb* aftāda ast, ki yak taraf daryā-yi buzurg va taraf-i dīgar-ash daryā-yi kūchik ast. kashtīhā-yi bukhār māl-i *Rūsīa* nazdīk-i *Anzalī* langar mī-andūzand va bi *Astarā*, ki sarhadd-i *Irān* va *Rūs* ast rafta az unjā bi *Lankurān* va bi *Bādkūba* mīravad.	The town of *Anzeli* is situated on a peninsula at the mouth of the *Lagoon*. On one side is the open sea, on the other the lagoon. Steamers belonging to *Russia* anchor in *Anzali*, then go to *Astara*, which is the Russo-Persian frontier. From there they go to *Lankuran* and to *Baku*.
از بادکوبه میتوانید سوار کالسکهٔ بخار شده به تفلیس و بباطوم بروید از باطوم تا اودیسه یا اسلامبول کشتی بخار کار میکند و از اودیسه و اسلامبول راه اهن است تا ولایت شما	Az *Bādkūba* mītavānīd savār-i kālaska-yi bukhār shuda bi *Tiflīs* va bi *Bātūm* biravīd. Az *Bātūm* tā *Udīsa* yā *Islāmbūl* kashtī-yi bukhār kār mīkunad va az *Udīsa* va *Islāmbūl* rāh-i āhan ast tā vilāyat-i shumā.	From *Baku* you can take the train and go to *Tiflis* and to *Batum*. Ships sail from *Batum* to *Odessa* or to *Constantinople*. From *Odessa* or *Constantinople* there are trains to your country.

From *Tiflis* you can also go by carriage to *Vladikavkas*, and from there to any place in *Europe*.

There is yet another way from *Baku*. With the same ship, with which you sailed from *Anzali*, you can reach the town of *Astrakhan*, at the mouth of the *Volga*. Another ship brings you to *Tsaritsin*, which is a railway-station. The *Russian* railway takes you via *Moscow* and *St. Petersburg* to any place in Europe.

Az *Tiflīs* ham savār-i kālaskayī aspī tā *Vlādī qafqāz* mītavānīd biravīd va az unjā bi hama jā tā *Farangistān*.

Rāh-i dīgar ham az *Bādkūba* hast. savār-i hamun kashtī, ki az *Anzalī* āmadīd bi shahr-i *Hājī Tarkhān*, dahana-yi rūdkhāna-yi *Vulgā* mīrasīd. kashtī-yi dīgar shumā-ra bi *Tsārītsīn* ki istāsīūn-i rāh-i āhan ast, mīrasānad. rāh-i āhan māl-i *Rūsīa* az rāh-i *Muskū* va *Pitr* tā hama jāyi Farangistān mīravad.

از تفلیس هم سوار کالسکه اسپی تا ولادی قفقاز میتوانید بروید و از آنجا بهمه جا تا فرنکستان

راه دیکری هم از بادکوبه هست سوار همان کشتی که از انزلی آمدید بشهر حاجی ترخان دهنه رودخانهولکا میرسید کشتی دیکر شمارا به تساریتسین که استاسیون راه آهن است میرساند راه آهن مال روسیه از راه مسکو و پطر تا همه جای فرنکستان میرود

Anecdote N°. 1.

Once somebody sent ten sheep with a note by a servant as a present to his friend. This servant stole one of those sheep on the way and brought nine of them with the note to his master's friend. When that (friend) opened the envelope and read it, he saw that *ten* sheep had been written. When he counted the sheep he saw there were *nine*. He asked the man who brought the sheep: "Are these (only) *nine* sheep?" The bearer answered: "What can I say? there may be (only) *nine*".

Hikāyat 1.

Rūzī kasī dah tā gūsfand bā yak kāghaz bi tavassut-i noukar barāyi dūst-i khud-ash taʿāruf faristād. An noukar yakī az ān gūsfandhārā dar bein-i rāh duzdīd va nuh tā-yi un-rā bā kāghaz pīsh-i dūst-i āgha-y-ash āvurd. Vakhtī-ki ān pākat-rā vāz karda khund, dīd ki dah gusfand navishta shuda ast. Gūsfandhārā ki shumurd, dīd nuh tā-st. Az hāmil-i gusfand pursīd: "īnhā nuh gusfand ast?" hāmil javāb dād: "chi ʿarz kunam? nuh tā bāshad". Guft: ʿdar kāghaz dah tā

حکایت ۱

روزی کسی ده تا گوسفند با
یك کاغذ بتوسطِ نوکر برای
دوستِ خودش تعارف فرستاد
آن نوکر یکی از آن گوسفندهارا
در بین راه دزدید و نه
تای آن را با کاغذ پیش
دوست آقایش آورد وقتی که
آن پاکت را واز کرده خواند
دید که ده گوسفند نوشته
شده است گوسفندهارا که
شمرد دید نُه تا است از حاملِ
گوسفند پرسید اینها نه گوسفند
است حامل جواب داد چه

(The other) said: "In the letter is written *ten* sheep". Again the bearer answered. "What can I say? There may be *ten*". That man thought to himself: "This servant is perhaps an idiot (lit: ass-man) and does not distinguish between *nine* and *ten*. Therefore, in order to make the servant well understand that *nine* is different from *ten*, he called ten of his people and said to that man: "Count these". The servant counted them. He then ashed: "How many are they"? He answered; "ten". He said: "Very well! now let every one of these singly go and lay hold of one sheep, so that

navishta shuda ast". Bāz hāmil javāb dād: "chi 'arz kunam? dah tā bāshad". Un shakhs pīsh-i khud kheyāl kard, ki ın noukar shāyad ādam-i kharī-st mīan-i nuh tā va dah tā farq na-mīdahad. Pas, barāyi ınki khūb bi noukar hālī kunad, ki nuh tā gheir az dah tā-st, dah nafar az ādamhā-yi khudashrā sadā karda bi un mardaka guft: "ınhāra bishumār"! noukar shumurd. Pursīd chand nafar hastand"? guft: "dah tā" guft: "bisyār khūb! hālā ınhā har kudām yak yak biravand, yak gūsfand bigırand, bi-bınī chand tā az gūsfandhā kam ast". pas

عرض کنم نه‌تا باشد کفت در
کاغذ ده تا نوشته شده است
باز حامل جواب داد چه عرض
کنم ده تا باشد آن شخص
پیش خود خیال کرد که این
نوکر شاید آدم خری است
میان نه تا و ده تا فرق
نمیدهد پس برای اینکه خوب
نوکر حالی کند که نه تا
غیر از ده تا است ده نفر از
آدمهای خودش را صدا کرده
بان مردکه کفت این‌هارا بشمار
نوکر شمرد پرسید چند نفر
هستند کفت ده تا کفت
بسیار خوب حالا این‌ها هر
کدام یك یك بروند یك
کوسفند بگیرند ببینی چند
تا از کوسفندها کم است

you may see how many sheep are missing". So these ten men went and each one caught hold of a sheep, (only) the tenth had no sheep. That man said to the servant: "Look here, there are ten men, as you have counted them yourself. If there were ten sheep, each one of the men ought to have one sheep. Now, according to this there are *nine* sheep". The servant again said: "What can I say? Let them be *nine*". (The other) said: "Then why has the tenth man remained without a sheep?" He answered: "Each of those who caught a sheep was quick, the tenth

ān dah nafar yak yak rafta yak gūsfand giriftand. dahumī gūsfand na-dāsht. Un shakhs bi noukar guft: «Bibīn ādamhā dah ta hastand, hamintour ki khudat shumurdī. Agar gūsfandhā dah tā bāshad, bāyad har kudām yak gūsfand dāshta bāshand; pas az īn qarār gūsfandhā nuh tā-st". Noukar bāz guft: «chi ʿarz kunam? nuh tā bāshad". guft pas chirā ādam-i dahumī bī gusfand mund? guft: «unhā ki har kudām gūsfand giraftand, zarang būdand. un dahumī tambal

پس آن ده نفر یك یك رفته
یك گوسفند گرفتند دهمی
گوسفند نداشت آن شخص
بنوکر گفت ببین آدمها ده
تا هستند این طور که خودت
شمردی اگر گوسفندها ده تا
باشد باید هر کدام یك گوسفند
داشته باشند پس از این قرار
گوسفندها نه تا است نوکر
باز گفت چه عرض کنم نه
تا باشد گفت پس چرا آدم
دهمی بی گوسفند ماند گفت
انها که هرکدام گوسفند
گرفتند زرنگ بودند آن دهمی

man was slow; if he had not been slow, he too would have caught hold of a sheep. This is not the slave's (my) fault, it is the fault of his own laziness.

Anecdote N°. 2.

A Turk, having mounted his own camel, went to town and there bought some wheat.
As the wheat was not enough to make up one load, he put all the wheat in one saddle-bag, and in the other he put stones of the same weight as the wheat.
Having placed both loads on the camel's back, he took the

būd; agar tambal na-būd, ū ham yak gūsfand gīr-ash mīāmad. In taqsīr-i banda nīst, taqsīr-i tambalī-yi khudash ast.

Hikāyat-i duyum.

Turkī shutur-i khudashrā savār shuda bi shahrī raft va dar unjā qadrī gandum kharīd. Chun ān gandum bi qadr-i yak bār na-būd, gandumhārā dar yak linga rīkht va dar linga-yi dīgar, hamvazn-i gandum, sang guzāsht va har du linga-rā bār-i shutur karda mahār shutur rā girifta pīada az shahr bīrūn

تنبل بود اگر تنبل نبود او
هم یك گوسفند گیرش می
آمد این تقصیر بنده نیست
تقصیر تنبلی خودش است

حکایت ۲

ترکی شتر خودشرا سوار شده
بشهری رفت و در انجا قدری
گندم خرید چون آن گندم
بقدر یك بار نبود گندم هارا
در یك لنکه ریخت و در لنکهٔ
دیگر هموزنِ گندم سنك
گذاشت و هر دو لنکهرا بارِ
شتر کرده مهارِ شتر را گرفته
پیاده از شهر بیرون آمد

قدری راه که طی کرد یك نفر پیادهٔ دیکر باو رسید از او پرسید که بارِ شترت چه چیز است ترك جواب داد که یك لنکهٔ بار شتر کندم است و لنکهٔ دیکر سنك آن شخص پیاده به آن شتردار کفت شترت را بخوابان یك کاری با این بارِ شتر بکنم که هم بارِ شترت سبك بشود و هم خودت سوار بشوی و پیاده راه نروی شتربانِ ترك شتررا خوابانید آن پیاده تمامِ آن سنك ها

ʻamad. Qadrī rāh ki tei kard, yak nafar pīāda-yi dīgar bi ū rasīd.

Az ū pursīd, ki: «bār-i shutur-at chi chīz ast"?

Turk javāb dād ki "yak linga-yi bār-i shutur gandum ast va linga-yi dīgar sang".

An shakhs-i pīāda bi un shuturdār guft: «Shutur-rā bi-khābān! yak kārī bā īn bār-i shutur bikunam, ki ham bār-i shutur-at sabuk bishavad, va ham khud-at savār bishavī va pīāda rāh na-ravī". Shuturbān-i Turk shutur-rā khābānīd. An pīāda tamām-i

camel's rope and walked out of the town.

Having gone a little way, he met a man on foot.

This man asked him: «What is your camel's load"?

The Turk answered «On one side is wheat and on the other side are stones".

The man on foot said to the owner of the camel: «Make your camel lie down! Let me arrange this load in such a way, that not only your camels' burden should become light, but that at the same time you should be able to ride and not go on foot". The turkish camel-driver made the camel lie down. The tra-

ān sang-hā-rā bīrūn rīkht, nisf-i ān gandum-rā dar linga-yi dīgar rīkht va sānīan bār-i shutur karda bi shuturbān guft: "Hālā khudat ham savār shou". Shuturbān bā khushhālī savār shud va az hūsh u ʿaql-i ān pīāda mutaheyyir būd. Baʿd az īnki qadrī rāh raft, az pīāda pursīd: "Shumā bā īn hūsh u kamāl chi qadr shutur dārīd"? javāb dād: "hīch". Shuturbān kheyāl kard ki shāyad gūsfand-ī zīād dārad; pursīd: "chi qadr gūsfand dārī"? bāz javāb dād: "hīch". Pas pursīd: "Chi qadr pūl u doulat

veller threw out all the stones, and put half of the wheat into the other saddle-bag. Secondly having put up the loads, he said to the camel-driver: "Now you can also ride".

The camel-driver joyfully mounted and was astounded at the cleverness and intelligence of the traveller. After having gone a short way, he asked him: "You who are so clever and wise, how many camels have you"?

He answered: "None". The camel-driver thought that he must have many sheep, and asked: "How many sheep have you?" Again he answered:

را بیرون ریخت نصف ان
کندم را در لنکهٔ دیکر ریخت
و ثانیًا بارِ شتر کرده بشتربان
کفت حالا خودت هم سوار شو
شتربان باخوشحالی سوار شد و
از هوش و عقلِ آن پیاده
متحیّر بود بعد از اینکه
قدری راه رفت از پیاده
پرسید شما با این هوش و
کمال چقدر شتر دارید جواب
داد هیچ شتربان خیال کرد
که شاید کوسفند زیاد دارد
پرسید چه قدر کوسفند داری
باز جواب داد هیچ پس
پرسید چه قدر پول و دولت

"None". Then the other asked. "How much money and wealth do you possess"? The wanderer answered "I have nothing, I am a poor man". The camel-driver, having heard these words, quickly got off the camel, and made him lie down. He then put back all the wheat into one saddle-bag, filled the other bag with stones and went on walking by his camel's side. The other traveller said: "Why did you do this"? He answered: Science and wisdom are of bad omen and bring ill-luck. If they did not cause ill-luck, you would, with your cleverness, possess

dārī"? Javāb dād: "Hīch nadāram va mard-i faqīrī hastam". Shuturbān bi shanīdan-i īn harf zūd az shutur pīāda shuda shutur-rā khābānīd va gandum-rā dar yak linga rīkht; bāz linga-yi dīgar-rā az sang pur karda, khudash pīāda bā shutur mīraft. Pīāda guft: "chirā īntour kardī"? Javāb dād ki: "ʿilm u dānāī mashʿūm ast" va sabab-i badbakhtī-st. Agar mashʿūm nabūd, tu bāyad bā īn hūsh kheilī shutur va rama dāshta bāshī, va bār-i shutur-am rā

داری جواب داد هیچ ندارم
و مرد فقیری هستم شتربان
بشنیدن این حرف زود از
شتر پیاده شده شتر را
خوابانید و کندم را در یك
لنکه ریخت باز لنکهٔ دیکر را
از سنك پر کرده خودش پیاده
با شتر میرفت پیاده کفت چرا
اینطور کردی جواب داد که
علم و دانائی مشئوم است
و سبب بد بختی است اکر
مشئوم نبود تو باید با این
هوش خیلی شتر و رمه داشته
باشی وبار شترم را بصورت اول

many camels and flocks. So I have replaced my camel-load as it was, for I fear that through the misfortune of your cleverness an adversity or calamity will befall me and my camel.

Anecdote N°. 3.

A man from *Shīrāz* had come to *Isfahān* and had heard that there were many pickpockets there. He made some broken china into something resembling money, put it into his pocket and walked about every day in the bazaars of Isfahan; waiting for a pickpocket to pick his pocket and be deceived.

bi sūrat-i avval kardam, tarsīdam ki mabādā az nikbat-i ʿilm-i tu yak badbakhtī va balāī bi man va shutur-i man birasad.

Hikāyat 3.

Yak Shīrāzī bi Isfahān āmada shanīda būd ki dar unjā jībburr bisyār hastand. Qadrī chīnī-yi shikasta bi sūrat-i pūl durust karda dar jīb-i khudash rīkht va har rūz dar bāzār-i Isfahān rāh mīraft; muntazir būd, ki yak jībburr jīb-i ūrā biburrad, tā gūl bikhurad. Līkan jīb-i ūrā

کردم ترسیدم که مبادا از
نکبت علم تو یك بد بختی
و بلائی بمن و شتر من برسد

حکایت ۳

یك شیرازی باصفهان آمده
شنیده بود که در آنجا جیب
بر بسیار هستند قدری چینی
شکسته بصورت پول درست
کرده در جیب خودش ریخت
و هر روز در بازار اصفهان راه
میرفت منتظر بود که یك
جیب بر جیب او را ببرّد
تا گول بخورد لیکن جیب

But his pocket was not picked. One day he was sitting with some people of Isfahan and said: "I have heard that there are a great many pickpockets at Isfahan and now for some time past I have had much money in my pocket and have also walked about everywhere; as yet they have not been able to pick my pocket. One of those Isfahanis said: "My good fellow! ten times have I taken out what you had in your pocket; I saw it was only broken china and put it in again and you did not notice it".

hīch na-burrīdand. Rūzī dar jāī bā chand nafar Isfahānī nishasta būd. Guft: "Man shanīda būdam, ki dar Isfahān jībburr farāvān ast va hālā muddatī-st ki pūl-i zīād dar jīb dāram va hama jā ham gardish karda am; hanūz na tavānista and, jīb-i marā biburrand. Yakī az ān Isfahānīhā guft: "ei bīchāra! dah daf'a unchi dar jīb-i tu būd dar āvurdam; dīdam ki hama chīnī-yi shikasta ast, bāz tū-yash guzāshtam va tu na-fahmīdī.

اورا هیچ نبریدند روزی در جائی با چند نفر اصفهانی نشسته بود گفت من شنیده بودم که در اصفهان جیب‌بر فراوان است وحالا مدّتی است که پول زیاد در جیب دارم و همه جا هم گردش کرده ام هنوز نتوانسته اند جیب مرا ببرّند یکی از آن اصفهانیها گفت ای بیچاره ده دفعه آنچه در جیب تو بود در آوردم دیدم که همه چینی شکسته است باز تویش گذاشتم و تو نفهمیدی

Description of a train.

The railway carriages were a special train of saloons for the use of the Emperor, very handsome, spacious, and beautifully fitted up. They contained many different apartments, dining-saloons, sleeping-carriages, reception-saloons, all furnished with lamps, tables, chairs, sofas, and couches. They all communicated with one another, so that one could pass from end to end of the train. Those of our suite who accompanied

Beyān-i rah-i āhan.

Kālaskahā-yi rāh-i āhan az kālaska-hā-yi makhsūs-i Imparātūr būd, bisyār khūb va vasī' va muzeiyan; va utāqhā-yi mutaᶜaddad az sufra-khāna va khābgāh va utāq-i pazīrāī hama muzeiyan bi chirāgh va mīz va sandalī va tākht va nīm-takht. Kālaskahā hama bi ham vasl būd, tourī-ki bi jamīᶜ-i kālaskahā mīshud raft u āmad. Ashkhāsī-ki dar kashtī-i "Qustantīn" bā mā būdand, dar kālaska-yi mā nishasta, va shāhzādagān va

بیان راه اهن

کالسکه های راه آهن از کالسکه های مخصوص امپراطور بود

بسیار خوب و وسیع و مزیّن و اطاقهای متعدد از سفره‌خانه و خوابگاه و اطاق پذیرائی همه

مزیّن بچراغ و میز و صندلی و تخت و نیم تخت کالسکه‌ها همه بهم وصل بود بطوری که به جمیع کالسکه ها میشد

رفت و آمد اشخاصی که در کشتی قسطنطین با ما بودند در کالسکه ما نشسته و شاهزاده‌گان و سایرین با یکدسته

کالسکهٔ دیکر از عقب میآمدند
اوّل مرتبهٔ است که بکالسکه بخار می نشینیم بسیار خوب و راحت است ساعتی پنج فرسنك راه میرود

sāīrīn bā yak dasta-yi kālaska-yi dīgar az 'aqab mīāmadand. Avval martabaī-st ki bi kālaska-i bukhār mīnishīnīm. Bisyār khūb va rāhat ast. Sā'atī panj farsang rāh mīravad.

us on board the "Constantine" were placed in the same saloon with ourselves; our princes and the rest following in a separate train. This is the first time we travel on a railway, and very nice and comfortable it is; it goes five leagues in an hour.

رود خانهٔ نوا

رود خانه نوا از سمت شمال پطر بطرف مابین جنوب و مشرق جاری و خیلی رود خانهٔ عظیمی است کشتی بخار بزرك در آن کار میکنند هر روز پارچیهای یخ زیاد مانند کوه از شمال میآرد که

Rūdkhāna-yi Navā.

Rūdkhāna-yi *Navā* az samt-i shamāl-i *Pitr* bi taraf-i mābein-i junūb va mashriq jārī va kheilī rūdkhāna-yi ʿazīmī-st. Kashtī-yi bukhār-i buzurg dar un kār mīkunand. Har rūz pārchahā-yi yakh-i zīād, mānand-i kūh az shamāl mīā-

The river Neva.

The river *Neva* flows from the north of St Petersburg in a south easterly direction; and is a very large river. Large steamers navigate it. Every day many pieces of ice like mountains are brought down by it from the north,

which are extremely pure and beautiful, like the ice on the mountain Tūchāl in the Elburz. It is said that the water of the Neva is not wholesome, and the Emperor cautioned us against drinking it. On one side of the stream is the palace in which we have our quarters, and on the other side is the old fort built in the time of Peter the Great, within which there is a church with a high tower and spire of gold. The tombs of the sovereigns of Russia are in that church. The mint of the Government is also within the fort. — The streets of St. Petersburg are lighted with gas.

rad, ki bisyār sāf u khūb misl-i yakh-i Tūchāl-i Alburz ast. Mīgūyand āb-i Navā sālim nīst. Imparātūr ham mārā az khurdan-i un manᶜ mīkard. Yak taraf-i rūdkhāna ᶜimāratī-st ki manzil-i māst, va taraf-i muqābil qalᶜa-i kuhnaī-st ki dar ayyām-i *Patar Kabīr* sākhta and. Kalīsāyī dar vasat-i qalᶜa ast; manāra va mīl-i bulandī az tilā dārad, va maqbara-yi salātīn-i *Rūs* dar un jā-st. Zarrāb-khāna yi doulatī ham dar qalᶜa ast. — Kūchahā-yi *Patarburgh* bā gāz roushan mīshavad.

بسیار صاف و خوب مثل یخ توچال البرز است میگویند آب نوا سالم نیست امپراطور هم مارا از آشامیدن آن منع میکرد یکطرف رود خانه عمارتی است که منزل ما است و طرف مقابل قلعهٔ کهنهٔ است که در ایّام پطر کبیر ساخته اند کلیسائی در وسط قلعه است مناره و میل بلندی از طلا دارد مقبرهٔ سلاطین روس در آنجا است ضرابخانه دولتی هم در قلعه است کوچهای پطر بورغ با گاز روشن میشود

The Russian and German frontier.

In these regions everything became changed, — the men, the country, the carriages, the food, etc. The populousness and cultivation in the land of the Prussian are greater than in Russia. Whenever I looked out there were villages, houses, men, horses, oxen, mares, sheep, meadows, sown-fields, water, and flowers of all colours. We crossed many rivers. Human improvements of charming aspect came in sight, near and afar. And so we came to a station. The train stopped; the Grand-

Sarhadd-i Rūs u Almān.

Dar īn sarhadd vazᶜ-i hama chīz az ādam va zamīn va kālaska va khurākī va gheira taghyīr kard: Abādī-yi khāk-i *Prūs* az *Rūsia* bīshtar ast. Har chi nigāh mīkardīm dih, khāna, ādam, asp, mādīān, gāv, gūsfand, chaman, zarāᶜat, āb, gulhā-yi alvān būd. Az rūdkhāna-yi zīādī guzashtīm. Abādīhā-yi bisyār pākīza az dūr u nazdīk peidā būd tā rasīdīm bi yak *istāsyūn*, īstādīm. Sadr aᶜzam bi kālaska-yi mā

سرحد روس و آلمان

در این سر حدّ وضع همه چیز
از آدم و زمین و کالسکه و
خوراکی وغیره تغییر کرد آبادی
خاك پروس از روسیه بیشتر
است هرچه نگاه میکردیم ده
خانه آدم اسپ مادیان گاو
گوسفند چمن زراعت آب
گلهای الوان بود از رودخانهٔ
زیادی گذشتیم آبادیهای بسیار
پاکیزه از دور و نزدیك پیدا
بود تا رسیدیم بیك استاسیون
ایستادیم صدر اعظم بکالسکه
ما آمد تلگرافچی پروس

Vazīr came to our carriage. The Prussian Telegraph-Officer handed in a number of telegrams from Tehrān, and these were perused. Thanks be to God, they the conveyed good tidings. Again we started.

āmad; talagrāfchī-yi Prūs talagrāf-i zīādī az Tahrān dād. Khunda shud; alhamdu lillāh akhbār-i khūb dāsht. Bāz bi rāh uftādīm.

تلگراف زیادی از طهران داد
خوانده شد الحمد لله اخبار
خوب داشت باز براه افتادیم

As the Prussian train travelled very fast, within two hours and a half of our leaving the Russian frontier we arrived at *Königsberg*, a city of Prussia, and very near to the *Baltic Sea*. A large river passes through this city, which is named the *Pregel*. Merchant-steamers come up from the sea to the interior of the city, and return

Chun kālaska-yi bukhār bisyār tund mīraft, az sarhadd-i Rūs du sāʿat u nīm kashīd, tā rasīdīm bi shahr-i *Kunigsbarg*, ki yakī az shahrhā-yi Prūs, va bi *Daryā-yi Bāltik* bisyār nazdīk ast. Rūdkhāna-yi ʿazīmī az vasat-i īn shahr mīguzarad, ki ismash *Prajal* ast. Kashtī-yi bukhār-i tijāratī az daryā tā vasat-i shahr mīāyad va mīravad. Shahr i

چون کالسکهٔ بخار بسیار تند
میرفت از سر حدّ روس دو
ساعت و نیم کشید تا رسیدیم
بشهر کنیکس برك که یکی از
شهرهای پروس وبدریای بالتك
بسیار نزدیك است رود خانه
عظیمی از وسط این شهر
میگذرد که اسمش پرژل است
کشتی بخار تجارتی از دریا تا
وسط شهر میآید و میرود شهر

کوچکی است اما قشنگ جمعیتش نود و پنج هزار نفر است	kūchikī-st ammā qashang. Jamʿīat-ash navad u panj hazār nafar ast.	in like manner. It is a small city, but pretty; its population is 95,000 souls.
یکنوع زراعتی که اسمش راپ است در صحرای خاك پروس امروز دیده شد که گل زرد بسیار خوش رنگی داشت برای روغنش میکارند که بجهت چرب کردن آلات ماشین راه آهن و غیره خیلی بکار میرود بسیار کاشته بودند و صفای زیادی بصحراها داده بود طبیعتًا تمام صحرا چمن است و جنگلهای سرو و کاج اما در خاك پروس بسیار کمتر از خاك روس است	Yak nouʿ-i zarāʿatī ki ism-ash "*rāp*" ast, dar sahrāhā-yi khāk-i Prūs imrūz dīda shud, ki gul-i zard-i bisyār khushrangī dāsht. Barāyi roughan-ash mīkārand, ki bi jihat-i charb kardan-i ālāt-i māshīn-i rāh-i āhan va ghaira kheilī bi kār mīravad. Bisyār kāshta būdand, va safā-yi zīādī bi sahrāhā dāda būd. Tabīʿatan tamām-i sahrā chaman ast va jangalhā-yi sarv u kāj, ammā dar khāk-i Prūs bisyār kamtar az khāk-i Rūs ast.	We have to-day seen in the Prussian territory the cultivation of rape-seed, which has a yellow flower of a very charming tint. It is sown for its oil (colza oil), which is much used for the lubrication of locomotives, and the like. It was very extensively cultivated, and it gave a peculiar charm to the landscape. Naturally, the country is all meadowland interspersed with forests of fir and yews, though these latter an far less common than in Russia.
خلاصه وارد کار شدیم صاحب	Khulāsa vārid-i gār shudīm.	In fine, we reached the station,

where there was a large body of troops and officiers, all very handsome young men, with helmets on their heads, and beautiful clothing on their bodies. They were a very pretty soldiery. The Prussian Kingdom is all soldiery. The bands here, like those in Tehrān, have all drums and fifes, whereas in Russia they have not this kind of fife.

Sāhibmansab va sarbāz-izīādī būdand. Hama javānhā-yi bisyār khūb, kulāh-i khūd bar sar, libāshā-yi khūb dar tan, kheilī qushūn-i khūbī būdand. — Mamlikat-i Prūs hama qushūn ast. — Mūzīkānchīān-i īnjā, misl-i afvāj-i Tahrān, hama bālābān va nei dārand, ammā dar Rūs īn qism-i nei na būd.

منصب و سرباز زیادی بودند همه جوانهای بسیار خوب کلاه خود بر سر لباسهای خوب در تن خیلی قشون خوبی بودند مملکت پروس همه قشون است موزیکانچیان اینجا مثل افواج طهران همه بالابان و نی دارند اما در روس این قسم نی نبود

Infinite numbers of men and women lined both sides of the streets everywhere. I mounted an open carriage and drove off. Crowds of children ran by its side. It was a curious hubbub. We passed down a long street. The hou-

Mard u zan ilā gheir annihāyat hama jā dar du taraf-i rāh saff kashīda būdand. Man savār i kālaska-yi rūbāzī shuda rāndam. Atfāl-i zīādī dour-i kālaska mīdavīdand; yak hangāma-yi gharībī būd. Kūcha-yi tūlānī tei shud.

مرد و زن الی غیر النهایة همه جا در دو طرف راه صف کشیده بودند من سوار کالسکه رو بازی شده راندم اطفال زیادی دور کالسکه میدویدند یک هنکامهٔ

غریبی بود کوچهٔ طولانی طی شد خانها همه سه چهار طبقه و کوچك و تنکست بعمارت دولتی قدیم که پانصد سال است بنا شده رسیده در عمارت پیاده شده از پله زیادی بالا رفتیم عمارت کهنه است همکی همراهان هم از شاهزادکان و عمله خلوت و غیره آمدند

Khānahā hama sih, chahār tabaqa va kūchik u tang ast. Bi ʿimārat-i doulatī-yi qadīm, ki punsad sāl ast binā shuda, rasīda, dar ʿimārat piāda shuda, az palla-yi zīādī bālā raftīm. ʿImārat-i kuhna ast. Hamagī-yi hamrāhān ham az shāhzādagān va ʿamala-yi khalvat va gheira āmadand.

Khanahs are all of three or four stories, small, and narrow. We arrived at an ancient palace, built five hundred years ago, dismounted at its gate, and went up many stairs. It is an old structure. The whole of our suite, princes, household officials, etc., all came there.

چون اهل این شهر هرگز ایرانی ندیده بودند از ملاقات ما خیلی متعجب بودند

Chun ahl-i īn shahr har giz Irānī na dīda būdand, az mulāqāt-i mā kheilī mutaʿajjib būdand.

As the people of this city had never seen a Persian, they were much surprised at the sight of us.

اسم حاکم شهر و یوکلر است کالسکه های این شهر واسپهای کالسکه ها بزیادی و خوبی کالسکه های روس و اسپهای آنجا نیست

Ism-i hākim-i shahr *vivaklar* ast. — Kālaskahā-yi īn shahr va asphā-yi kālaskahā bi zīādī va khubī-yi kālaskahā-yi Rūs va asphā-yi unjā nīst.

The name of the Governor of the city is Vivekler. The carriages of this place, and the horses in the carriages, are not so numerous nor so beautiful as those in Russia.

Black-tailed tumbler pigeons, and others, swifts, storks, and magpies, appeared very numerous in this country; windmills are in great plenty.

In the night several military-outside bands stood in front the palace and played a long time, i. e., they beat the night-roll on the drums. The harmony of the fifes of these bands, and the tenue of the men, were excellent. A great military drum, too, was fastened to a large dog, with a truck beneath it, which the dog drew.

Kabūtar-i bāzīkun-i dumsīāh va gheira, abābīl-i sīāh, laqlaq va kalāgh-i ablaq dar īn vilāyat zīād dīda shud. Asyā-yi bādī ham bisyār ast.

Khulāsa shabrā chand dasta mūzīkānchī, zīr-i ʿimārat īstāda, bisyār zadand, yaʿnī tabl-i shabrā mīzadand. Ahang-i sheipūrhā-yi mūzīkān va vazʿ-i unhā kheilī khūb būd. Tabl-i buzurg-i sarbāzīrā ham bi yak sag-i buzurgī basta būdand. Zīr i tabl ʿarrāda būd, ki sag mīkashīd.

کبوتر بازی‌کن دم سیاه و غیره ابابیل سیاه لقلق وکلاغ ابلق در اینولایت زیاد دیده شد

آسیای بادی هم بسیار است

خلاصه شبرا چند دسته موزیکانچی زیر عمارت ایستاده بسیار زدند یعنی طبل شبرا میزدند آهنگ شیپور های موزیکان و وضع آنهاخیلی خوب بود طبل بزرگ سربازی راهم بیک سگ بزرگی بسته بودند زیر طبل عرّاده بود که سگ میکشید

Arrival at Berlin.

We reached the outskirts of the town. Our train was taken sometimes over a bridge, sometimes up and sometimes down, and then again turned back, like a horse, whose bit is in a man's hand. This was to us a source of wonder. Many lines of railway are laid down in every direction. Carriages and engines without number were seen on the lines, and many trains passed us on the road to-day. At last we reached the station and alighted.

Vurūd-i Barlin.

Bi ābādī-i atrāf-i shahr rasīdīm. Kālaska-yi rāh-i āhanrā gāhī rū-yi pul, gāhī bālā, gāhī pāīn mīburdand, gāhī bar mīgardānd and misl-i aspī, ki dahana-yi un dast-i ādam bāshad. Kheilī jā-yi taʿajjub būd; va rāh-i āhan bisyār dar har taraf kashīda ast; vāgūn va lūkūmūtīv zīāda az hadd dar rāh dīda shud. Kālaska-yi bukhār-i zīādī imrūz bā mā talāqī kard. Khulāsa vārid-i *gār* shuda, pīāda shudīm.

ورود برلن

بآبادی اطراف شهر رسیدیم
کالسکهٔ راه آهن را گاهی روی
پل گاهی بالاگاهی پائین میبردند
و گاهی بر میگردانیدند مثل
اسپی که دهنهٔ آن دست
آدم باشد خیلی جای تعجب
بود و راه آهن بسیار در هر
طرف کشیده است واکنون و
لوکوموتیو زیاده از حدّ در راه
دیده شد کالسکهٔ بخار زیادی
امروز با ما تلاقی کرد خلاصه
وارد کار شده پیاده شدیم

His Most Exalted Majesty, the Emperor of Germany, William, the Nawwāb the Heir-Apparent, his son, *the Nawwāb Prince Charles*, his brother, *Frederīck Charles*, son of a brother of the Emperor and captor of *Metz*, together with other princes of the royal family, such as *Prince Hohenzollern*, a mere boy, and the very prince respecting whom the war between *Germany* and *France* occured, as the *French* were not willing that he should become king of *Spain*; also *Prince Bismarck*, — the

Aʿlāhazrat-i Imparātūr-i Almān Gīyūm[1]) va *Navvāb Valīʿahd*, pisar-i ıshān, va *Navvab Prins Shārl*, birādar-i ıshān, va *Fradarīk Shārl*, pisar-i barādar-i Imparātūr, ki fātih-i *Matz* ast, va Shāhzādahā-yi dīgar az khanvāda-yi saltanat, misl-i *Prins Hūhanzūlarn*, ki javānakī-st, va jang-i *Almān* u *Farānsa* dar sar-i hamīn shahzāda shud, ki *Farānsavīān* rāzī na būdand pādishāh-i *Ispānyūl* shavad, *Prins Bīzmārk*, vazīr-i mashūr-i maʿrūf-i dou-

اعلیحضرت امپراطور المان کیوم
و نوّاب ولیعهد پسر ایشان
و نوّاب پرنس شارل برادر
ایشان و فردریك شارل پسر
برادر امپراطور که فاتح متز
است و شاهزادهای دیگر از
خانوادهٔ سلطنت مثل پرنس
هوهن‌زولرن که جوانکی است و
جنك آلمان و فرانسه در سر
همین شاهزاده شد که فرانسویان
راضی نبودند پادشاه اسپانیول
شود پرنس بیزمارك وزیر مشهور
معروف دولت آلمان و مارشال

1) Guillaume. Most European names are adopted by the Persians in their French form.

famous Chancellor of Germany, *Marshal Roon*, the Minister of War and Premier of Prussia, and *General Moltke*, now Marshal and Generalissimo, very celebrated, and much spoken of, and other generals and officials, with a battalion of the Guards, a band, a cavalry regiment, and the like, a vast concourse of people moreover there was at the station who gave us a hearty reception. Taking the hand of His Most Exalted Majesty, we mounted an open carriage; and drove along a wide street, bordered on either side with ancient trees and

lat-i Almān, va *Mārshāl Rūn*, vazīr-i jang va sadr aʿzam-i Prūs, va *janarāl Mūrk*, ki hāla mārshāl va sipahsālār va bisyār maʿrūf u mashhūr ast, ba sāʿir-i janarālhā va sāhibmansabān va fouj-i khāssa, mūzīkānchī, savāra yi nizām va gheira va jamʿīat zīāda az hadd hama sar-i rāh-i āhan būdand, pazīrāī-i bisyār khūbī kardand. Dast-i aʿlāhazrat Imparātūrrā girifta, savar-i kālaska-yi rūbāzī shuda, az kūcha-yi vasīʿ, ki tarafein-i un hama az dirakhthā-yi kuhan va gulsafīd khūsha

رون وزیر جنك و صدر اعظم
پروس و جنرال مورك كه حالا
مارشال و سپهسالار و بسیار
معروف و مشهور است با سایر
جنرالها و صاحبمنصبان و فوج
خاصه موزیكاندچی سواره نظام
وغیره و جمعیت زیاده از حدّ
همه سر راه آهن بودند پذیرائی
بسیار خوبی كردند دست
اعلیحضرت امپراطوررا گرفته سوار
كالسكهٔ روبازی شده از كوچهٔ
وسیعی كه طرفین آن همه
از درختهای كهن و گلسفید
خوشه بسته و همه جا سنك

فرش و وسیع و اطراف همه خانه بود کذشتیم	basta, va hama jā sangfarsh va vasiᶜ va atrāf hama khāna būd, guzashtīm.	white cluster roses in flower, everywhere paved with stones, and spacious, with houses the whole way.
جمعیت زیادی بود هورا میکشیدند من هم بهمه تعارف میکردم	Jamᶜiat-i zīādī būd, hūrā mīkashīdand. Man ham bi hama taᶜāruf mīkardam.	The crowds were great. They all shouted hurrahs while I saluted them.
با امپراطور بزبان فرانسه حرف میزدم تاجائی رسیدیم دروازه مانند درختها تمام شد کوچهٔ و سیعی بود طرفین عمارت عالیِ چند مرتبه یك ستونی دیده شد که تازه بیادکار فتح فرانسه میسازند و هنوز ناتمام است	Bā Imparātūr bi zabān-i Farānsa harf mīzadam, tā bi jā-yī rasīdīm darvāzamānand. Dirakhthā tamām shud; kūcha-yi vasiᶜī būd, tarafein ᶜimārat-i ᶜālī-yi chand martaba. Yak sutūnī dīda shud, ki tāza bi yādgār-i fath-i Farānsa mīsāzand, va hanūz nātamām ast.	I conversed with the Emperor in French, until we reached a place like a gateway, where the trees ended. It was a wide street, with sumptuous palaces on either side, of several stories. We noticed a column recently erected in commemoration of the victory over France, and not yet completed.
یك صورت فردریك اوّل یعنی فردریك بزرك که بامفرغ	Yak sūrat-i *Fradarīk-i Aval*, yaᶜnī *Fradarīk-i Buzurg*, ki	A statue of *Frederick I.*, i. e. of *Frederick the Great*, cast

ریخته‌اند سر راه بود از

bā mufarrigh rīkhta and, sar-i rāh būd.

in metal, lay on our road.

اونیورسیته گذشتیم مدرسهٔ بسیار عالیست دو هزار نفر شاگرد در انجا تحصیل میکنند

Az Unīvarsīta guzashtīm. Madrasa-yi bisyār ʿālī-st, du hazār nafar shāgird dar unjā tahsīl mīkunad.

We passed the University, a great place of instruction where two thousand students study;

از ارسنال که طرف چپ بود و دست راست از عمارت مخصوص امپراطور که از زمان ولیعهدی تابحال همان جا می‌نشیند

Az *Arsanāl*, ki taraf-i chap būd, va dāst-i rāst az ʿimārat-i makhsūs-i Imparātūr, ki az zamān-i valīʿahdī tā bi hāl hamun jā mīnishīnad,

we passed the Arsenal, on our left hand; while on our right was the Emperor's own palace, in which he has resided from the days when he was Heir-Presumptive until now.

و بعد از خانهٔ ولیعهد گذشته رسیدیم بمیدانیکه دو حوض داشت و از هر یك فوّارهٔ بلندی میجست

va baʿd az khāna-i *Valīʿahd* guzashta rasīdīm bi meidānī, ki du houz dāsht, va az har yak favvāra-yi bulandī mījast.

Next we passed the palace of the Heir-Apparent, and so reached a square with two basins of water, from which sprang lofty jets d'eau.

دست راست قصر سلطنتی است که برای ما معیّن کرده بودند تا دم قصر جمعیت بود

Dast-i rāst *qasr-i saltanatī* ast, ki barāyi mā muʿeyyan karda būdand. Tā dam-i qasr jamʿīat būd.

On our right was a royal residence, that was assigned to us. The crowd extended right up to this building.

پیاده شدیم سربازان قدیمی بالباسهای خوب که قراول عمارت بودند توی اطاقها قراولان از سواره که جوانهای بسیار خوب خوشگل خوش لباس بودند دم درها با پیشخدمتان و غیره همه ایستاده بودند

Pīāda shudīm. Sarbāzān-i qadīmī bā libāshā-yi khūb, ki qarāvul-i ʿimārat būdand, tūyi utāqhā; qarāvulān, az savāra, ki javānhā-yi bisyār khūb-i khushgil-i khushlibās būdand, dam-i darhā, bā pīshkhidmetān va gheira hama istāda būdand.

We alighted. Veteran troops in beautiful uniforms, who are the guards of the palace, were in the rooms; patrols of cavalry, all handsome young men, with good figures, and fine uniforms, were at the gate, with officers of the household, etc., all stationed.

از پله ها بالا رفتیم وسط میدان جلو عمارت باغچهای بسیار قشنگ است که اقسام گلها از یاس شیروانی و غیره کاشته اند دو مجسّمهٔ اسپ هم که دهنهٔ هریك دست آدمی است از چودن ریخته اند امپراطور همه اطاقهارا بما نشان دادند پردها و اشکال

Az pallahā bālā raftīm. Vasat-i meidān-i jilou-i ʿimārat bāghchahā-yi bisyār qashang ast, ki aqsām-i gulhā az yās-i Shīrvānī va gheira kāshta and. Du mujassama-yi asp ham, ki dahana-yi har yak dast-i ādamī ast, az chūdan rīkhta and. Imparātūr hama utāqhārā bi mā nishān dā-

We went upstairs. The middle of the square in front of the palace was laid out in beautiful beds of flowers and shrubs, lilacs, and the like. There were also two cast-metal statues of horses, each held by the bridle by a man. The Emperor showed me all the apartments. There are

some beautiful paintings and portraits in this palace.

I presented the Grand Vazīr, the princes, and others; the Emperor also at the station had presented his princes and servants.

Next we went to a private apartment with him, and had some conversation, at which the Grand-Vazīr was present. When the Emperor left, I waited a short time, then entered my carriage, and drove to his residence. He came to the foot of the stairs to meet me; we went in; we sat down; a conversation ensued; and after a few minutes I returned.

dand. Pardahā va ashkāl-i khub dar ın ʿimārat būd.

Man sadr aʿzam va shāhzādahā va gheirarā muʿarrafī kardam, va Imparātūr ham sar-i rāh-i āhan shāhzādagān va noukarhā-yi khud-i-shānrā muʿarrafī karda būdand.

Baʿd bā ıshān bi utāq-i khalvat rafta, qadrī suhbat kardīm; sadr aʿzam būd. Imparātūr ki raftand, baʿd az daqīqa yi mā bāz savār-i kālaska shuda, raftīm khāna-yi ıshān. Tā pā-yi palla istiqbāl kardand. Raftīm, nishastīm, suhbat shud. Baʿd az chand daqīqa murājaʿat kardīm.

خوب در ین عمارت بود

من صدر اعظم و شاهزاده‌ها
و غیره‌را معرّفی کردم و امپراطور
هم سر راه آهن شاهزادگان و
نوکرهای خودشان‌را معرّفی کرده
بودند بعد با ایشان باطاق
خلوت رفته قدری صحبت
کردیم صدر اعظم بود امپراطور
که رفتند بعد از دقیقهٔ ما
باز سوار کالسکه شده رفتیم
خانهٔ ایشان تا پای پله
استقبال کردند رفتیم نشستیم
صحبت شد بعد از چند دقیقه
مراجعت کردیم امپراطور هفتاد

و شش سال دارند برادر ایشان هفتاد و سه سال اما هر دو

در کمال بنیه و قوّت هستند

پرنس بیزمارك پنجاه و هشت سال مارشال ملك هفتاد و پنج

سال نوّاب ولیعهد چهل و دو

سال دارند خلاصه شب را جائی نرفتیم

شهر برلن باچراغ کاز روشن است چراغ اینجا بیش از پطر است

مقابل عمارت ما آن طرف میدان

عمارت موزهٔ برلن است یک طرف هم کلیسا و طرف دیگر

عمارت جبّه خانه است

Imparātūr haftād u shish sāl dārand, *barādar-i īshān* haftād u sih sāl, ammā har du dar kamāl-i bunya va quvvat hastand. *Prins Bīzmārk* panjāh u hasht sāl, *Mārshāl Mulk* haftād u panj sāl, *Navvāb-i Valī ʿahd* chihil u du sāl dārand. Khulāsa shabrā jāī na raftīm.

Shahr-i *Barlin* bā chirāgh-i gāz roushan ast. Chirāgh-i īnjā bīsh az *Pitr* ast.

Muqābil-i ʿimārat-i mā, un-taraf-i meidān, ʿimārat-i *Mūza-yi Barlin* ast; yak taraf ham kalīsā, va taraf-i dīgar ʿimārat-i jubbakhāna

The *Emperor* is seventy-six years of age; his brother seventy-three. Both of them, however, are in perfect bodily health and strength. *Prince Bismarck* is fifty-eight, *Marshal Moltke* seventy five. The *Nawwāb the Heir-Apparent* is forty-two.

This evening I went nowhere.

The city of *Berlin* is lighted with gas; the lamps being more numerous here than in St Petersburg.

Opposite our palace, on the other side of the square, is the building of the Berlin Museum. On one side is a church, and opposite it the Armoury. In the centre

of the square is a raised platform, with steps all round, on which is a cast-metal equestrian statue of *Frederick the Great*.

The exterior of the buildings of Berlin are coloured ash-colour, which takes away somewhat from the appearance of the city; on the contrary, at St Petersburg, the edifices are of all colours.

The river that flows by Berlin is named the *Spree*: a branch of it runs through the middle of the town; but it is narrow, and its water is also very bad.

ast. Vasat-i meidān sakūl-st az atrāf palladār va mujassama-yi *Fradarīk Kabīr*-rā savāra az chūdan rīkhta and.

Bar rū-yi ʿimārāt-i Barlin rang-i khākistarī mālīda and. Qadrī shahrrā az jilva andākhta ast, bar khilāf-i Pitr ki ʿimārāt bi anvāʿ-yi ranghā mulavvan ast.

Rūdkhāna-yi ki az kanār-i shahr-i Barlin mīguzarad, va ismash *Aspara* ast, shāʿba az un ham az vasat-i shahr mīguzarad, ammā kam ʿarz, va āb-ash ham bisyār bad ast.

وسط میدان سکوتی است
از اطراف پله دار و مجسمهٔ
فردریک کبیر را سواره از
چدن ریخته اند بر روی
عمارات برلن رنگ خاکستری
مالیده‌اند قدری شهررا از
جلوه انداخته است بر خلاف
پطر که عمارات بانواع رنگها
ملون است رودخانهٔ که از
کنار شهر برلن میگذرد واسمش
اسپره است شعبه از آن هم
از وسط شهر میگذرد اما کم
عرض و آبش هم بسیار بد
است

امروز ۸۰ فرسنگ راه را در یازده ساعت طی کردیم

Imrūz hashtād farsang-i rāhra dar yāzdah sāᶜat tei kardīm.

To-day we travelled eighty leagues distance in eleven hours.

رفتن به پوتسدام

Raftan bi Putsdām.

Visit to Potsdam.

روز پنج شنبه پنجم شهر ربیع الثانی امروز رفتیم پوتسدام که خارج برلن است سوار کالسکه شده از همان دروازه و کوچه که روز قبل وارد شدیم خیابانهای زیاد درختهای قوی جنگلی خانهای خوب جلو خانها باغچهای گلکاری بسیار خوب قشنگ حوضهای

Rūz-i panjshamba panjum-i shahr-i Rabīᶜ assānī.

Imrūz raftīm Putsdām ki khārij-i Barlin ast, savār-i kālaska shuda, az hamun darvāza va kūcha ki rūz-i qabl vārid shudīm khīābānhā-yi zīād, dirakhthā-yi qavī-yi jangalī, khānahā-yi khūb, jilou-i khānahā bāghchahā-yi gulkārī-yi bisyār khūb-i qashang, houzhā-yi favvāradār gar-

Thursday the 5th of the month of Rabīᶜ assānī.

Today we went to the town of Potsdam, which is outside Berlin. Entering our carriage, we drove along the same track, and through the very gateway that we traversed yesterday, passed by many avenues, noble forest trees, beautiful houses with exquisitely pretty flower-gardens in front of them, and basins of water with fountains

فوارەدار کردش زیاد نمودیم و رفتیم بکار	dish-i zīād namūdīm .va raftīm bi gār.	and jets-d'eau, so arriving at the station.
بکالسکه بخار نشسته راندیم نیم ساعت راه طی شده رسیدیم باین شهر	Bi kālaska-yi bukhār nishasta rāndīm. Nīm sāᶜat-i rāh tei shuda, rasīdīm bi īn shahr.	We took our seats in the train, started, and after a journey of half an hour, arrived at this town.
شهر کوچکی است چهل و دو هزار نفر جمعیت دارد اغلب نظامی هستند حاکم شهر وغیره آمدند پیاده شدیم رودخانه عظیمی هم دارد که اسمش هاول است	Shahr-i kūchikī-st; chihil u du hazār nafar jamᶜiat dārad, aghlab nizāmī hastand. Hākim-i shahr va gheira āmadand. Pīāda shudīm. Rūdkhāna-i ᶜazīmī ham dārad, ki ism-ash *Hāval* ast.	It is a small place, with forty-two thousand inhabitants, for the most part regular troops. The Governor of the town came out to receive us. We alighted. There is also a large river here, named the *Havel*.
سوار کالسکه اسپی شده از خانهای شهری و غیره گذشته داخل خیابانها شدیم وضع خیابانها و باغها و غیره شبیه بباغات روسیّه	Savār-i kālaska-yi aspī shuda, az khānahā-yi shahrī va gheira guzashta, dākhil-i khīābānhā shudīm. Vazᶜ-i khīābānhā va bāghhā va gheira shabīh bi bāghāt-i	We entered a carriage (drawn by horses), and having passed houses and other buildings of the town, we entered an avenue. The parks, avenues, etc. in this place are similar to those in

Russia. Of the two palaces, one is called *Potsdam* and the other *Sans-Souci*; both built by *Frederick the Great*. The residence of the Heir-Apparent is in *Potsdam*. We drove in our carriage to that palace; he was not at home.

Rūsīa būd. ʿImārātī ki dārad, yakī *Putsdām* va dīgar *Sānsūsī*-st. Har du az bināhā-yi *Fradarīk Kabīr* ast. Manzil-i Valīʿahd dar *Putsdām* ast. Bā kālaska raftīm dam-i ʿimārat. Manzil na būdand.

بود عماراتیکه دارد یکی پتسدام و دیگر سانسوسی است هر دو از بناهای فردریک کبیر است منزل ولیعهد در پتسدام است با کالسکه رفتیم دم عمارت منزل نبودند

We then took a drive and passed through magnificent avenues in beautiful parks. The parks here are great forests, like those of *Māzandarān*.

Rāndīm barūyi gardish. Az khīābānhā-yi khūb va bāghchahā-yi marghūb guzashtīm. Bāghāt-i ınjā jangal-i buzurgī-st misl-i *Māzandarān*.

راندیم برای کردش از خیابانهای خوب و باغچهای مرغوب گذشتیم باغات اینجا جنگل بزرگیست مثل مازندران

To-day being Sunday, (Whitsunday), all the walking world was out, and the avenues were thronged. We came to a large fountain, the water of which shot

Imrūz chun rūz-i *yakshamba* ast, kull-i mardum dar gardish, va jamʿīat-i zīādī dar khīābānhā būdand. Rasīdīm

امروز چون روز یکشنبه است کل مردم در کردش و جمعیت زیادی در خیابانها بودند رسیدیم بفوّاره بزرگی که سی

ذرع آب آن میجست

bi favvāra-yi buzurgī, ki sī zarᶜ āb-i un mījast.

thirty ells (105 feet) into the air.

مجسّمهای مرمر بسیار خوبِ کارِ قدیم دورِ باغچها و حوضها زیاد بود خلاصه این فوّاره از عجایب دنیا است منبعش را با اسباب بخار تعبیه کرده اند که بزور بخار آب بالا میرود

Mujassamahā-yi marmar-i bisyār khūb-i kār-i qadīm dour-i bāghchahā va houzhā zīād būd. Khulāsa īn favvāra az ᶜajāīb-i dunyā-st. Mambaᶜash-rā bā asbāb-i bukhār taᶜbīa karda and, ki bi zūr-i bukhār āb bālā mīravad.

Statues of marble, very beautiful and antique, were to be seen around the gardens and the basins. In short, this fountain is one of the wonders of the world. Its head is due to steam power, by the force of which the water is raised.

ازدحام مردم قدری مانع از تماشا بود کل یاس شیروانی زیاد بود بلبل و هزار دستان در درختان میخواندند خوش عالمی داشت

Izdihām-i mardum qadrī māni' az tamāshā būd. — Gul-i yās-i Shīrvānī zīād būd. Bulbul va hazārdastān dar dirakhtān mīkhundand. Khush ᶜalamī dāsht.

Through the thronging of the people, we were somewhat impeded in going about. Lilacs abounded. Nightingales and other singing birds sang in the trees. It was delight ful.

بعد رفتیم به خیابان مقابل این فوّاره انتهای این حوض

Baᶜd raftīm bi khīābān-i muqābil-i īn favvāra. Intihā-yi īn houz-i dīgar būd. Fav-

We next went into an avenue opposite that fountain, at the end of which was another

basin, the jet-d'eau of which was very lofty, but not equal to that of the first.

We then got into our carriage, and went to the palace of *Sans-Souci* to visit the Queen-Dowager, wife of the former Sovereign of Prussia, who was a brother of the reigning Emperor. The first Lord-in-Waiting and the Chief Usher of the Queen (Dowager) and others received us. We went to the apartment of the Queen (Dowager); she rose and came to the entrance of the apartment. She is a woman seventy years of age, or even more of her life may have elapsed. We sat down on chairs, and con-

vāra-yi un ham buland mī-jast, ammā na bi īn irtifāᶜ.

Baᶜd savār-i kālaska shuda raftīm bi ᶜimārat-i *Sānsūsī*, dīdan-i Malika-yi qadīm, yaᶜnī zan-i pādishāh-i sābiq-i Prūs, ki barādar-i Imparātūr-i hāliyya būda ast. Pīshkhidmat-bāshī va Ishīkāghāsībāshī-yi Malika va gheira jilou āmadand. Raftīm bi utāq-i Malika; barkhāsta tā dam-i utāq āmad. zanī-st musinn; haftād sāl bishtar az ᶜumr-ash mīravad. Rū-yi sandalī nishastīm,

ذیکر بود فوّاره آنهم بلند میباجست اما نه باین ارتفاع

بعد سوار کالسکه شده رفتیم به عمارت سانسوسی دیدنِ ملکهٔ قدیم یعنی زنِ پادشاه سابق پروس که برادر امپراطورِ حالیّه بوده است پیشخدمت باشی و ایشیك آقاسی باشی ملکه و غیره جلو آمدند رفتیم به اطاق ملکه بر خاسته تا دم اطاق آمد زنی است مسنّ هفتاد سال بیشتر از عمرش میرود روی صندلی نشستیم

صحبت شد بعد بر خاسته کشتیم

suhbat shud. Baʿd barkhāsta gashtīm.

versation ensued. We then arose and walked about.

ایـن عمارتِ مخصوصِ فردریک کبیر است اطاقی که همانجا مرده است دیده شد صندلی که روی آن فوت شده میز تحریر ساعت مجلسی سایرِ اسبابِ فردریک همه آنجا دیده شد چیزی محض احترام روی صندلی انداخته بودند وعقربک ساعت بعد از فوت در روی هر دقیقه بوده همانطور مانده است که دیگر تا بحال کوک نکرده اند پردهای اشکال بسیار خوب داشت که از همان زمان مانده است

In ʿimārat-i makhsūs-i *Fradarīk-i Kabīr* ast. Utāqī ki hamunjā murda ast, dīda shud. Sandalī, ki rū-yi un fout shuda, mīz-i tahrīr, saʿat-i majlisī, sāir-i asbāb-i Fradarīk hama unjā dīda shud. Chīzī mahz-i ihtirām rū-yi sandalī andākhta būdand. va ʿaqrabak-i saʿat baʿd az fout dar rū-yi har daqīqa būda, hamun tour munda ast, ki dīgar tā bi hāl kūk nakarda and. Pardahā yi ashkāl bisyār khūb dāsht ki az hamun zamān munda ast.

This is the special palace of *Frederick the Great*. We saw the very room in which he died. The chair in which he expired, his writingtable, a time-piece, and other effects of Frederick, were all there. They had covered the chair with something as a mark of respect. And the hands of the time-piece have remained since his death in the very same position to a minute, never having been set since then. There were many beautiful paintings, left from that time.

کفتند وقتی که ناپلیون اوّل

Guftand vakhtī ki *Nāpulyūn*

They told me that when the

این شهر را فتح کرده ماهوت روی میز فردریک را پاره کرده است همان طور پاره‌را نگاهداشته اند	*Avval* In shahrrā fath karda, māhūt-i rū yi mīz-i Fradarīk-rā pāra karda ast; hamun tour pārarā nigāh dāshta and.	first Napoleon took possession of this town, he tore the cloth on the table of Frede-rick, and that it has ever since been preserved in that state.
اطاقهای خوب داشت از آثار قدیم زیاد بود بعد پائین آمدیم جلو عمارت مهتابی بلندی است در روی تپه باغچهای بسیار خوب و حوضهای کوچک دارد از بلندی مجسمهای خوب قرار داده اند که از دهن آنها آب بحوض میریزد چشم انداز این مهتابی و بلندی در عالم نظیر ندارد وآن فوّارهٔ	Utāqhā-yi khūb dāsht. Az āsār-i qadīm zīād būd. Ba^{c}d pāīn āmadīm. Jilou-i ^{c}imārat mahtābī-i bulandī-st. Dar rū-yi tapa bāghchahā-yi bis-yār khūb va houzhā-yi kū-chik dārad. Az bulandī mu-jassamahā-yi khūb qarār dāda and, ki az dahan-i unhā āb bi houz mīrīzad. Chashm-andāz-i īn mahtābī va bu-landī dar ^{c}ālam nazīr na-dārad, va un favvāra-yi bu-	There were beautiful rooms, and many relics of antiquity. We then descended. In front of the palace there is a lofty terrace. In front of the emi-nence there are very beauti-ful gardens, with small basins of water. From the top they have arranged statues, from the months of which water flows into basins. The view from this terrace and this eminence has not its equal in the world. That lofty jet-

d'eau is opposite to this eminence.

In short, the fountains, the parks, and the beautiful avenues were numberless. After walking about for a while, we entered our carriage and drove to a place where we saw a ruined mill, which has remained from the time of Frederick the Great, and has a history. We gathered that when Frederick wished to build this place, he was unable, do what he would, to induce the proprietor of the mill to sell his property, so that the park might not remain incomplete. He would not consent; and

zurg muhāzī-yi ın chashmandāz ast.

Khulāsa favvārahā va bāghhā va khīābānhā-yi khūb-i zīād būd. Qadrī gashtīm, ba'd savār-i kālaska shuda, rāndīm. Dar mahallī *āsyā*-yi kharāba dīda shud, az 'ahd-i Fradarīk-i Kabīr munda ast va tārīkhī dārad. Ma'lūm shud, vakhtī ki Fradarīk khāsta būd, un jārā bisāzad, har chi karda būd, āsyārā az sāhibash bikharad, ki bāgh nāqis na bāshad, rāzī na shuda būd. Bi nishāna-yi 'adālat ın ās-

بزرك محاذی این چشم انداز است

خلاصه فوارها و باغها و خیابانهای خوب زیاد بود قدری گشتیم بعد سوار کالسکه شده راندیم در محلی آسیا خرابه دیده شد از عهد فردریك کبیر مانده است وتاریخی دارد معلوم شد وقتی که فردریك خواسته بود آنجارا بسازد عرجه کرده بود آسیارا از صاحبش بخرد که باغ ناقص نباشد راضی نشده بود

the mill has been preserved in the same condition ever since as an example of justice.

We next went to the hot-houses and orangeries (conservatories), which are constructed with brickwork, glass, and other appliances, but we did not enter them, the whole of the flowers and shrubs having been brought out of doors. In front of the conservatory there is a garden, a basin of water, and a terrace, with statues of marble, which have beautiful parterres of flowers, steps lead down from here, and flower beds are very nicely arranged on successive

yārā hamuntour nigāh dāshta and.

Ba'd raftīm bi garmkhāna va nāranjistān. Az ājur va shīsha va gheira sākhta and, ammā mīān-ash na raftīm; hama gulhā va dirakhthārā az hālā bīrūn āvurda būdand. Jilou-i nāranjistān bāghcha va houz va mahtābī-st. Mujassamahā-yi marmar-i bisyār khūb va bāghchahā-yi kheilī qashang dārad. Az īnjā palla-yi zīādī-

بنشانهٔ عدالت این آسیارا همانطور نگاهداشته اند

بعد رفتیم بگرمخانه و نارنجستان از آجر وشیشه و غیره ساخته اند اما میانش نرفتیم همه گلها و درختهارا از حالابیرون آورده بودند جلو نارنجستان باغچه و حوض و مهتابی است مجسّمه های مرمر بسیار خوب و باغچهای خیلی قشنگ دارد از اینجا پلهٔ زیادی است

levels. Here we walked about a little; and then, entering our carriage, we drove to the palace and summer residence of the wife of *Prince Charles*, a sister of the Queen of Prussia, (i. e. the wife of the *Emperor*), and mother of *Frederick Charles*. It has a pretty courtyard, with statues and ancient stone figures and sculptures, from *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Nineveh*, *Mosul*, etc., such as a leg, a head a shoulder, an arm (or hand), figures of animals and man large or small, imperfect or whole, collected therein of every kind, and fixed to the wall in an artistic manner. It was

st, ki martaba bi martaba bāgh ast, bisyār khūb sākhta and. Qadrī gashta, baʿd savār-i kālaska shuda rāndīm barā-yi ʿimārat va yeilāq-i zan-i *Prins Shārl*, ki khāhar-i Malika-yi Prūs, yaʿnī zan-i *Imparatūr*, va mādar-i *Fradarīk Shārl* ast. Haiyāt-i bisyār qashangī dāsht. Az ashkāl-i sangī va hajjārī-yi qadīm-i *Misr* va *Shām* va *Nīnavā* va *Mousil* va gheira, va mujassamahā-yi mukhtalif, misl-i yak pā, yak sar, kitf, dast, shakl-i heivānāt va insān, buzurg u kūchik va nāqis u tamām-i hama nou'-ı jamʿ namūda bi dīvārhā bi tarz-i qashangī nasb karda and.

که مرتبه بمرتبه باغ است بسیار
خوب ساخته اند قدری
گشته بعد سوار کالسکه شده
راندیم برای عمارت و ییلاق
زن پرنس شارل که خواهر
ملکه پروس یعنی زن امپراطور
ومادر فردریك شارل است
حیاط بسیار قشنگی داشت
از اشکال سنگی و حجّاری
قدیم مصر و شام و نینوا و
موصل وغیره و مجسّمهای مختلف
مثل یکپا یکسر کتف دست
شکل حیوانات و انسان بزرك
و کوچك و ناقص و تمام همه
نوعی جمع نموده بدیوار ها
بطرز قشنگی نصب کرده اند

معلوم بود که پرنس شارل و زنش عالم و با سلیقه هستند خلاصه باغچهای خیلی خوب و فواره و چمن وغیره داشت	Maʿlūm būd, ki Prins Shārl va zan-ash ʿālim va bā salīqa hastand. khulāsa bāghchahā-yi kheilī khūb va fav-vāra va chaman va gheira dāsht.	evident that Prince Charles and his wife were persons of learning and taste. In short, most beautiful gardens, fountains, lawns, and the like, were there to be seen.
بالا رفته قدری در اطاق نشستیم زن پرنس شارل خیلی عذر خواهی و اظهار خجالت میکرد از اینکه دیر خبر شده است و میگفت تلگرافی کرده بودند که شما امروز نمیآئید کتابی آورد اسم خودرا در آنجا نوشتیم زن مسنّی است	Bālā rafta qadrī dar utāq ni-shastīm. *Zan-i Prins Shārl* kheilī ʿuzrkhāhī va izhār-i khajālat mīkard az īn, ki dīr khabar shuda ast, va mīguft: "talagrāfī karda būdand, ki shumā imrūz na mīāyīd". Kitābī āvurd, ism-i khudrā dar unjā navishtīm. Zan-i musinnī-st.	We went upstairs and sat down a while in a room. The wife of Prince Charles offered many excuses, and expressed great regret that notice (of our visit) had been given to her late, saying: "They telegraphed to inform me that you would not come to-day". She brought out a book, in which we inscribed our name. She is an aged woman.
بعد برخاسته سوار کالسکه	Baʿd barkhāsta savār-i kālaska	On leaving this place, we

drove to the residence of the wife of *Frederick Charles*. She was not at home. In front of the avenue leading to the gate of Frederick Charles, there were two statues of recumbent stags, on the top of the railings, most beautifully executed. We drove on, and passed some charming spots; among others a small pavilion most beautifully situated, which belongs to the Emperor. It has some pretty gardens, and a charming prospect over a large river.

shudīm. Dam-i manzil-i *Zan-i Fradarīk Shārl* ham raftīm, khāna na būd. Dam-i dar-i khīābān-i Fradarīk Shārl du mujassama-yi marāl-i nar-i khābīda bālā-yi maʿjar būd. Bisyār khūb sākhta būdand. Rāndīm. Az jāhā-yi khūb guzashta, rasīdīm bi yak qasr-i kūchik-i bisyār khushvazʿī, ki māl-i Imparātūr ast. Bāghchahā-yi qashang va chashmandāz-i khūbī bi rūd khāna-yi ʿazīmī dāsht.

شدیم دم منزل زن فردریک
شارل هم رفتیم خانه نبود دم
در خیابان فردریک شارل دو
مجسّمه مرالِ نرِ خوابیده بالای
معجر بود بسیار خوب ساخته
بودند راندیم از جاهای خوب
گذشته رسیدیم بیک قصرِ
کوچکِ بسیار خوش وضعی که
مال امپراطور است باغچه های
قشنگ و چشم انداز خوبی
برودخانه عظیمی داشت

Baʿd raftīm bi kālaska-yi bukhār, nishasta rāndīm barāyi shahr.

We then returned to the city by train. On the route we

بعد رفتیم بکالسکه بخار
نشسته راندیم برای شهر در

بین راه مردم بازی غریبی در آورده بودند چادر پوش قلندری درست کرده و دور چادر را کالسکه و اسب مقوّائی ساخته اطفال مردم سوار آن اسبها و کالسکه شده بودند چادر متّصل بسرعت چرخ میخورد کالسکه ها و اسبها و آدمهاهم دور میزدند خلاصه وارد منزل شدیم

Dar bein-i rāh mardum bāzī-yi gharībī dar āvurda būdand: Chādurpūsh-i qalandarī durust karda va dour-i chādur-rā kālaska va asp-i muqavvāī sākhta, atfāl-i mardum savār-i un asphā va kālaskahā shuda būdand va chādur muttasil bi surʿat charkh mīkhurd. Kālaskahā va asphā va ādamhā ham dour mīzadand. Khulāsa vārid-i manzil shudīm.

remarked a singular pastime which they had devised. The top part of a round tent had been pitched, and around the tent there were pasteboard carriages and horses, on which people's children rode, while the tent revolved with speed, causing the carriages, the horses, and their riders to go round also.
Finally we reached home.

باغ وحشِ برلن

Bāgh-i vahsh-i Barlin.

The Zoological Gardens of Berlin.

روز ششم شهر ربیع الثانی

Rūz-i shishum-i shahr-i Rabīʿ assānī.

The 6th of the month Rabiʿ assānī.

بعد از نهار سفرای خارجه آمدند حضور ایلچی فرانسه

Baʿd az nahār sufarā-yi khārija āmadand huzūr. *Ilchī-yi Fa-*

After our breakfast the foreign representatives came to an

audience. The *French representative* had not come, because, *M. Thiers* having resigned, he had no credentials. We then went to another chamber, and spoke to each of the representatives, separately, enquiring after their health. Subsequently *Prince Bismarck* came, and conversed at some length. Next *Marshal Roon*, the War Minister came; and then *Marshal Moltke*, with whom we conversed a little.

rānsa nayāmada būd; chun *Musyū Tyar* istiʿfā karda, ikhtyārnāma na dāshta ast. Baʿd raftīm bi utāq-i dīgar. Sufarārā yak yak ahvālpursi kardam. Baʿd *Prins Bīzmārk* āmad; kheilī bā ū suhbat shud. Baʿd *Mārshāl Rūn*, vazīr-i jang, baʿd *Mārshāl Mulk* āmada, qadrī suhbat shud.

نیامده بود چون مسیو طیار
استعفا کرده اختیار نامه نداشته
است بعد رفتیم باطاق دیکر
سفرا را یك بیك احوال پرسی
کردم بعد پرنس بیزمارك آمد
خیلی با او صحبت شد بعد
مارشال رون وزیر جنك بعد
مارشال ملك آمده قدری
صحبت شد

After this, changing our (state) costume (for a private one), we entered our carriage and drove to the Zoological Gardens. Today also (Whit-Mon-

Barkhāsta, taghyīr-i libās dāda, savār-i kālaska shuda, raftīm bi *bāgh-i vahsh*. Imrūz ham rūz-i ʿīd-i Farangīān būd. Jamīʾ-yi ahl-i shahr dar ha-

برخاسته تغییر لباس داده سوار
کالسکه شده رفتیم ببلغ
وحش امروز هم روز عید
فرنکیان بود جمیع اهل شهر
در حرکت بودند جمعیت

rakat būdand Jamᶜīat-i zīād, kālaska-yi bisyār dar rāh va tarafein-i rāh būd. Mūzīkān ham dar bāgh mīzadand. Daryāchahā-yi zīād va aqsām-i murghhā-yi ābī dar daryāchahā būd.

day) was a festival of the Franks, and the whole population of the city were astir. There was an enormous crowd, and a great many carriages on the road and on both sides of the road. Bands were playing in the gardens. There were many ponds, and various species of aquatic fowl in the ponds.

زیاد کالسکه بسیار در راه و طرفین راه بودند موزیکان هم در باغ میزدند دریاچهای زیاد و اقسام مرغهای آبی در دریاچها بود

Baᶜd yak yak qafashā-yi buzurg-i khūb dīda shud, ki har nouᶜ heivānīrā dar qafasi ᶜalāhidda guzāshta būdand. Anvāᶜ-i *murghhā-yi shikārī*, az *qarāqūsh* va *kūndur*, ki murgh-i shikārī-yi maᶜrūf-i buzurgī-st va az *Yangī Dunyā* mīāvarand, yak juft az un

Next we looked, one by one, at the beautiful large cages, in which the various kinds of beasts were kept apart. Different *birds of prey*, such as *eagles*, and a pair of *condors*, which are a well-known bird of prey brought from the *New World* (America).

بعد یکیك قفسهای بزرك خوب دیده شد که هر نوع حیوانی را در قفس علیحده گذاشته بودند انواع مرغهای شکاری از قراقوش و کوندر که مرغ شکاری معروف بزرگیست و از ینکی دنیا میآورند یکجفت از ان بود حیوان غریبی

است رنگ سیاه تیره دارد بسیار مرغ مهیبی است اما چنگالش مثل قراقوش تیز نیست از جنس لاش خور است	būd. Heivān-i gharībī-st. Rang-i sīāh tīra dārad. Bisyār murgh-i muhībī-st, ammā changāl-ash misl-i qarāqūsh tīz nīst. Az jins-i *lāshkhur* ast.	It is a singular creature, of a dusky black colour, and of great ferocity; but its talons are not as sharp as those of the eagle, since it belongs to the class of *carrioneaters*.
دیگر اقسام درناهای افریق و هند و ینکی دنیا و غیره بود خیلی درشت تر و خوشکل تر از درناهای متعارفی ایران انواع طیوریکه در عالم بهم میرسد همه در آنجا موجود بود بنوشتن نمیآید آنچه اشکالی در کتابها دیده بودم در اینجا زنده دیدم	Dīgar aqsām-i *durnāhā-yi Afrīq* va *Hind* va *Yangī Dunyā* va gheira būd, kheilī durushttar va khushgiltar az durnāhā-yi mutaʿārifī-yi Irān. Anvāʿ-i *tuyūrī*, ki dar ʿālam bi ham mīrasad, hama dar unjā moujūd būd. Bi navishtan na mīāyad. Unchi ashkālī dar kitābhā dīda būdam, dar īnjā zinda dīdam.	There were various kinds of *cranes* from *Africa*, *India*, the *New-World*, and other parts; bigger and more beautiful than the common cranes of Persia. All the different species of birds produced in the whole world are there collected together, so that it is impossible to mention them all. What we had formerly seen portrayed in books, we here saw living.
بعد داخل دالان قفسهای	Baʿd dākhil-i dālān-i qafashā-	We then entered the corridor

of the *carnivorous quadrupeds*, — the beasts of prey. Here were wild beasts that cannot be imagined, *maned-lions* of Africa, — which I had not hitherto seen, save in books, — huge in bulk, terrible in appearance, with very thick black manes hanging down, their heads as large as those of elephants, or larger; with glaring eyes fearful to look on; with graceful bodies resembling velvet. The keeper held up a piece of flesh; the lion rose on his hind feet and seized the flesh. His stature was from three to four ells ($10^1/_2$ feet to 14 feet). The flesh was placed on

yi *heivānāt-i daranda* shudīm. Anvaᶜ-i *sabāᶜ*, ki bi tasavvur na mīāyad, būd: *shīr-i yāldār-i* Afrīq, ki juz dar kitāb na dīda būdam, bisyār ᶜazīm al jussa va muhīb, yāli-i sīāh-i bisyār zakhīm-i rīkhta, sar-ash bi qadr-i sar-i fīl, balki buzurgtar, chasmhā-yi darīda, kheilī muhīb, badan-i khushgil misl-i makhmal. Shīrbān gūsht buland kard. Buland mīshud, gūsht bigīrad, sih chahār zarᶜ qaddash būd. Gūshthārā rū-yi

حیوانات درندہ شدیم انواع

سباع کہ بتصور نمیآید بود
شیر یال دار افریق کہ جز
در کتاب ندیدہ بودم بسیار

عظیم الجثّہ و مہیب یال
سیاہ بسیار ضخیم ریختہ
سرش بقدر سرِ فیل بلکہ بزرکتر

چشمہای دریدہ خیلی مہیب
بدن خوشکل مثل مخمل
شیربان کوشت بلند کرد
بلند میشد کوشت بکیرد
سہ چہار ذرع قدش بود

a truck, and so conveyed from den to den and given to the beasts.

The compartment which looks out on this corridor, and is subdivided to hold the different beasts, has a door of stout timber that can be raised by a chain. The other side of the door is where the animals walk about. When the door is raised, the beast goes to that other side; the door is then quickly lowered, and the den is swept ont. The compartment is very carefully floored with wood. No one is allowed to go near these creatures; and the flesh is given to them through the

ʿarrāda guzāshta mīkashīdand va mīdādand.

Mahallī, ki bi dālān manzar dārad, khāna khāna jāī heivānāt ast, darī dārad az takhta-yi zakhīm, ki bā zanjīr buland mīkunand. Untaraf-i dar mahall-i gardish-i heivānāt ast. Darrā ki buland mīkunand, heivān bi un samt mīravad; fouran īn darrā andākhta, utāqrā tamīz mīkunand. Zamīn-i utāqrā bā takhta farsh karda and bisyār tamīz. Ahadī na mītavānad nazdīk-i īn heivānāt biravad. Gūshtrā hanı az sūrākhi panjarahā mīdihand.

کوشتهارا روی عراده گذاشته میکشیدند و میدادند

محلی که بدالان منظر دارد خانه خانه جای حیوانات است دری دارد از تخته ضخیم که با زنجیر بلند میکنند آن طرف در محل گردش حیوانانست در را که بلند میکنند حیوان بآن سمت میرود فورًا این در را انداخته اطاق را تمیز میکنند زمین اطاق را باتخته فرش کرده اند بسیار تمیز احدی نمیتواند نزدیک این حیوانات برود کوشت را هم از سوراخ پنجرها میدهند خلاصه مایل بودم

مدتی تماشای این شیر را بکنم ولی از هجوم مردم تماشاچی ممکن نبود

Khulāsa māil būdam, muddat-ī tamāshā-yi īn shīrrā bikunam, valī az hujūm-i mardum-i tamāshāchī mumkin na būd.

bars of their cages. I was extremely tempted to stay and observe this lion a long while; but through the thronging of the crowds of spectators, this was impossible.

بعد چند ببر بسیار بزرك دیدم از ببرهای هند و افریق دو پلنك سیاه هم دیده شد از افریق که خیلی غریب و مهیب بودند شیرماده هم بود که چند بچه شیر تهاجا زائیده و بچه هایش بزرك شده بودند

Ba'd chand *babr*-i bisyār buzurg dīdam, az babrhā-yi *Hind* va *Afrīq*, du *palang-i sīāh* ham dīda shud az Afrīq, ki kheilī gharīb u muhīb būdand. Shīr-i māda ham būd, ki chand bacha-shīr hamunjā zāīda, va bachahā-yash buzurg shuda būdand.

I saw several enormous *tigers*, *African* and *Indian*; two *black leopards*, from Africa, very singular and terrific. There was a lioness whose cubs had been born aud bred on the premises.

پلنك زیاد یوز های مختلف کفتارهای عجیب الخلقه افریق که صداهای غریب میکردند

Palang-i zīād, *yūzhā*-yi mukhtalif, *kaftārhā*-yi 'ajīb al khilqa-yi Afrīq, ki sadāhā-yi gharīb mīkardand.

There were many *leopards*, various *chetahs*, strange-looking *hyaenas* from Africa that made curious noises

خلاصه قفسهای متعدد دیدیم
که در هریك انواع حیوانات بود
میمونهای مختلف و غیره دو
فیل بود یکی بسیار بزرگ که
از هند آورده بودند دیگری
از افریقا فیل افریق بسیار
تفاوت با فیل هند داشت
گوشهایش خیلی بزرگتر و پهن
تر بود

سه ظرافه بود زبر هم بود که
گور اسپ است بدنش خط
خط و بسیار مقبول است
بیزون بود که گاومیش
وحشی افریق و ینکی دنیاست
متعدد بودند بزرك و کوچك
گاومیش تبت بود از اطرافش
آنقدر پشم آویخته بود که

Khulāsa qafashā-yi mutaᶜaddid dīdīm, ki dar har yak anvāᶜ-i heivānāt būd. Meimūnhā-yimukhtalif vagheira. Du *fīl* būd, yakī bisyār buzurg, ki az *Hind* āvurda būdand, dīgarī az *Afrīqā*. *Fīl-i Afrīq* bisyār tafāvut bā *fīl-i Hind* dāsht, gūshhāyash kheilī buzurgtar va pahntar būd.

Sih *zarrāfa* būd. *Zabr* ham būd, ki *gūr-i-asp* ast. Badanash khatt khatt va bisyār maqbūl ast. *Bīzūn* būd, ki *gāv-i mīsh-i vahshī-yi Afrīq* va *Yangī Dunyā-st*; mutaᶜaddid būdand buzurg u kūchik. *Gāv-i mīsh-i Tibbat* būd; az atrāf-ash unqadr

In short, I saw numerous cages, in each of which were various animals many kinds of monkeys, and the like. There were two *elephants*; one very large, that had been brought from *India*; the other from *Africa*. The *African elephant* differs much from that of *India*, its ears being much broader and larger.

There were three *giraffes*, and a *zebra*, i. e., a *wild horse*, the body of which is in stripes, and very beautiful. Also many *bisons*, the *wild buffaloes* of *Africa* and the *New-World*; there were many, large and small; *buffaloes* (yaks?) of *Tibet*, from the sides of which so

much wool hung as to trail on the ground; they looked very ferocious.

Llamas, an animal between the *camel*, *ox*, *argali*, *ibex*, and other species, and which runs very fast, were kept in spacious gardens enclosed with railings. There were *argalis*, *ibexes*, and *antelopes*, from *India* and *Africa*; for instance, there was one argali as big as a horse, with long, straight, sharp horns, having no resemblance to the argali of Persia. Also various kinds of *swine* and *wild boars*; curious animals, too, of other species, and in such varieties, were collected in that place

pashm āvikhta būd, ki bi zamīn mīkashīd; bisyar muhīb būd.

Lāmā, ki heivānī-st māibein-i *shutur*, va *gāv*, va *arqālī*, va *buz-i kūhī*, va gheira va bisyār tund mīdavīd, tūyi bāghchahā-yi vasīᶜ būd, dour ash maᶜjar. Anvāᶜ-i *arqālī* va *buz-i kūhī* va *āhū* būd az *Hind* va *Afrīq*, masalan arqālī dīda shud bi qadr-i asp, bā shākhhā-yi buland-i zakhīm-i tīz, ki hīch shabāhatī bi arqālīhā-yi Irān na dāsht. Anvāᶜ-i *khūg* u *gurāz*, heivānāt-i ᶜajīb-i dīgar ham unqadr dar un jā būd, ki bi hisāb na mīāyad. Har nouᶜ-i

که بزمین میکشید بسیار مهیب بود

لاما که حیوانی است مابین شتر و گاو و ارقالی و بز کوهی و غیره و بسیار تند میدوید توی باغچهای وسیع بود دورش معجر انواع ارقالی و بزِ کوهی و آهو بود از هند و افریق مثلاً ارقالی دیده شد بقدر اسپ باشاخهای بلند ضخیم تیز که هیچ شباهتی به ارقالیهای ایران نداشت انواع خوک و کراز حیوانات عجیب دیگر هم آنقدر در آنجا بود که بحساب نمی آید هر نوع

حیوانی که در هر اقلیمی بوده در آنجا جمع نموده اند در کمال نظافت و پاکیزگی خوراك هریك را میدهند	heivānī, ki dar har iqlīmī būda, dar un jā jam^{c} namūda and, dar kamāl-i nazāfat u pākīzagī khurāk-i har yakrā mīdihand.	as cannot be computed. All sorts of animals, wherever they may naturally exist, have been there brought together, and are there fed with all care and cleanliness.
انواع طوطیها و طاوسها و قراقاولهای طلائی استرالیا که بسیار قشنك بود انواع مرغهای خوش رنك در قفسی بسیار بزرك مشغول پرواز و بازی بودند	Anvā^{c}-i *tūtīhā* va *tāūs-hā* va *qarāqāūlhā-yi tilāī-yi Ustrālīā*, ki bisyār qashang būd, anvā^{c}-i *murghhā-yi* khushrang dar qafas-ī bisyār buzurg mashghūl-i parvāz u bāzī būdand.	Various *parrots*, *peacocks*, *golden pheasants* of *Australia*, that are very pretty, were there; also many kinds of *birds* with magnificent plumage were flying about and disporting in large cages.
خلاصه اسم رئیس این باغ وحش که مرد فاضل عالی است حکیم بودینوس است	Khulāsa ism-i raīs-i īn *bāgh-i vahsh*, ki mard-i fāzil-i ^{c}ālimi-st, *Hakīm Būdīnus* ast.	The name of the director of these *Zoological Gardens* is *Doctor Bodinus*, a learned and distinguished man.

دیدنِ کارخانهٔ کروپ	*Dīdan-i kārkhāna-yi Krūp.*	*A visit to Krupp's works.*
یکساعت بغروب مانده رسیدیم بکار خانه کروپ مسیو کروب خودش سر راه آهن آمده بود شخص پیر بلندقدّ لاغری است تمام این کارخانه ها را خودش ساخته است توپ کل دول را از اینجا میدهد انواع توپها از توپ بزرك قلعه و توپ کشتی و توپ جنك صحرائی همه اینجا ساخته میشود	Yak sāᶜat bi ghurūb mundarasīdīm bi *kārkhāna-yi Krūp*. *Musyū Krūp* khud-ash sari rāh-i āhan āmada būd. Shakhs-i pīr-i bulandqadd-i lāghirī-st. Tamām-i īn kārkhānahā-rā khudash sākhta ast. *Tūp-i* kull-i duvalrā az īnjā mīdihad. ᶜAnvāᶜ-i tūphā az *tūp-i buzurg-i qalᶜa* va *tūp-i kashtī* va *tūp-i jang-i sahrāī* hama īnjā sākhta mīshavad.	At an hour to sunset we arrived at the *works of M. Krupp*, who came himself to the railway (to meet us). He is a tall, thin old man. He has himself, in a certain space of time, created the whole of these works and from this place he supplies cannon for all governments. Guns of every description, such as large *cannon for forts*, *cannon for ships*, and *cannon for field use in campaigns*, are all manufactured here.
دستگاه و کارخانهای بخار مثل یک شهر عظیمی است	*Dastgāh* va *kārkhānahā-yi bukhār* misl-i yak shahr-i	His *plant* and steam works resemble a mighty city. He

پانزده هزار عمله دارد که باجهت همه خانه و نشیمن ساخته و مزد و خرج میدهد بعد از وضع مخارج سالی ششصد هزار تومان نقد مداخل خود اوست

azīmī-st. Punzdah hazār ʿamala dārad, ki bi jihat-i hama khāna va nishīman sākhta va muzd u kharj mīdihad. Baʿd az vazʿ-i *makhārij-i salī* shish-sad hazār tūmān naghd *madākhil-i* khud-i ūst.

employs 15,000 workmen, for the whole of whom he has erected houses and lodgings, paying them salaries and wages. After deducting his *expenditure*, his own yearly income amounts to 600,000 tūmāns.

خلاصه به کارخانهٔ چکش بخار رفتیم چکشهای غریبی است مثل کوه با زور بخار بانکارهٔ توپ میخورد بهر ترکیب که بخواهند آنرا درست میکنند وقتیکه چکش به توپ میخورد زمین کارخانه صدا میکرد و میلرزید چیز غریبی است

Khulāsa bi *kārkhāna-yi chakush-i bukhār* raftīm. Chakushhā-yi gharībī-st, misl-i kūh. Bā *zūr-i bukhār* bi angāra-yi tūp mīkhurad. Bi har tarkīb, ki bikhāhand, unrā durust mīkunand. Vakhtī ki chakush bi tūp mīkhurd, zamīn-i kārkhāna sadā mīkard va mīlarzīd. Chīzī gharībī-st.

We went to the *shop of the steam hammers*. They are wonderful hammers, like mountains; and worked by *steam*, are used for forging cannons. They make these of any pattern they desire. When the hammer strikes the gun, the floor of the workshop groans and trembles. It was a marvellous thing.

همهٔ کارخانه را کشته بعضی توپهای بزرگ و کوچکرا انداختند بعد رفتیم بخانه که معین کرده بودند آنجا شام خوردیم شام خوبی دادند درختی در نارنجستان خانه دیده شد که برگ آن دو ذرع و نیم طول و نیم ذرع عرض داشت	Hama-yi kārkhānarā gashta, ba'zī tūphā-yi buzurg va kūchikrā andākhtand, ba'd raftīm bi khāna, ki mu'eyyan karda būdand. Unjā shām khurdīm. Shām-i khūbī dādand. Dirakhtī dar nāranjistān-i khāna dīda shud, ki barg-i un du zar' u nīm tūl va nīm zar' 'arz dāsht.	We went all over the works, and they turned out some large and some small cannon. We then went to a house which he had prepared, and there we dined. He gave us an excellent dinner. In the conservatory of this house we saw a tree, the leaves of which were two ells (seven feet) long, and half an ell (twenty-one inches) wide.
چکش بخار باوجود فاصله زیاد باین اطاق زمین آنجارا مثل هنگام زلزله بحرکت میاورد	Chakush-i bukhār bā vujūd-i fāsila-yi zīād bi īn utāq, zamīn-i ānjārā misl-i hangām-i zalzala bi harakat mīāvurd.	The steam-hammers, in spite of their great distance from this room, made the earth shake here as though there had been an earthquake.
یک توپ تهپر شش پوند بسیار اعلی مسیو کروپ با	Yak *tūp-i tahpur-i shish pound-i* bisyār a'lā *Musyū Krūp* bā	*M. Krupp* made us a present of a most magnificent *breech-*

تمام اسباب بما پیشکش کرد	tamām-i asbāb bi mā pīshkash kard.	*loading six-pounder cannon*, with all its appliances.
بیان رودخانهٔ رن	*Beyān-i rūdkhāna-yi Ran.*	*Description of the Rhine.*
بشهر کوبلنس رسیدیم کالسکه ایستاده حاکم آنجا و غیره بحضور آمدند از قلعه آنجا توپ انداختند شهر بزرگیست	Bi shahr-i *Kūblans* rasīdīm. Kālaska īstāda hākim-i unjā va gheira bi huzūr āmadand. az qalʿa-yi unjā tūp andākhtand. Shahr-i buzurgī-st.	We next reached *Coblentz*. The train stopped; the Governor of the place, with others, came to an audience. The guns of the fortress fired a salute. It is a large place.
از پل رودخانهٔ رن گذشتیم اینجا رود رن کم عرض میشود و طرفین آن کوه است کنار رودخانه همه ده و قصبه و زراعت انگور و درخت کیلاس وغیره بود کیلاسها هم رسیده و پربار بود هرتاك را بیك چوب قطور بسته اند تمام	Az pul-i rūdkhāna-yi *Ran* guzashtīm. Injā rūd-i *Ran* kam ʿarz mīshavad, va tarafein-i un kūh ast. Kanār-i rūdkhāna hama dih va qasāba va zarāʿat-i angūr va dirakht-i gīlās va gheira būd. Gīlāshā ham rasīda va purbār būd. Har tākrā bi yak chūb qutūr	We crossed the *Rhine* river by a bridge, the river being narrow, with hills on either side. The bank of the river is all villages, towns, vineyards cherry-trees, and the like. The cherries were ripe and the trees laden with fruit. Each vine was bound to a

basta and. Tamām-i kūh va zamīn tākistān ast. *Sharāb-i* mashhūr-i *Ran* az hamīn angūrhā ʿamal mīayad.

stout stake. The whole hill-side and the plain is one continuous vineyard, the famous *Rhein-wein* being produced from these very vines.

کوه و زمین تاکستان است شراب مشهور رن از همین انگورها عمل میآید

Tarafein-i rūdkhāna rāh-i āhan va muttasil kālaska-yi bukhār dar harakat ast. Rāh-i kālaska-yi ʿarrāda va piādarou ham ast, kheilī pākīza va tamīz. Tamām-i zamīn gulistān ast, va hama kūhhā va sahrāhā angūr va dirakht-i mīva va bāghchahā-yi gulkārī va khīābān, va bi andāk masāfat shahr va qasaba ast. Adam heirat mīkunad va az tamāshā sīr na mīshavad.

On either side of the river there is a railway, and trains run continually. There are also roads for carriages, waggons, and pedestrians, well made and kept. The whole region is a garden. All the mountains and plains are grape-vines, fruit-trees, flower-gardens, and avenues; with towns and cities at frequent intervals. One wonders, and is never tired with admiring.

طرفین رودخانه راه آهن و متصل کالسکه بخار در حرکت است راه کالسکه عراده و پیاده‌رو هم است خیلی پاکیزه و تمیز تمام زمین گلستان است و همه کوهها و صحراها انگور و درخت میوه و باغچهای گلکاری و خیابان و باندك مسافت شهر و قصبه است آدم حیرت میکند و از تماشا سیر نمیشود

Taktak qasrhā-yi khūb va

Every now and then a beauti-

ful solitary pavilion, with large and small summer-houses, in the best taste and of the most graceful forms, are seen erected on the hills overlooking the stream, like a paradise. We also noticed some ruins of old castles on the mountains and on the river bank. The passing of the trains, the buildings, the verdure and flowers, both natural or artificial, put one beside one's self. For several leagues our road was (through a country) similar to that seen on first arriving in the land of Gīlān and by the river Safīd-rūd.

kūshkhā-yi buzurg u kūchik az rū-yi salīqa bā kamāl-i qashangī dar kanār-i rūdkhāna va bālā-yi kūhhā, ki mushrif bi rūdkhāna ast, sākhta and, misl-i bihisht. Baʿzī āsār-i qalʿa, kharābahā-yi qadīm dar kūhhā va kanār-i rūdkhāna dīda shud. Taraddud-i kālaskahā-yi bukhār va ʿimārāt va sabzahā va gulhā-yi tabīʿī va masnūʿī ādamrā vālih mīkard; tā chand farsang rāh shabīh būd bi avval-i vurūd-i khāk-i Gīlān va rūdkhāna-yi Safīd-rūd.

کوشکهای بزرگ و کوچک از روی سلیقه با کمال قشنگی در کنار رودخانه و بالای کوهها که مشرف برودخانه است ساخته اند مثل بهشت

بعضی آثار قلعه خرابهای قدیم در کوهها و کنار رودخانه دیده شد تردد کالسکه های بخار و عمارات و سبزها و

گلهای طبیعی و مصنوعی آدم را واله میکرد تا چند فرسنگ راه شبیه بود بساول ورود خاک

گیلان و رودخانهٔ سفید رود

بعضی اوقات راه کالسکهٔ ما از روی پشت بامِ خانها و کوچهای دهات میگذشت خلاصه بتعریف نمی آید	Baᶜzī ouqāt rāh-i kālaska-yi mā az rū-yi pusht-i bām-i khānahā va kūchahā-yi dihāt mīguzasht. khulāsa bi taᶜrīf na mīāyad.	Sometimes our trains passed over the tops of the roofs of houses in streets of villages. In short, it was indescribable.
سرحد آلمان و بلجیك	*Sarhadd-i Almān u Baljīk.*	*The frontier of Germany and Belgium.*
قدری که رفتیم برود خانه کوچکی رسیدیم پل کوچکی هم داشت سر حدّ بلجیك و آلمان کویا همین رود خانه است اما خداوند عالم قادر طوایف و ممالك را چکونه از هم سوا کرده که عقل حیران است در آنِ واحد یکباره آدم زبان مذهب وضع خاك آب کوه زمین تغییر کرد که هیچ	Qadrī ki raftīm bi rūdkhāna-yi kūchikī rasīdīm. Pul-i kūchikī ham dāsht. *Sarhadd-i Baljīk* va *Almān* gūyā hamīn rūdkhāna ast. Ammā khudāvand-i ᶜAlam-i Qādir tavāīf u mamālikrā chigūna az ham sivā karda, ki ᶜaql heirān ast! Dar ān-i vāhid yakbāra ādam, zabān, mazhab, vazᶜ, khāk, āb, kūh, zamīn taghyīr kard, ki hīch shabāhatī bi	We went on, and shortly reached a small stream with a little bridge over it, which appears to form the *frontier* between *Germany* and *Belgium*. But what a difference has the All-Wise and Almighty Creator placed between the two nations and the two countries! Man's mind is lost in amazement thereat. In one moment a total change came

over the people, the language, the religion, the appearance of the land and water, mountains, and plains; — all were different, nothing here resembling what is in Germany. The hills are somewhat higher and more wooded, the air is colder, all speak French, the people are somewhat poorer, the style and costume of soldier and civilian utterly different. The whole population of Belgium speak French, though they have a special dialect of their own; they are chiefly of the Catholic religion.

Almān na dāsht. kūhhā qadrī bulandtar va pur jangal, havā sardtar, zabān hama farānsa, mardumān-ash faqīrtar, vaz^{c} u libās-i qushūn va makhlūq bil-marra taghyīr kard; va jamī^{c}-i ahl-i Baljīk zabān-i farānsa harf mīzanand. Zabānī ham khud-i-shān ^{c}alāhidda dārand. Mazhab-i-shān aghlab kātūlīk ast.

شبـاهتی بـه آلمان نداشت کـوهها قـدری بلند تر و پر جنکل هـوا سـردتر زبان همه فرانسه مردمانـش فقیرتـر وضع و لباس قشون و مخلوق بالمره تغییر کرد و جمیع اهل بلجیك زبـان فـرانسه حـرف میزنند زبـانـی هم خـودشان علیحده دارند مذهبشان اغلب کاتولیك است

در وضع آلمان	*Dar vaz^{c}-i Almān.*	*Remarks about Germany.*
در آلمان زنها خیلی مشغول کار و زحمت هستند بخصوص در امر زراعت و باغبانی خیلی بیشتر از مردمانشان کار میکنند	Dar Almān zanhā kheilī mashghūl-i kār u zahmat hastand; bi khusūs dar amr-i zarā^{c}at va bāghbāni kheilī bīshtar az mardumān-i shān kār mīkunand.	In Germany the women are very hard-working; especially at agriculture and in gardening they do much more than their husbands.
گوش اسپهای کالسکه و غیره را در آلمان با ماهوت قرمز وغیره میپوشانند که از مگس محفوظ باشد	Gūsh-i asphā-yi kālaska va gheirarā dar Almān bā māhūt-i qirmiz va gheira mīpūshānand, ki az magas mahfūz bāshad.	The ears of the carriage-horses, and others, are covered over with red and other coloured cloths, as a protection against the flies.
در برلن و سایر شهرها اطفال کوچك کوله‌بار سربازی بدوش بسته توی کوچها میدوند و شیپور میزنند که از طفولیت	Dar *Barlin* va sāir-i shahrhā atfāl-i kūchik kūlabār-i sarbāzī bi dūsh basta tūyi kūchahā mīdavand va sheipūr mīzanand, ki az tufūliyat	In *Berlin*, and in other towns, the little boys fasten soldiers' knapsacks on to their backs, run about the streets, and play on fifes. So that they thus, from infancy

آنهارا عادت باشکری میدهند	unhārā ʿādat bi lashgarī mīdihand.	upwards, learn to be soldiers.
سنك فرش کوچهارا بسیار خوب میکنند سنکهارا مربع کوچك بریده کار میگذارند خیلی خوب بهم وصل میکنند	*Sangfarsh-i kūchahārā* bisyār khūb mīkunand. Sanghārā murabbaʿ, kūchik burīda, kār mīguzārand, kheilī khūb bi ham vasl mīkunand.	They *pave their streets* with stone most artistically. They use stones cut into small squares, and join them together very closely.
آجرهای فرنکستان مثل آجرهای ایران مربّع و بزرك نیست بلکه ترکیب آجر تراش طهران است	*Ajurhā-yi Firangistān* misl-i ajurhā-yi Irān murabbaʿ va buzurg nīst; balki tarkīb-i ajur-i tarāsh-i *Tahrān* ast.	*The bricks of Firangistān* are not like those of Persia, large and square, but are of the shape of the cut bricks of *Tehrān*.
در وضع بلجیك	*Dar vazʿ-i Baljīk.*	*Remarks about Belgium.*
مملکت بلجیك بسیار آزاد و رتق و فتق امورات با مجلس پارلمنت است که وکلا آنجا	Mamlikat-i Baljīk bisyār āzād, va ratq u fatq-i umūrāt bā *majlis-i Pārlamant* ast, ki vukalā unjā jamʿ shuda hukm	The kingdom of Belgium is very free, the ordering of all matters being in the hands of the Parliament, where the

جمع شده حکم میکنند مجلس پارلمنت عمارتی عالی و در شهر است حال هم باز بود وکلا جمع بودند	mīkunand. Majlis-i Pārlamant ʿimārat-i ʿālī va dar shahr ast. Hāl ham bāz būd. Vukalā jamʿ būdand.	Deputies meet together and make laws. The Parliament House is a sumptuous edifice, and is in the city. It was in active session (when we arrived), the members being assembled.
روزنامه نویسانِ این ولایت بسیار آزاد هستند هرچه بنویسند از هیچکس باک ندارند	*Ruznāmanavīsān*-i īn vilāyat bisyār āzād hastand. Har chi binavīsand, az hīch kas bāk na dārand.	The editors of the news-papers in this country are extremely free. Whatever they may write, they are in fear of no one.
جمعیّت بروکسل قریب یکصد و هفتاد و دو هزار نفر است جمعیّت کل ده کرور کسری است مالیات قریب سی و هفت	Jamʿīat-i Brūksal qarīb-i yaksad u haftād u du hazār nafar ast. Jamʿīat-i kull dah kurūr kasrī-st; mālīāt qarīb-i sī u haft kurūr; qushūn dar	The population of Brussels is of about a hundred and seventy two thousand souls; that of all Belgium, ten crores and a fraction (five millions). Its income is about thirty-seven crores, its army

کرور قشون در وقت جنك صد هزار نفر	vakht-i jang sad hazār nafar.	in time of war, one hundred thousand.
سابقًا تمام این مملکت تابع هولاند بوده است چهل و دو سال قبل از این دولتین انکلیس و فرانسه و غیره جمع شده از آن دولت موضوع کرده به لیوپولد اوّل که داعی پادشاه انکلیس بوده داده اورا پادشاه کردند	Sābiqan tamām-i īn mamlikat tābi'-i Hulānd būda ast. Chihil u du sāl qabl az īn, doulatein-i Inglīs va Farānsa va gheira jam^{c} shuda, az un doulat mouzū^{c} karda, bi *Līūpūld*-i *Avval*, ki dā^{c}ī-yi pādishāh-i Inglīs būda, dāda, ūrā pādishāh kardand.	Formerly, the whole of this country was subject to Holland, but forty-two years ago, the kingdoms of England and France, with others, combined and separated it from that State, giving it to *Leopold I*, the maternal uncle of the Sovereign of England, and making him King.
سفر از بلژیک بانکلیس	*Safar az Baljīk bi Inglīs.*	*Journey from Belgium to England.*
صبح زود باکسالتِ بیخوابیِ شب برخاسته بتعجیل رخت پوشیدم بسیار سرد بود اهلِ	Subh-i zūd bā kasālat-i bīkhābī-yi shab barkhāsta bi ta^{c}jīl rakht pūshīdam. Bisyār sard būd. ahl-i shahr ham	In the morning we arose earlier than usual, thoroughly worn out with a sleepless night, and hastily dressed.

شهر هم هنوز خواب بودند یکفوج با موزیکان آمده پای عمارت صف کشیدند سواره هم بود پادشاه آمدند بکالسکه نشسته از کوچها و خیابانها گذشته رسیدیم بکار همان کالسکه های پیروزی حاضر بود فوج سرباز با موزیکان وغیره بودند با پادشاه وداع کرده بکالسکه نشسته راندیم	hanūz khāb būdand. Yak fouj bā mūzīkān āmada, pāyi ʿimārat saff kashīdand; savāra ham būd. Pādishāh āmadand. bi kālaska nishasta, az kūchahā va khīābānhā guzashta, rasīdīm bi gār. Hamān kālaskahā-yi parīrūzī hāzir būd. Fouj-i sarbāz bā mūzīkān va gheira būdand. bā pādishāh vidāʿ karda bi kālaska nishasta rāndīm.	It was very cold. The inhabitants of the city were still asleep. A battalion of infantry, with their band, arrived and were drawn up in front of the palace. There were also some cavalry. The King came. We took our seats in a carriage, drove through streets and avenues, and arrived at the railway station. The same train was there in readiness which we had used two days previously. A battalion of infantry, with band, was drawn up; others were also there. We said adieu to the King, took our seat and left.
از مملکت فلاندر عبور شد	Az mamlikat-i Flāndar ʿubūr	We traversed the Flemish pro-

همه جا جلگه آبادی سبزه چمن باغ و گل است اینجا بزبان فلمنکی که هولاند باشد حرف میزنند خلاصه رسیدیم به بندر اوستاند تجارتگاه معتبری است کشتیهای زیاد بود شهر آبادی است از بروکسل تا اینجا سه ساعت کمتر راه بود کالسکه بخار امروز خیلی تند میرفت

shud. Hama jā julga, ābādī, sabza, chaman, bāgh u gul ast. Injā bi zabān-i Flamangī, ki Hūlānd bāshad, harf mīzanand. khulāsa rasīdīm bi bandar-i *Ustānd*. tijāratgāh-i mu'tabarī-st. kashtīhā-yi zīād būd, shahr-i ābādī-st. Az *Brūksal* ta Injā si sā'at kamtar rāh būd. kālaska-yi bukhār imrūz kheilī tund mīraft.

vinces, where all was a flat plain, populous, green, grassy, full of gardens and flowers. In these parts the people speak Flemish; i. e., Dutch. We at length arrived at the sea-port town of *Ostend* — an important commercial town, where we found many ships. It is a flourishing place. We performed the distance from *Brussels* in less than three hours, as the train travelled at great speed today.

مأمورین بلژیك مرخص شده حاکم و کارگذاران اوستان به حضور آمده نطق زیادی کردند بعد پیاده شده از اسکله داخل کشتی اعلیحضرت

Ma'mūrīn-i Baljīk murakhkhas shuda, hākim va kārguzārān-i Ustān bi huzūr āmada nutq-i zīādī kardand. Ba'd pīāda shuda az askala dākhil-i kashtī-yi *a'lāhazrat-i pādi-*

The Belgian officials took their leave, and the Governor, with the functionaries of Ostend had an audience. They delivered very long speeches. We then alighted and passed from the

پادشاه انکلیس شدیم که موسوم به ویژیلانت است لارنسون صاحب وانکلیسهائی که همراه ما بودند معرفی و راهنمائی میکردند	*shāh-i Inglīs* shudīm, ki mousūm bi "*Vigilant*" ast. *Lāransūn sāhib* va Inglīsihāī-ki hamrāh-i mā būdand, muᶜarrafī va rāhnamāyī mī-kardand.	wharf on board the ship of *Her Most Exalted Majesty the Sovereign of England*, which was named the "*Vigilant*". *Mr Rawlinson* and the Englishmen who accompanied us led the way and performed the presentations.
امیرال معتبر کشتی های انکلیس که موسوم بمالکلنتوك است و بسیاحت جزایر قطب شمالی چندین دفعه رفته و مرد معروفی است استقبال آمده در کشتی بود صاحبمنصبان دیکر بحری هم زیاد بودند	*Amīrāl*-i muᶜtabar-i kashtīhā-yi Inglīs, ki mousūm bi "*M' Clintock*" ast, bi siāhat-i jazāyir-i qutb-i shamālī chandīn dafᶜa rafta va mard-i maᶜrūfī-st. Istiqbāl āmada dar kashtī būd. Sāhibmansa-bān-i dīgar-i bahrī ham zīād būdand.	The distinguished *Admiral* of the English ships who is named *M'Clintock*, has several times gone on Voyages to the islands of the North Pole, and enjoys a great reputation. He had come to meet us and was in the ship. There were also a great number of naval officers besides.
رفتیم باطاق مخصوص خودمان نشستیم کشتی بسیار تندرو	Raftīm bi utāq-i makhsūs-i khud-i-mān, nishastīm. Kash-	We went to the cabin specially designated for our use, and

there seated ourselves. The ship is very handsome and of great speed. *The Grand-Vizīr*, with our personal attendants, and a few others, were in our ship, the princes, and the remainder, were in two other vessels similar to her. We waited a considerable time for the baggage to be brought, and our travelling companions to take their places. On account of my drowsiness, I myself went below and took a little repose; after which I went up again. On the table I found some fine fruit, — excellent peaches, white and black grapes of exquisite aroma, some banana fruits, —

ti-yi bisyār tundrou-i khūbī-st. *Sadr aʿzam* bā ʿamalajāt va baʿzī dīgar dar kashtī-yi mā va shāhzādagān va sāirīn dar du kashtī-yi dīgar, ki misl-i hamīn kashtī būd, būdand. Kheilī muntazir shudīm tā bārhārā āvurdand va hamrāhān jā-bi-jā shudand. Man bi vāsita-yi kasālat bi utāq-i pāīn rafta, qadrī istirāhat karda, baʿd āmadam bālā Rūyi mīz-i mā mīvahā-yi khūb būd: hulū-yi bisyār aʿlā, angūr-i safīd u sīāh-i bisyār muʿattar-i khūb, mīva-yi mouz, ki chīz-i bisyār khūbī-st. Kharbuza-yi kūchik ham būd, bisyār shīrīn. In mīvahārā kullan dar garm-

خوبی است صدر اعظم با عملهجات و بعضی دیکر در کشتی ما وشاهزادکان و سایرین در دو کشتی دیکر که مثل همین کشتی بود بودند خیلی منتظر شدیم تا بارها را آوردند و همراهان جابجا شدند من بواسطهٔ کسالت باطاق پائین رفته قدری استراحت کرده بعد آمدم بالا روی میز ما میوهای خوب بود هلوی بسیار اعلی انکور سفید و سیاه بسیار معطر خوب میوهٔ موز که چیز بسیار خوبی است خربزه کوچک هم بود بسیار شیرین این میوهارا کلاً در کرمخانه

عمل میآورند و قیمت آنها بسیار گران است مثلاً یکخوشهٔ انگور را بدو هزار دینار میدهند وقس علی هذا	khāna ᶜamal mīāvarand va qīmat-i unhā bisyār girān ast, masalan: yak khūsha-yi angūr rā bi du hazār dīnār mīdahand, va qiss ᶜalā hāzā.	which are very nice. There was also a small melon, — very sweet. These fruits are all raised in hothouses, and the price of them is very high. For instance, they sell a single bunch of grapes for two thousand (Persian mites (about twenty pence English); from whence the rest may be inferred.
خلاصه راندیم نهاری خوردیم همراهان را نهار خوبی داده بودند	khulāsa rāndīm, nahārī khurdīm. hamrāhānrā nahār-i khūbī dāda būdand.	Well, we sailed on, and we had our luncheon. They gave our suite au excellent meal.
از بندر اوستاند الی دوور که اوّل خاك انكليس است پنجساعت راه است و این دریای مانش به طوفان و	Az bandar-i *Ustānd* ilā *Dūvar*, ki avval i khāk-i Inglīs ast, panj sāᶜat rāh ast va īn *Daryā-yi Mānsh* bi tūfān va mouj-i zīād maᶜrūf ast, ammā, al	From the port of *Ostend* to *Dover*, — the first place on the coast of England, — it takes five hours to cross; and the sea of the *British Çhan-*

nel is much noted for its storms and roughness. But, thanks be to God Most High, — the sea was very calm like the palm of one's hand, so that no one was incommoded. It was like a trip on a river. Behind us followed three ship, while two large ironclad ships of war accompanied us, to show us honour, the one to our right, the other to our left. Occasionnally they fired guns. When we had advanced a certain distance, there appeared another ship, with two turrets, and each turret with two guns; which turrets they

hamdu l'Illāhi. taʿālā, daryā bisyār ārām misl-i kaf-i dast būd. Ahvāl-i ahadī bar ham na khurd, misl-i sīāhat-i rūyi rūdkhāna būd. Az ʿaqab-i sar-i mā si kashtī bi radīf mīāmad. Du kashtī-yi buzurg-i jangī-yi zarapūsh, ham yakī dast-i rāst-i mā, dīgarī dast-i chap barāyi ihtirām mīāmadand, gāhī tūp mīandākhtand. qadrī ki raftīm, kashtī-yi dīgarī āmad, ki du burj va dar har burjī du tūp dāsht. Burj-rā bi har taraf ki mīkhāstand mīgardāndand. In

موج زیاد معروف است امّا
الحمد للّه تعالی دریا بسیار آرام
مثل کف دست بود احوال
احدی برهم نخورد مثل سیاحت
روی رودخانه بود از عقب
سر ما سه کشتی بردیف
میآمد دو کشتی بزرگ جنگی
زره پوش هم یکی دست راست
ما دیگری دست چپ برای
احترام میآمدند گاهی توپ
میانداختند قدری که رفتیم
کشتی دیگری آمد که دو برج
و در هر برجی دو توپ
داشت برجرا بهر طرف که
میخواستند میگرداندند این

کشتی هم آهن پوش است
گفتند زورِ پنج هزار اسپ
دارد دیوارهٔ کشتی هم چندان
از دریا بلند تر نبود میگفتند
گلولهٔ توپهای این کشتی
کشتیهای دیگر را خورد میکند
دو سه تیر از توپهای آن
انداختند بسیار صدا میکرد

kashtī ham āhanpūsh ast. Guftand zūr-i panj hazār asp dārad. Dīvāra-yi kashtī ham chandān az daryā bulandtar na-būd. Mīguftand gulūla-yi tūphā-yi īn kashtī kashtīhā-yi dīgar rā khurd mīkunad. Du si tīr az tūp-hā-yi ān andākhtand, bisyār sadā mīkard.

can turn round in any direction they choose. This ship also is covered with iron, and, as they said, has a steam power of five thousand horses. The ship's sides were not high out of the water. They informed me that the projectiles from her guns would smash to pieces the other ships. They fired two or three rounds from her guns, which made much noise.

کشتیهای تجارتی و غیره بسیار
آمد و رفت میکردند تا
نزدیک شدیم بسواحل انکلیس
کوه های کنار دریا پیدا شد
کشتی جنکی زیادی باستقبال
آمد همه توپ انداختند روی

Kashtīhā-yi tijāratī va gheira bisyār āmad u raft mīkardand, tā nazdīk shudīm bi savāhil-i Inglīs. Kūhhā-yi kanār-i daryā peidā shud. Kashtī-yi jangī-yi zīādī bi

Many merchant ships came and went, as well as others. At length, as we neared the English coasts, the hills on the sea-shore became visible, and a large number of men-

دریا از کشتی وقایق
و کشتیهای بخار بزرك كه
بزرگان و نجبای انکلیس
در آنها نشته بتماشا آمده
بودند پر بود کوههای سواحل
چندان بلند نیست و سنکش
سفید رنك مثل معدنِ کچ
است

istiqbāl āmad. Hama tūp andākhtand. Rū-yi daryā az kashtī va qāyiq va kashtīhā-yi bukhār-i buzurg, ki buzurgān va nujabā-yi Inglīs dar unhā nishasta bi tamāshā āmada būdand, pur būd. Kūhhā-yi savāhil chandān buland nīst va sang-ash safīdrang misl-i ma'dan-i gach ast.

of-war hove in sight, coming to meet us. They all fired guns. The surface of the sea was covered with ships, and boats, and large steamers, in which the magnates and nobles of the English had seated themselves, and were come forth to witness the spectacle. The hills on the coast are not very high: their stones are white, like quarries of lime.

خلاصه کشتی رسید به بندر
دوور سکوی سنکی طولانی ساخته
اند تاکشتی در بندر از موج
و طوفان محفوظ باشد خیلی
توی دریا آمده است بالای
آن زن و مرد و خانمها و

Khulāsa kashtī rasīd bi bandar-i *Dūvar*. Sakkū-yi sangī-yi tūlānī sākhta and, tā kashtī dar bandar az mouj u tūfān mahfūz bāshad, kheilī tū-yi daryā āmada ast. Bālā-yi ān zan u mard va khānumhā va

Our ship now reached the port of *Dover*, where they have constructed a long stone pier, so that the ships in the harbour may be safe from storms and the waves. It projects a great distance into the sea.

Upon it were women and men, ladies and nobles, infantry and cavalry, in great numbers. Here we stopped. The sons of her Majesty the *Queen of England*, with the Secretary for Foreign Affairs, *Lord Granville*, and the notables and authorities of *London*, had all arrived, — the second son of the Sovereign, the *Duke of Edinburgh*, — and the third son, *Prince Arthur*. We stood up in the ship; the Sovereign's sons, the Foreign Secretary, and the Chief Usher of the Sovereign, — a man of consideration and official in waiting, came. We went

nujabā va afvāj va savār-i bisyār būdand. Injā ıstādım. Pisarhā-yi aʿlāhazrat-i *pādishāh-i Inglistān* bā vazır-i duval-i khārija *Lord Granville* va aʿyān va ashrāf-i *Landan* hama āmada būdand. Pisar-i vasatī-yi pādishāh *Duke Edinburgh* va pisar-i siyumī *Prince Arthur*. Dar kashtī ıstādım, pisarhā-yi pādishāh, vazır-i khārija, ishik āghāsī bāshī-yi pādishāh, ki mardī muʿtabar va ham pīshkhidmat bāshī-st, tū-yi kashtī āmadand. Raftım tū-yi utāq, nishasta suhbat

نجبا و افواج و سوارِ بسیار
بودند اینجا ایستادیم پسرهای
اعلیحضرت پادشاه انکلستان
با وزیر دول خارجه لورد کرانویل
و اعیان و اشراف لندن همه
آمده بودند پسر وسطی
پادشاه دوك ادمبورك و پسر
سیمی پرنس ارتور در کشتی
ایستادیم پسرهای پادشاه وزیر
خارجه ایشیك آقاسی باشی
پادشاه که مردی معتبر و هم
پیشخدمت باشی است توی
کشتی آمدند رفتیم توی اطاق
نشسته صحبت کردیم تا

into the cabin, sat down, and conversed until the baggage was carried out of the ship. The Queen's second son is a youth with a very pleasing countenance, and stout. He has crow's eyes (bluish grey) and a small beard, in stature he is not tall; his age must be twenty-seven or twenty-eight. The third son is shorter than he, and his complexion is darker, his body slighter. The Chief Usher (Lord Chamberlain) is named *Lord Sydney*. He is a robust old man.

kardīm, tā bārhārā az kashtī burdand bīrūn. Pisar-i duyumī-yi malika javān-i bisyār khushrū-yi bā-bunyaī-st, chashmhā-yi zāgh va qadrī rīsh dārad. qadd-ash chandān buland nīst. Sinn-ash bāyad bīst u haft, hasht sāl bāshad. Pisar-i siyumī, ki az ū kūchiktar ast, qadrī rū-y-ash bārīktar va jussa-y-ash kamtar ast. Ishīk āghāsī bāshī, ismash *Lord Sidney*, mard-i pīrī, qavībunyaī-st.

بارهارا از کشتی بردند بیرون
پسر دومی ملکه جوان بسیار
خوشروی با بنیهٔ است
چشمهای زاغ و قدری ریش
دارد قدّش چندان بلند
نیست سنّش باید بیست
و هفت هشت سال باشد
پسر سیّمی که از او کوچکتر
است قدری رویش باریکتر
و جثّهاش کمتر است ایشیك
آقاسی باشی اسمش لورد
سیدنی مرد پیری قوی بنیهٔ
است

At length we rose and went up on the jetty, where there was a wonderful assembly. We took our seat in a railway

Khulāsa barkhāsta az askala bālā raftīm. Izdihām va jam'īat-i gharībī būd. Savāri kālaska-yi bukhār shudīm.

خلاصه برخاسته از اسکله بالا
رفتیم ازدحام و جمعیت غریبی
بود سوار کالسکه بخار شدیم
من و پسرهای پادشاه و صد

carriage, — I, the Sovereign's sons, the Grand Vazīr, the Foreign Secretary, and the Principal Official in Waiting, being together in one compartment. They were exceeding beautiful carriages; none such had hitherto been seen. We gently went forward a few feet; and, at a building where they had prepared food, we alighted. I went into a small room. The Hakīm al Mamālik, who had been here some time, was admitted. They then told me the *Governor* of the town of *Dover* had prepared a speech which he must recite. I went into a

Man u pisarhā-yi Pādishāh va sadr aʿzam va vazīr-i khārija-yi Inglīs va pīshkhidmat bāshī dar yak kālaska nishastīm. Bisyār kālaskahā-yi khūbī būd, hīch chunin vāgunhā dīda na-shuda būd. Ahista chand qadamī raftīm bi ʿimāratī-ki ghazā hāzir karda būdand. Pīāda shudīm. Man raftam bi utāq-i kūchikī Hakīm al-Mamālik, ki chandī būd īnjā būd, dīda shud baʿd guftand *hākim*-i shahr-i *Dūvar* nutqī hāzir karda ast, bāyad bikhānad. Raftīm bi tālārī bālā-yi pilla-yi bulandī

اعظم و وزیر خارجهٔ انکلیس و
پیشخدمت باشی در یك
کالسکه نشستیم بسیار کالسکه
های خوبی بود هیچ جا چنین
واکونها دیده نشده بود آهسته
چند قدمی رفتیم بعمارتیکه
غذا حاضر کرده بودند پیاده
شدیم من رفتم به اطاق
کوچکی حکیم الممالك که
چندی بود اینجا بود دیده
شد بعد گفتند حاکم شهر
دوور نطقی حاضر کرده است
باید بخواند رفتم بتالاری
بالای پلهٔ بلندی ایستاده همهٔ

hall and stood at the top of a high flight of steps, the whole of the English princes and notables, our princes and others, with our servants, being present, and the Governor (Mayor) recited his speech at great length, in which there was much praise and laudation of us. We replied, and *Rawlinson* explained in English. The people clapped (their) hands. Returning from thence, we went to breakfast, accompanied by all the princes. They served hot cooked food, fruit, and other things, of which we partook. Then arising, we returned to our train, and

ıstāda. Hama shāhzādahā va aʿyān-i Inglıs, shāhzādahā va sāir-i noukarhā-yi mā būdand. Hākim nutqı-rā mufassalan khānd; bisyār taʿrıf u tamjıd az mā būd. Mā ham javāb dādım. *Lāransūn* bi inglısı beiān kard; mardum dast mızadand. Baʿd bargashta raftım sar-i nahār. Hamrāhān hama būdand. Ghazā-yi garm-i pukhta va mıva va gheira āvurdand, khurdım. Baʿd barkhāsta bāz bā hamān ashkhās dar kālaska-yi bukhār nishasta rāndım. Hama jā

شاهزادها و اعیان انکلیس
شاهزادها و سایر نوکرهای ما
بودند حاکم نطقی را مفصلاً
خواند بسیار تعریف و تمجید
از ما بود ما هم جواب دادیم
لارنسون بانکلیسی بیان کرد
مردم دست میزدند بعد
برگشته رفتیم سر نهار همراهان
همه بودند غذای گرم پخته
و میوه و غیره آوردند خوردیم
بعد برخاسته باز با همان
اشخاص در کالسکه بخار
نشته راندیم همه جا از بغل

took our seat in a railway-carriage with the same personage. We started. Everywhere we passed over the bosoms of mountains and across valleys, traversing numerous tunnels, of which two were about a quarter of a league in length, very dark and suffocating.

az baghal-i kūh va darra mīraftīm. az tūnalhā-yi mutaᶜaddid guzashtīm, ki du tā-yi az ānhā bi qadr-i rubᶜ-i farsang va bisyār tārīk va khafa būd.

کوه و درّه میرفتیم از تونلهای متعدّد گذشتیم که دوتای از آنها بقدر ربع فرسنك و بسیار تاریك و خفه بود

The country in England has no resemblance to that in other territories. It has much forest, large trees, population without interval, and enormous cultivation. The wealth of the English is famous throughout the world, there is no need to describe it (here).

Zamīn-i Inglīs hīch shabāhatī bi sāir-i zamīnhā nadārad. Jangal-i zīād dārad: Dirakhthā-yi qavī, ābādī-yi muttasil, zarāᶜat-i zīād. Tamavvul-i Inglīshā maᶜrūf-i dunyā-st zarūr bi navishtan nīst.

زمین انکلیس هیچ شباهتی بسایر زمینها ندارد جنگل زیاد دارد درختهای قوی آبادی متّصل زراعت زیاد تمول انکلیسها معروف دنیاست ضرور بنوشتن نیست

We passed by the town and outlying districts of *Chiselhurst*, the abode of Napoleon III, and where he died. His tomb is also there. The train travelled at so furious a rate that it was impossible for one to distinguish any place. From the rapidity of our motion, fire came out of the wheels, and one carriage caught fire. It wanted but little for all to be burnt. They stopped the train, got down, and extinguished the fire. All was right, and again we went on until we reached the beginning of the city of *London*.

Az nazdīk-i qasaba va ābādī-yi *Chiselhurst* guzashtīm, ki maqarr-i Nāpulyūn-i Siyum būda. Ham ānjā fout shuda ast. Qabr-ash ham ānjā-st. Kālaska-yi bukhār bi tourī tund mīraft, ki imkān nadāsht kasī jāī-rā bibīnad. Az bas tund mīraft, az ʿarrāda-hā ātash dar āmad. Yak kālaska sūkht. Kam munda būd ki hama bisūzad. Kālaskahā-rā nigāh dāshta āmadand pāīn, khāmūsh kardand, durust shud. Du bāra bi rāh uftādīm tā rasīdīm bi avval-i shahr-i *Landan*.

از نزدیک قصبه و آبادی شیسلهورست گذشتیم که مقرّ ناپلیون سوم بوده هم آنجا فوت شده است قبرش هم آنجا ست کالسکهٔ بخار بطوری تند میرفت که امکان نداشت کسی جائی را ببیند از بس تند میرفت از عرّادها آتش درآمد یک کالسکه سوخت کم مانده بود که همه بسوزد کالسکه ها را نگاهداشته آمدند پائین خاموش کردند درست شد دو باره براه افتادیم تا رسیدیم باول شهر لندن

Again it is impossible to des-

دیگر آبادی و جمعیت و

dīgar ābādī va jamʿīat va

cribe the prosperity, the populousness, the extent of the city, the numbers of lines of railway over which incessantly the trains come and go in every direction, the smoke of the manufactories, and the like. We travelled over the exteriors of the roofs of the houses. | Thus we reached the station and stopped.

buzurgī-yi shahr va kasrat rāh-i āhan, ki ʿala 'l ittisāl kālaska az har taraf ʿubūr u murūr mīkunad va az dūd-i kārkhānahā va gheira namītavān sharh dād. mā az rū-yi pusht-i bāmhā mīrāndīm.

بزرگی شهر و کثرت راه آهن
که علی الاتّصال کالسکه از
هر طرف عبور و مرور میکنند
و از دود کارخانها وغیره نمی
توان شرح داد ما از روی
پشت بام ها میراندیم

There was an assemblage of spectators, and a crowd, beyond all limits; there were the armour-wearing English household cavalry; there was the Nawwāb the *Heir-Apparent of* England, known as

Khulāsa rasīdīm bi gār, īstadīm. tamāshāchī va jamʿīatī zīāda az hadd, nizām-i Inglīs, savāra-yi zarapūsh-i khāssa, navvāb-i *Valīʿahd-i Inglīs* maʿrūf bi «*Prince*

خلاصه رسیدیم بکار ایستادیم
تماشاچی و جمعیّتی زیاده
از حدّ نظام انکلیس سواره
زره پوش خاصّه نوّاب ولیعهد

انکلیس معروف بـه پـرنـس
دوکال همهٔ وزرا و اعیان واشراف
حـاضر بـودند پیاده شده من
و ولیعهد و صـدر اعظم و
لردمـورلی مهـمـانـدار بکـالسکه
رویـازی نشسته راندیم

de Galles", hama-yi *vuzarā* va aʿyān va ashrāf hāzir būdand. Pīāda shuda man va Valiʿahd va Sadr aʿzam va Lord Morley, mihmāndār bi kālaska-yi rūbāzī nishasta rāndīm.

the *Prince of Wales*; and the whole of the *Ministry*, of the notables, and of the nobles, were present. We alighted. I, the Heir-Apparent, the Grand-Vazīr, and *Lord Morley*, — the Lord-in-Waiting upon us, took our seats in an open carriage, and drove off.

طـرفین راه و بامهـا و بالاخـانها
مملوّ از زن و مـرد وبچه بود
بسیار اظهار خوشحالی میکردند
هورا میکشیدند دستمال تکان
مـیدادنـد دسـت مـیـزدنـد
خـلاصه معرکهٔ غریبی بود من
متّصل بـا سر و دست تعارف

Tarafein-i rāh va bāmhā va bālākhānahā mamlū az zan u mard u bacha būd. Bisyār izhār-i khushhālī mīkardand, hūrā mīkashīdand, dastmāl takān mīdādand, dast mīzadand. Khulāsa maʿrika-yi gharībī būd. Man muttasil bā sar va dast taʿāruf mīkar-

Both sides of the road, the roofs, the upper stories of the houses, were full of women, men, and children, who exhibited much joy and pleasure by shouting hurrahs, by waving handkerchiefs, by clapping hands. It was a surprising turmoil. I saluted incessantly with head and hands.

The crowd of spectators was never-ending. The population of the city is said to be over eight crores (four millions) of souls. It has most lovely women. The nobleness, the greatness, the gravity and sedateness of the women and men shine out from their countenance. One sees and comprehends that they are a great people, and that the Lord of the Universe has bestowed upon them power and might, sense and wisdom, and enlightenment. Thus it is that they have conquered a country like *India*, and hold important possessions in *America* and elsewhere.

dam. Jamʿīat-i tamāshāchī intihā na-dāsht. Jamʿīat-i īn shahr-rā mutajāviz az hasht kurūr nafas mīguftand. Zanhā-yi bisyār khushgil dārad. Najābat va buzurgī va vaqār va tamkīn az rū-yi zan u mard mīrīzad; maʿlūm ast ki millat-i buzurgī-st va makh-sūsan Khudāvand-i ʿālam qudrat va tavānāī va ʿaql va hūsh va tarbīyat bi ānhā dāda ast. īn ast, ki mamlikatī misl-i *Hindūstān*-rā musakhkhar karda va dar *Yangī Dunyā* va sāir-i jāhā-yi ʿalam ham mutasarrifāt-i muʿtabara dārand.

میکردم جمعیت تماشاچی انتها
نداشت جمعیت این شهر را
متجاوز از هشت کرور نفس
میگفتند زنهای بسیار خوشگل
دارد نجابت و بزرگی و وقار
و تمکین از روی زن و مرد
میریزد معلومست که ملّت
بزرگی است و مخصوصًا
خداوند عالم قدرت و توانائی
و عقل و هوش و تربیّت
بانها داده است این است
که مملکتی مثل هندوستان را
مسخّر کرده و در ینکی دنیا
و سایر جاهای عالم هم
متصرّفات معتبره دارند

Visit to Windsor Castle.

24th Rabīᶜ as sānī. — We have to go to *Windsor Castle*, the residence of *Her Majesty Victoria*, Sovereign of England, which is one hour's journey by rail. So we dressed, and then taking our seat in the carriage with the *Grand-Vazīr* and *Lord Morley*, started. Crowds beyond limit were standing at the ends and on both sides of our road. There were that number of carriages that no one could count them. Passing along the drive in *Hyde Park*, and through the town, we reached the station, and took

Raftan bi qasr-i Windsor.

Rūz-i bīst u chahārum-i Rabīᶜ as sānī. Bāyad biravīm bi *qasr-i Windsor*, ki maqarr-i *Aᶜlāhazrat-i Victoria*, Pādishāh-i Inglīs ast. Bā kālaska-yi bukhār yak sāᶜat masāfat ast. Khulāsa rakht pūshīda bā *Sadr Aᶜzam* va *Lord Morley* savār-i kālaska shuda raftīm. Jamᶜīat-i zīāda az hadd sar-i rāh va tarafein-i rāh īstāda būdand. Anqadr kālaska būd, ki hisāb nadāsht. Az khīābān-i *Hydepark* va shahr guzashta rasīdīm bi gār. Savār-i kālaska-yi bu-

رفتن بقصرِ ویندزور

روز بیست و چهارم ربیع الثانی
باید برویم به قصرِ ویندزور
که مقرّ اعلیحضرتِ ویکتوریا
پادشاه انکلیس است با کالسکهٔ
بخار یکساعت مسافت است
خلاصه رخت پوشیده باصدر
اعظم ولارد مورلی سوار کالسکه
شده رفتیم جمعیتِ زیاده از
حدّ سرِ راه و طرفین راه
ایستاده بودند آنقدر کالسکه
بود که حساب نداشت از
خیابان هایدپارك و شهر گذشته
رسیدیم بکار سوارِ کالسکهٔ

our seat in the train. The carriages were most sumptuous; each side being a single sheet of plate glass. We traversed well cultivated places, fields, and green meadows; and at length *Windsor Castle* rose to view at a distance, appearing like a fortress with four turrets. Arriving near thereto, we alighted and got into a carriage. All our suite were of the party. At the foot of the steps of the Castle we alighted. Her Majesty the Sovereign advanced to meet us at the foot of the staircase. We got down, took her hand, gave our arm, went up stairs,

khār shudīm. Kālaskahā-yi bisyār aʿlā va tarafein-i kālaska yak pārcha az bulūr būd. Az jāhā-yi ābād va sahrā va chaman guzashtīm, tā *Qasr-i Windsor* az dūr peidā shud. Misl-i qalʿa-yi chahār burjī bi nazar mīāyad. Nazdīk rasīda, pīāda shuda, savār-i kālaska-yi aspī shudīm. Jamīʿ-i multazimīn-i mā ham būdand. Pā-yi pilla-yi qasr pīāda shudīm. Aʿlāhazrat-i Pādishāh tā pā-yi pilla istiqbāl kardand. Pāīn āmada dast-i ishānrā giriftā, bāzū dāda, raftīm bālā. Az utāqhā va dālānhā-yi qashang, ki

بخار شدیم کالسکه های بسیار اعلی و طرفین کالسکه یکپارچه از بلور بود از جاهای آباد و صحرا و چمن گذشتیم تا قصر ویندزور از دور پیدا شد مثل قلعه چهار برجی بنظر میآید نزدیک رسیده پیاده شده سوار کالسکهٔ اسپی شدیم جمیع ملتزمین ما هم بودند پای پلّهٔ قصر پیاده شدیم اعلیحضرت پادشاه تا پای پلّه استقبال کردند پائین آمده دست ایشانرا گرفته بازو داده رفتیم بالا از اطاقها و دالانهای قشنگ که پردهای

اشکال خوب داشت گذشته
داخل اطاق مخصوص شده
روی صندلی نشستیم

pardahā-yi ashkāl-i khūb dāsht, guzashta, dākhil-i utāq-i makhsūs shuda, rū-yi sandalī nishastīm.

passed through pretty rooms and corridors hung with beautiful portraits, and entering a private apartment, took our seat.

پادشاه اولاد و متعلقان و
خدّام خودشان را معرّفی کردند
ما هم شاهزادها و صدر اعظم
و غیره را معرّفی کردیم لارشا
میرلاند که و زیر دربار
پادشاهی است نشان ژارتیر
مکلّل بالماس را که بزانوبند
معروف است و از نشانهای
بسیار معتبر انکلیس است
برای ما آورد پادشاه برخاسته
بدست خودشان نشان را بما

Pādishāh oulād va mutaᶜalliqān va khuddām-i khud-i shān-rā muᶜarrafī kardand. Mā ham shāhzādahā va Sadr Aᶜzam va gheira-rā muᶜarrafī kardīm. *Lord Shāmīrlānd*, ki vazīr-i darbār-i pādishāhī-st, *nishān-i "jarretière"* i mukallal bi almās-rā, ki bi zānūband maᶜrūf ast, va az nishānhā-yi bisyār muᶜtabar-i Inglīs ast, barāyi mā āvurd. Pādishāh barkhāsta bi dast-i khud-i shān nishān-rā bi mā zadand

The Sovereign presented her children, relations, and officers. We, too, on our part, presented our princes, the Grand-Vazīr, and the others. The *Lord Chamberlain*, who is the Minister of the Court of the Sovereign, brought for us the *Insignia of the Order of the Garter* set in diamonds; i. e., the knee-tie, which is one of the most esteemed English Orders. The Sovereign rose, and with her own hand decorated us with the Order

and cast the ribbon upon us, presenting us at the same time with a long stocking-tie.

va hamāyil-ash-rā andākhtand; jurābband-i buland-rā ham dādand.

زدند و جمایلش را انداختند جوراب بند بلندرا هم دادند

I received the Order with the utmost respect, and sat down. I too presented to the English Sovereign the Order of the *Sun*, set in diamonds, and also the Order of my own Portrait, which she received with all honour and put them on herself.

Khulāsa nishānrā bi ihtirām-i tamām girifta nishastīm. Man ham nishān u hamāyil-i *āftāb*, mukallal bi almās rā, bā nishān-i tasvīr-i khud bi Pādishāh-i Inglīs dādam. Ishān ham bā kamāl-i ihtirām qabūl karda bi khud zadand.

خلاصه نشانرا باحترام تمام گرفته نشستیم منهم نشان و جمایل آفتاب مکلّل به الماس را با نشان تصویر خود بپادشاه انکلیس دادم ایشان هم با کمال احترام قبول کرده بخود زدند

We then rose and went to table. Three daughters of the Sovereign and one young son, who does not yet go anywhere away from her, and whose name is *Leopold*, were already seated. This son to-day had come to the sta-

Ba'd barkhāsta sar-i mīz raftīm. Si dukhtar-i Pādishāh va yak pisar-i kūchikī, ki hanūz az pīsh-i īshān jāī na-mīravad va ism-ash *Leopold* ast, nishasta būdand. In pisar imrūz ilā gār bi istiqbāl āmada būd.

بعد برخاسته سرِ میز رفتیم سه دخترِ پادشاه و یك پسرِ کوچکی که هنوز از پیشِ ایشان جائی نمیرود و اسمش لیوپولد است نشسته بودند این پسر امروز الی کار باستقبال آمده

بـود بسیار جـوانِ خـوشکلی	Bisyār javān-i khushgilī-st.	tion to meet me. He is a very good looking young
اسـت لباس اکـوسی پـوشیده بـود وضـع لباس اکوسی این است کـه زانوها الی ران مکشوف است	Libās-i *Akūsī* pūshīda būd. Vaz^{c}-i libās-i *Akūsī* in ast, ki zānūhā ilā rān makshūf ast.	man. He wore the *Scotch* costume. The peculiarity of the *Scotch* costume is this: the knees are left visible up to the thighs.
یک دختر شـانزده سالهٔ پادشاه هم همیشه در خانهٔ ایشان است هنوز شـوهـر نـدارد دو دخترِ دیـگـرِ شـان شـوهـر دارنـد شـاهـزادهگان و صدر اعظم و لارد کـرانـویـل و غیره بودند نـهـارِ خـوبـی خـورده شـد میوهای خوب سرِ نهار بود	Yak dukhtar-i shānzdah sāla-yi pādishāh ham hamīsha dar khāna-yi īshān ast, hanūz shouhar na-dārad. Du dukhtar-i dīgar-i shān shouhar dārand. Shāhzādagān va *Sadr A^{c}zam* va *Lord Granville* va gheira būdand. Nahār-i khūbī khurda shud; mīvahā-yi khūb sar-i nahār būd.	One of the Sovereign's daughters, sixteen years of age, is always at home with her, and has not a husband as yet. Her other two daughters have husbands. The princes, the *Grand-Vazīr*, *Lord Granville*, and others, were present. A beautiful breakfast was eaten. There were some fine fruits at the breakfast.
بعد پـادشـاه دست مارا گرفته	Ba^{c}d Pādishāh dast-i mārā girifta, bi utāq-i rāhatgāh	The Sovereign again took my hand and led me to a pri-

باطاق راحتکاه برده خودشان رفتند

burda, khud-i shān raftand.

vate apartment, she herself going away.

The English Fire-Brigade.

امروز قبل از دیدن وزراء و غیره تلمبه چیان انکلیس آمده در باغ جلو عمارت مشق کردند نردبانها کذاشته بخیال اینکه عمارت مرتبه بالا آتش کرفته است بچابکی و جلدی تمام از نردبان بالا رفته مردم سوخته و نیم سوخته و سالم بعضی را بدوش کشیده پائین آوردند بعضی دیکررا طناب بکمرشان بسته بزمین

Imrūz, qabl az dīdan-i vuzarāʿ va gheira, *tulumbachīān-i Inglīs* āmada dar bāgh, jilou-i ʿimārat mashq kardand. Nardubānhā guzāshta bi kheiyāl-i īn, ki ʿimārat martaba-yi bālā ātash girifta ast, bi chābukī va jaldī-yi tamām az nardubān bālā rafta, mardum-i sūkhta va nīmsūkhta va sālim, baʿzīrā bi dūsh kashīda, pāīn āvurdand, baʿzī-yi dīgarrā, tanāb bi kamar-i-

To-day, before seeing the Ministers and others, the *English Fire-Brigade* came, and in the garden in front of our palace went through their exercise. They planted ladders, with the supposition that the upper floor of the palace was on fire; they mounted these ladders with perfect celerity and agility, and brought down people who were burnt, half-burnt, or unharmed, some taken up on their shoulders, and others

let down by ropes made fast round their waists.

They have invented a beautiful means of *saving men.* But, the wonder is in this, that on the one hand, they take such trouble and originate such appliances for the salvation of man from death, when, on the other hand, in the armouries, arsenals, and workshops of *Woolwich* in *England*, and of *Krupp* in *Germany*, they contrive fresh engines, such as cannons, muskets, projectiles, and similar things, for the *quicker and more multitudinous slaughter of the human race.* He whose invention destroys

shān basta, bi zamīn furūd āvurdand.

Barāyi *istikhlās-i mardum* ikhtirāᶜ-i khūbī karda and, ammā taᶜajjub dar īn ast, ki az yak taraf īn nouᶜ-i ikhtirāᶜāt va ihtimāmāt barāyi *istikhlās-i insān* az *marg* mīkunand, az taraf-i dīgar dar qūrkhānahā-yi *Vūlvīch-i Inglīs* va *Krūp-i Almān*, ikhtirāᶜāt-i tāza az tūp va tufang va gulūla va gheira barāyi *zūdtar u bīshtar kushtan-i jins-i insān* mīkunand; va har kas ikhtirāᶜ-ash bihtar va zūdtar talaf mīkunad,

فرود آوردند

برای استخلاص مردم اختراع خوبی کرده اند امّا تعجّب در این است که از یکطرف این نوع اختراعات و اهتمامات برای استخلاص انسان از مرگ میکنند از طرف دیگر در قورخانهای ولویچ انکلیس و کروپ آلمان اختراعات تازه از توپ و تفنگ و کلوله و غیره برای زود تر و بیشتر کشتن جنس انسان میکنند و هر کس اختراعش بهتر و

زودتر انسان‌را تلف میکند افتخارها مینماید و نشانها میگیرد	iftikhārhā mīnamāyad va nishānhā mīgīrad.	man more surely and expeditionsly prides himself thereon, and obtains decorations of honour.
از کتاب روزنامهٔ سفر همایونی بمازندران	*Az kitāb-i rūznāma-yi safar-i humāyūnī bi Māzandarān.*	*From the diary of the royal journey to Māzandarān.*
جمعهٔ هفتم رمضان از پول بکجور باید رفت از اردو بفاصلهٔ قلیلی بقریه پول رسیدیم امامزادهٔ ایست در پول موسوم بامامزاده علی بالای کوه مشرف بقریه درخت جنکلی زیاد بود میکفتند امامزاده نظر کرده است هرکس از شاخهای آنها	Jumᶜa-yi haftum-i Ramazān az *Pūl* bi *Kujūr* bāyad raft. Az urdū bi fāsila-yi qalīlī bi qarīa-yi Pūl rasīdīm. *Imāmzādaī*-st dar Pūl, mousūm bi *Imāmzāda yi ᶜAlī*. Bālā-yi kūh, mushrif bi qarīa dirakht-i jangalī-yi zīād būd. Mīguftand Imāmzāda nazar karda ast, har kas az shākhhā-yi	On Friday the 7th of the month of Ramazan we must ride from *Pūl* to *Kujūr*. From the camp, after a short distance, we reached the village of Pūl. There is an "*Imāmzāda*" [1]) in Pūl, named "*Imāmzāda-yi Alī*". At the summit of the mountain, near the village, were many forest-trees. They said that the Imāmzāda had

1) "Imamzada" means a persian Saint, or his tomb.

ordained, that whosoever cut off a branch of these trees, would surely die. For this reason the people in these parts do not fell these trees.

After crossing the pass of *Lāshk* the plain of Lāshk was seen. It is a wonder that, when we came here some years ago, the plain of Lāshk was dry. Two years ago a lake formed itself in the middle of the valley of Lāshk and a great quantity of water collected there. The circumference of the lake is of almost one farsakh. All round the lake many reeds and rushes have sprung up, and all kinds of water-fowl are there. The

unhā qatᶜ kunad, yaqīnan khāhad murd. Az un jihat ast, ki ahl-i vilāyat īn ashjārrā qatᶜ na mīkunand.

Az gardana-yi *Lāshk* sahrā-yi *Lāshk* peidā shud. Az ᶜajāīb īn, ki chand sāl qabl, ki īnjā āmada būdīm, sahrā-yi *Lāshk* khushk būd. Du sāl ast, daryāchaī dar vasat-i julga-yi *Lāshk* peidā shuda va āb-i zīādī jamᶜ shuda. Dour-i daryācha nazdīk-i yak farsakh ast. Atrāf-i un nei-yi zīād rūīda, va anvāᶜ-i murghābī dārad, va āb bi

قطع کند یقینا خواهد مرد

از آن جهت است که اهل ولایت این اشجار را قطع نمیکنند

از گردنه لاشك گذشته صحرای لاشك پیدا شد از عجایب اینکه چند سال قبل که اینجا آمده بودیم صحرای لاشك خشك بود دو سال است دریاچهٔ در وسط جلگهٔ لاشك پیدا شده وآب زیادی جمع شده دور دریاچه نزدیك یك فرسخ است اطراف آن نی زیاد روئیده انواع مرغابی دارد

water becomes wavy at the slightest blowing of the zephyr.

juzʿī-yi nasīmī mutamavvaj mīshavad.

و آب بجزئی نسیمی متموّج میشود

Truly it is very wonderful. Every one says something: Some say that a flood came and that the lake was (thus) formed.

Haqīqatan kheilī ʿajīb ast. Har kas chīzī mīguyad: Baʿzī mīgūyand seil āmad va īnjā daryācha shud.

حقیقةً خیلی عجیب است هر کس چیزی میگوید بعضی میگویند سیل آمد و اینجا دریاچه شد

Others say that a great quantity of snow fell and turned to water and so the lake found its origin. In any case it is now a very big lake. It is especially wonderful, that just about the possession of this same piece of ground, which the water has covered and turned into a lake, the inhabitants of Kujūr quarrelled several years ago and appea-

Baʿzī mīgūyand barf-i zīād āmad va āb shud, va īn daryācha tashkīl yaft. Bi har taqdīr hālā daryācha-i kheilī buzurgī-st, va ʿajībtar īn, ki hamīn zamīnahā, ki āb girifta daryācha shuda ast, chandīn sāl būd ki mābein-i ahālī-yi Kujūr dar mālikīyat-

بعضی میگویند برف زیاد آمد و آب شد و این دریاچه تشکیل یافت بهر تقدیر حالا دریاچه خیلی بزرگی است و عجب تر اینکه همین زمینها که آب گرفته دریاچه شده است چندین سال بود که مابین اهالی کجور در مالکیّت

led to the High Court of Judgment. Now that the water has taken possession of this ground and has turned it into a lake, the law-suit has come to an end.

i un munāzaᶜa būd, ki ᶜarz bi dīvānkhāna-yi ᶜadlīya karda būdand. Hālā, ki īn arāzīrā āb girifta, daryācha shuda ast, qatᶜ-i nizāᶜ gardīda.

آن منازعه بود که عرض بدیوانخانه عدلیّه کرده بودند حالا که این اراضی را آب گرفته دریاچه شده است قطع نزاع گردیده

APPENDIX.

Some of the titles most used in speaking.

1. *How to address the Shāh.*

اعلیحضرت همایونی	aʿlāhazrat-i humāyūni.	Your most gracious Majesty.
قبلهٔ عالم	qibla-yi ʿālam.	Pole of the World.
بلی قربان شوم	bálī, qurbān shavam!	Yes, may I be your sacrifice! [1]

2. *The Sons of the Shāh.*

حضرت والا	hazrat-i vālā.	Your Royal Highness.

3. *Other Royal Princes.*

نواب والا	navvāb-i vālā.	Your Highness.
سرکار والا	sarkār-i vālā.	

4. *Princesses.*

نواب عالیّه	navvāb-i ʿālīa.	Royal Highness.

1) Used only by the Shah's subjects.

شاهزاده خانم امیرزاده خانم	shāzda (for *shāhzāda*) khānum. amīrzāda khānum.	Princess.

5. *The Grandvizier.*

حضرت اجلّ	hazrat-i ajall.	Your Highness.
آقای صدر اعظم	aghā-yi Sadr aʿzam.	Prince Minister.

6. *All Viziers (State-Ministers) und Mullahs (Divine Ministers).*

جناب عالی	janāb-i ʿālī.	Your Excellency.

7. *Seyids (descendants of the Prophet Muhammed)* [1].

آقا	Aghā.

8. *Governors (unless they have a higher personal title, as that of Prince).*

خان حاکم	khān-i hākim.
آقای بیگلربیکی	aghā-yi baglarbagī.

1) The Seyids are easily recognized by their green belts and green or dark blue turbans.

9. *All ladies and gentlemen whatever rank they may hold.*

سرکار	sarkār.	Madam, Sir.

10. *Women.*

خانم	khānum.	addressing a lady.
باجی	bājī.	addressing an inferior.

Measures of Length.

انگشت	angusht.	a finger's breadth.
وجب	vajab.	a span.
ذراع	zirāᶜ.	a cubit.
ذرع	zarᶜ.	a yard.
میدان اسپ	meidān-i asp.	the length of a horse's gallop.
فرسخ فرسنگ	farsakh or farsang.	a parasang (about 6,2 kilometres or $3\frac{3}{4}$ English miles).

Weights.

جو گندم	jou or gandum.	a barley-corn or a wheat-corn (0,048 g).

نخود	4 gandum = 1 nukhud.	a small chick pea (0,192 g. or $\frac{1}{116}$ of an ounce).
مثقال	24 nukhud = 1 miskāl.	(4,6 g. or nearly $\frac{1}{6}$ ounce).
سیر	16 miskāl = 1 sīr.	(73,6 g.).
چارك	10 sīr = 1 chārak.	a quarter of a man.
من	4 chārak = 1 man.	(2,44 kg. or $7\frac{1}{4}$ lbs.).
خروار	100 man = 1 kharvār.	(donkey load, 244,40 kg. or 725 lbs.).

Money.

قران یك هزار	qarān or yak hazār.	a kran (silver coin) or 1000 dinars (an obsolete infinitesimal coin) has
شاهی	shāhī.	20 shāhī. (copper).
تومان	tūmān.	10 krans make one *tumān* (at present worth about 4 sh.)
پول سفید	pūl-i safīd.	silver coin (white money).
پول سیاه	pūl-i siāh.	copper coin (black money).
صد دینار	sannār (for sad dīnār, see p. 6).	(a hundred dinars) a two shahī copper coin.

دو هزاری	du hazārī.	(2000 dinars) a two kran piece.

Gold coins are very rare. A tumān is generally paid in 5 two krān pieces.

The following terms are used, like the English "guinea" for values not represented by amy actual coins.

عباسی	ʿabbāsī.	4 shahis.
پناهاباد	panāhābād.	10 „
چهار عباسی	chahār abbāsī.	depreciated krans worth only 16 shahis instead of 20.
ریال	rīāl.	1 kran 5 shahis.

Banknotes and foreign money.

اسکناس	askināṣ.	banknote.
برات	barāt.	cheque.
لیره	līra.	£
امپریال	imparīāl.	Russian imperial.
منات	manāt.	Rouble.

ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY.

A.

abandon	ترک کردن	tark kardan
abreviated	مختصر	mukhtasar
abreviation	اختصار	ikhtisār
abdication	استعفا	isti'fā
abdomen	شکم	shikam
abhorrence	نفرت	nifrat
ability	قابلیت	qābilīat
abject	خوار, زلیل	khār, zalīl
abjectness	خواری, زلالت	khārī, zalālat
able	زرنگ	zarang
ablution	وضو	vuzū
abode	منزل, مکان	manzil, makān
— (plur.)	منازل, اماکن	manāzil, amākin
abolish	موقوف کردن	mouqūf kardan
about, around	دور, گرد	dour, gird
— nearly	تقریباً	taqrīban
— concerning	در خصوص	dar khusūs
above	بالا	bālā
above mentioned	مذکور	mazkūr
	مزبور	mazbūr

abridged	مختصر	mukhtasar
abroad	خارج	khārij
abscess	دنبل	dumbal
abscence	غیبت	gheibat
absent	غایب	ghāib
absolute	مطلق	mutlaq
abstinence	پرهیز	parhīz
absurd	بی خود	bī-khud
to abuse (bad language)	فحش دادن	fuhsh dādan
— ill usage	بد رفتاری	bad raftārī
acacia	اقاقیا	aqāqīā
academy	دار الفنون	dār ul funūn
accept	قبول کردن	qabūl kardan
accident	اتفاق	ittifāq
accidentally	اتفاقاً	ittifāqan
accompany	همراه رفتن	hamrāh raftan
according to	موافق	muvāfiq-i
accordingly	بنابر این	binā bar īn
accountant	محاسب	muhāsib
accountbook	دفتر	daftar
accounts	حساب	hisāb
accredited (dipl.)	مقیم	muqīm
accuracy	دقت	diqqat
accurate	دقیق	daqīq
accusation	ادّعا	iddiʿā
accustom (oneself)	عادت کرفتن	ʿādat giriftan
accustomed	آموخته	āmūkhta
ache	درد	dard

acid	ترش	tursh
acquaintance	آشنای	āshnāī
acquire	حاصل کردن	hāsil kardan
acquit	رها کردن	rihā kardan
acrobat	بازیگر	bāzī gar
act	کار, فعل plur: افعال	kār, fi'l plur: af'āl
— (of a play)	پرده	parda
to act	کردن (کن)	kardan (kun)
— (in a play)	بازی در آوردن	bāzī dar āvurdan
actor	مقلّد	muqallid
adapt	منسوب کردن	mansūb kardan
add (figures)	جمع زدن	jam' zadan
addition	اضافه	izāfa
— (in arithmetic)	جمع	jam'
address (of a letter)	عنوان	'invān
adieu	وداع	vidā'
adjective	اسم صفت	ism-i sifat
adjutant	آجودان	ājūdān
administration	اداره	idāra
admiral	امیر البحر دریا بیکی	amīr ul bahr daryā bagī
admire	حظّ کردن	hazz kardan
admission	دخول	dukhūl
adopt	تبنی کردن	tabannī k.
adore	پرستیدن	parastīdan
adult	بالغ	bāligh
adulterated	مخلوط	makhlūt
adultery	زنا	zinā

advance (to)	پیش رفتن	pish raftan
advancement	ترقی	taraqqi
advantage	فایده	fāida
plur:	فواید	favāyid
advantageous	مفید	mufīd
adventure	واقعه	vāqi'a
	plur: وقایع	vaqāi'
advertise	اعلان کردن	i'lān kardan
advice	نصیحت	nasīhat
	plur: نصایح	nasāyih
advocate	وکیل	vakīl
affair	کار	kār
afflicted	پریشان	parīshān
afraid	ترسان	tarsān
afresh	از سرِ نو	az sar-i nou
after	بعد از	ba'd az
afternoon	عصر	'asr
afterwards	بعد از آن	ba'd az ān
again	باز, دیگر	bāz, dīgar
against	بر ضدّ	bar zidd-i
age	عمر	'umr
agent	کماشته	gumāshta
agio	صرف	sarf
agreement	قرار	qarār
agriculture	زراعت	zarā'at
ague	تبِ لرز	tap-i larz
aigrette	جیقه	jīqa
aim (to)	قراول گرفتن	qarāvul giriftan
air	هوا	havā

alas!	افسار	afsūs
alchemy	کیمیا	kīmīā
alcohol	الکحول	alkuhūl
alcove	شاه نشین	shāh nishīn
alight (to)	پاین امدن	pāīn āmadan
alike	برابر	barābar
alive	زنده	zinda
all	همه	hama
alliance	معاحده	muʿāhida
allow (to)	اذن دادن	izn dādan
almanac	تقویم	taqvīm
almighty	قادر	qādir
almond	بادام	bādām
almost	قریب	qarīb
alms	خیرات	kheirāt
alone	تنها	tanhā
aloud	بلند	buland
alphabet	ا ب	alif bē
also	هم	ham
alteration	تغییر	taghyīr
although	اگرچه	agarchi
altogether	بالکلّ	bilkull
always	همیشه	hamīsha
amazed	حران	heirān
ambassador	سفیر, ایلچی	safīr, īlchī
	plur: سفرا	sufarā
amber (straw attractor)	که ربا	kah-rubā
amble	یرغه	yurgha
among	میان	mīān

amorous	عاشق	ʿāshiq
amulet	تعویذ	taʿviz
amusement	تفرج	tafarruj
ancestors	اجداد	ajdād
anchor	لنکر	langar
ancient	قدیم	qadīm
and	و	u, va
anecdote	نقل	naql
angel	فرشته	firishta
anger	تغیّر	tagheiyur
angle	کنج	kunj
animal	حیوان	heivān
	plur: حیوانات	heivānāt
annalist	واقعه نکار	vāqiʿa nigār
annul (to)	باطل کردن	bātil kardan
another	دیکر, غیر	dīgar, gheir
answer	جواب	javāb
ant	مورچه	mūrcha
— (white ant)	موریانه	mūrīāna
antediluvion	قبل از طوفان	qabl az tūfān
antiquities	انتیقه	antīqa
anxious	دلتنك	diltang
any	هیچ	hīch
apart	جدا	judā
aperient	مسهل	mushil
apologize	عذر خواستن (خواه)	ʿuzr khāstan (khāh)
apoplexy	سکته	sakta
apothecary	دواساز	davāsāz
apparent	ظاهر	zāhir
appetite	اشتها	ishtihā

apple	سیب	sīb
appointment	ماموریت	maᶜmūrīat
appreciate	غنیمت شمردن (شمار)	ghanīmat shumurdan (shumār)
apprentice	شاگرد	shāgird
approve	پسندیدن (پسند)	pasandīdan (pasand)
apricot	زرد آلو قیسی	zard ālū qeisī
apron	پیش‌بند	pīshband
apt	مناسب	munāsib
Arabia	عربستان	ᶜarabistān
Arab	عرب	ᶜarab
arabian / arabic	عربی	ᶜarabī
arch	طاق محراب	tāq mihrāb
archives	دفتر	daftar
argument	دلیل	dalīl
	plur: دلایل	dalāyil
arid	خشک	khushk
aristocracy	نجبا	nujabā
arithmetic	حساب	hisāb
arm	بازو	bāzū
arms	اسلحه	aslaha
army	قشون	qushūn
around	دور	dour
arrange	ترتیب دادن	tartīb dādan
arrest (to)	حبس کردن	habs kardan
arrive	رسیدن (رس)	rasīdan (ras)
arrival	ورود	vurūd
arriving	وارد	vārid

arrogance	غرور	ghurūr
arrogant	مغرور	maghrūr
arrow	تیر	tīr
arsenal	قورخانه	qūrkhāna
art	فن	fann
	plur: فنون	funūn
artificial	ساختگی	sākhtagī
artillery	توپخانه	tūpkhāna
artillery man	توپچی	tūpchī
artist	استاد	ustād
ash	زبانِ گنجشك	zabān-i gunjishk
ashamed (to be)	خجالت کشیدن	khajālat kashīdan
ashes	خاکستر	khākistar
ask (to)	پرسیدن (پرس)	pursīdan (purs)
asleep	خوابیده	khābīda
asparagus	مارچوبه	mārchūba
ass	خر	khar
assassin	قاتل	qātil
assassination	قتل	qatl
assault	حمله	hamla
assembly	مجلس	majlis
	plur: مجالس	majālis
assist	کمك کردن	kumak kardan
assistant	معاون	muʿāvin
associate	شریك	sharīk
	plur: شرکا	shurakā
astray	گمراه	gumrāh
astrologer	منجم	munajjim
astrology astronomy	علم نجوم	ʿilm-i nujūm

barefoot	پا برهنه	pā barahna
bareheaded	کله برهنه	kala barahna
barley	جو	jou
barn	انبار	ambār
barracks	سرباز خانه	sarbāz khāna
barrel	پیپ	pīp
— (of a gun)	لوله	lūla
barren	خشک	khushk
barricade	سنگر	sangar
base	پست	past
basil	ریحان	reihān
basin	طشت لگن	tasht, lagan
basket	سبد	sabad
bastard	حرامزاده	harāmzāda
bastinado	چوب و فلکه	chūb u falaka
bastinado (to)	چوب زدن	chūb zadan
bastinadoed (to be)	چوب خوردن	chūb khurdan
bath	حمام	hammām
battle	جنگ	jang
bayonet	نیزه	neiza
bazaar	بازار	bāzār
be (to)	بودن (باش)	būdan (bāsh)
bead	مهره	muhra
beak	نک	nuk
beam (wood)	تیر	tīr
bean	لوبیا	lūbīā
bear	خرس	khirs
beard	ریش	rīsh
beast	بهیمه	bahīma
	plur: بهایم	bahāyim
beat (to)	زدن (زن)	zadan (zan)

beautiful	قشنگ	qashang
beauty	حسن	husn
beaver	سگ آبی	sag-i ābī
because	زیرا که	zīrā ki
become (to)	شدن (شو)	shudan (shou)
becoming	شایسته	shāyasta
bed	رخت خواب	rakht-i khāb
bedstead	تخت خواب	takht-i khāb
bedroom	خواب‌گاه	khābgāh
bee	زنبور	zambūr
beef	گوشت کاو	gūsht-i gāv
beer	آب جو	āb-i jou
beetle	سن	sin
beetroot	چقندر	chuqundur
— (red)	لبو	labū
before	قبل	qabl
beg (to)	استدعا کردن	istidʿā kardan
— (alms)	گدای کردن	gadāī kardan
beggar	گدا	gadā
begin	گرفتن (گیر)	giriftan (gīr)
beginner	مبتدی	mubtadī
behind	عقب	ʿaqab
believe	باور کردن	bāvar kardan
bell	زنگ	zang
belly	شکم	shikam
below	زیر	zīr
belt	کمر بند	kamar band

bench	سکو	sakū
bend (trans)	پیچاندن	pīchāndan
— (intrans)	پیچیدن (پیچ)	pīchīdan (pīch)
bend (subst)	پیچ و خم	pīch u kham
besides	علاوه از	ʿalāva az
besiege	محاصره کردن	muhāsira kardan
best	بهترین	bihtarīn
bet (to)	شرط بستن	shart bastan
better	بهتر	bihtar
between	میان	mīān
beyond	آن طرف	ān taraf
bible	توریت و انجیل	tourāt va anjīl
bier	تابوت	tābūt
big	بزرگ, کلفت	buzurg, kuluft
bigotry	تعصب	taʿassub
bill	حساب	hisāb
— (of exch.)	برات	barāt
bind (to)	بستن (بند)	bastan (band)
bird	مرغ	murgh
birth	تولد	tavallud
biscuit	نان خشك	nun-i khuchk
bit	پاره	pāra
bite (to)	گزیدن	gazīdan
bitter	تلخ	talkh
black	سیاه	sīāh
blackguard	هرامزاده	harāmzāda
blacksmith	آهنگر	āhangar
blade (sword, knife)	تیغه	tīgha
blame	تقصیر, عیب	taqsīr, ʿeib
	plur: عیوب	ʿuyūb

blanket	پتو	patū
— (of a horse)	جل	jul
blasphemy	کفر	kufr
bleed (to)	خون گرفتن رگ زدن	khūn giriftan, rag zadan
blessed	مبارك	mubārak
blind	کور	kūr
block (to)	مسدود ساختن	masdūd sākhtan
blood	خون	khūn
bloodthirsty	خون‌خوار	khūnkhār
blossom (to)	شگفتن	shiguftan
blottingpaper	کاغذ آب‌کش	kāghaz-i ābkash
blow (to)	وزیدن (وز)	vazīdan (vaz)
— (with the breath)	پف کردن	puf kardan
blue	آبی	ābī
blunt	کند	kund
board	تخته	takhta
boast (to)	لاف زدن	lāf zadan
boat (rowing)	کرجی	karajī
body	تن, بدن	tan, badan
— dead	مرده	murda
boil (to)	جوشانیدن	jūshānīdan
bold	دلیر	dilīr
bolster	بالش	bālish
bolt	چفت	chift
bomb	خمپاره	khumpāra
bone	استخوان	ustukhān
book	کتاب	kitāb
	plur: کتب	kutub

bookbinder	صحاف	sahhāf
bookbinding (the)	جلد	jild
boot	چکمه	chakma
border	حاشیه	hāshīa
born	زاده	zāda
borrow	امانت گرفتن	amānat giriftan
— (money)	قرض کردن	qarz kardan
botany	علم نباتاتی	ʿilm-i nabātātī
both	هر دو	har du
bottle	شیشه	shīsha
bottom	ته	tah
bough	شاخ	shākh
bouquet	گلدسته	guldasta
bow	کمان	kamān
to bow	تعارف کردن	taʿāruf kardan
bowl	کاسه	kāsa
box (big)	صندوق	sandūq
— (small)	جعبه	jaʿba
— (on the ear)	سالی	sīlī
box (to)	مشت زدن	musht zadan
boxtree	شمشاد	shamshād
boy	پسر	pisar
bracelet	دست بند	dastband
braces	بند شلوار	band-i shalvār
brackish	شور	shūr
brain	مغز	maghz
brand	داغ	dāgh
brandy	کونیاك	kūnyāk
brass	برنج	birinj
bravo!	به به	bah! bah!

bread	نان	nān, nun
breadth	پهنای	pahnāī
break (to)	شکستن (شکن)	shikastan (shikan)
breakfast	نهار	nahār
breast	سینه	sīna
— (female)	پستان	pistān
breath	نفس	nafas
to breathe	نفس کشیدن	nafas kashīdan
breeches	شلوار	shalvār
breechloader	ته پر	tah pur
breeze	نسیم	nasīm
brick (unburnt)	خشت	khisht
— (burnt)	آجر	ājur
bride	عروس	ʿarūs
bridegroom	داماد	dāmād
bridge	پل جسر	pul, jisr
bridle	جلو	jilou
brigand	رهزن	rahzan
bright	روشن	roushan
bring	آوردن (آر)	āvurdan (ār)
broad	پهن	pahn
broker	دلال سمسار	dallāl, simsār
bronze	چودن	chūdan
brooch	سنجاق	sanjāq
broom	جاروب	jārūb
broth	آب‌گوشت	ābgūsht
brother	برادر	barādar
brown	قهوه‌ای	qahvaī
brush	پاك كن	pāk kun

buckle	سگك	sagak
bud	غنچه	ghuncha
buffalo	گاوِ میش	gāv-i mish
bug	ساس	sās
— (poisonous)	گنه ملّه	gana, malla
build	بنا کردن	banā kardan
builder	بنّا	bannā
building	عمارت	ʿimārat
bulb	پیاز	pīāz
bullet	گلوله	gulūla
bunch	خوشه	khūsha
burden	بار	bār
burial	دفن	dafn
burn (trans)	سوزاندن	sūzāndan
— (intrans)	سوختن (سوز)	sūkhtan (sūz)
burst	ترکیدن (ترك)	tarakīdan (tarak)
bush	بوته	buta
business	کار	kār
busy	مشغول	mashghūl
but	لیکن	likan
butcher	قصّاب	qassāb
butler	پیش خدمت	pish-khidmat
butter	کره	kara
— (clarified)	روغن	roughan
butterfly	شاه پرك	shāh parak
button	دکمه	dukma
buy	خریدن (خر)	kharīdan (khar)
buyer	مشتری	mushtarī

C.

cabbage	کلم	kalam
cage	قفس	qafas
cake	نانِ شیرینی	nān-i shīrīnī
calamity	بلا	balā
calf	گوساله	gūsāla
calico	چیت, قلمکار	chīt, qalamkār
call	صدا کردن	sadā kardan
called	مسمیٰ	musammā
camel	شتر	shutur
camomile	بابونه	bābūna
camp	اردو	urdū
camphor	کافور	kāfūr
canal	نهر, جوب	nahr, jūb
candle	شمع	sham^{c}
candlestick	شمعدان	sham^{c}dān
cane	نی	nei
cannon	توپ	tūp
canter	چارنعل	chārna^{c}l
canvas	کرباس	karbās
cap	کلاه	kulāh
capable	قابل	qābil
capacity	قابلیت	qābilīa^{c}t
cape	سر	sar
caper	کبر	kabar
capital	پای تخت	pāyi takht
caprice	تلونِ مزاج	talavvun-i mizāj
captain	سلطان	sultān
captive	اسیر	asīr
caravan	قافله, کاروان	qāfila, kāravān

caravanserai	کاروانسرا	kārvānsarā
carcass	لاش	lāsh
card (play)	گنجفه	ganjafa
— (visiting)	گارت	gārt
care	فکر	fikr
careful	خبردار	khabardār
careless	بی خبر	bī khabar
carnation	میخک	mīkhak
carpenter	نجار	najjār
carpet (general)	فرش	farsh
— (knotted)	قالی	qālī
— (woven)	گلیم	gilīm
— (felt)	نمد	namad
carriage	کالسکه	kālaska
carrier	حمال	hammāl
carrot	هویج	havīj
carry	بردن (بر)	burdan (bar)
cartridge	فشنگ	fishang
to carve	تراشیدن (تراش)	tarāshīdan (tarāsh)
carving	نقش	naqsh
cascade	آبشار	ābshār
cash	پول نقد	pūl-i naghd
to cast (in a mould)	ریختن (ریز)	rīkhtan (rīz)
castle	قصر قلعه ارک	qasr, qal'a, ark
castor oil	روغن چراغ	roughan chirāgh
to castrate	آخته کردن	ākhta kardan
cat	گربه	gurba
— (long haired Persian cat)	براق	burrāq
catalogue	فهرست	fihrist

to catch	گرفتن (گیر)	giriftan (gīr)
cauldron	دیگ	dīg
cauterize	داغ کردن	dāgh kardan
cavalry	سوارہ	savāra
cavern	غار	ghār
caviar	تخم ماهی	tukhm-i māhī
to cease	تمام شدن	tamām shudan
ceiling	سقف	saqf
celebrated	مشهور معروف	mashhūr, maʿrūf
celery	کلفس	kalafs
cellar	زیر زمین	zīr zamīn
centre	مرکز	markaz
ceremony	رسم	rasm
— plur.	رسوم	rusūm
certain	یقین	yaqīn
certificate	تصدیق	tasdīq
— (of a servant)	کاغذ رضامندی	kāghaz-i rizāmandī
chain	زنجیر	zanjīr
chair	صندلی	sandalī
chalk	گل سفید	gil-i safīd
chamberlain	پیشخدمت حضور	pīshkhidmat-i huzūr
chancery	دفتر	daftar
chandelier	چهل چراغ	chihil chirāgh
chandler	بقال	baqqāl
to change	غوض کردن	ʿavaz kardan
chapter	باب	bāb
character	خصلت	khaslat
charcoal	زغال	zughāl

chargé d'affaires	شارژدفر کفیل امور	chārjdafar, kafīl-i umūr
charity	کرم	karam
charm	طلسم	talism
chastity	عصمت	ʿasmat
cheap	ارزان	arzān
cheapness	ارزانی	arzānī
cheating	تقلب	taghallub
cheese	پنیر	panīr
chemist	عطار دواساز	ʿattār, davāsāz
cheque	برات	barāt
cherry (sweet)	گیلاس	gīlās
— (sour)	آلوبالو	ālūbālū
chess	شطرنج	shatranj
chest (human)	سینه	sīna
chestnut	شاه بلوط	shāh balūt
chicken	جوجه	jūja
chief	رئیس خان	raʿīs, khān
child	بچه	bacha
childhood	بچه گی	bachagī
chimney	دودکش	dūdkash
chin	زنخ	zanakh
China	چین	Chīn
China, Chinese	چینی	chīnī
chintz	قلمکار	qalamkār
choke	خفه شدن	khafa shudan
cholera	وبا	vabā
choose	اختیار کردن	ikhtīār kardan
Christ	حضرت عیسی	Hazrat-i ʿIsā
Christian	عیسوی	ʿIsavī

chronicle	تاریخ تواریخ	tārīkh plur: tavā-rīkh
church	کلیسیا	kalīsyā
cinnamon	دار چینی	dār-chīnī
circle	دایره	dāira
circumcision	ختنه	khatna
cistern	آب انبار	āb-ambār
citadel	قلعه	qalᶜa
city	شهر	shahr
civility	ادب	adab
claim	طلب	talab
—	ادعا	iddiᶜā
claimant	مدعی	muddaᶜī
class	قسم, طبقه	qism, tabaqa
claw	چنگال	changāl
clay	گل	gil
clean	پاك	pāk
clear	صاف	sāf
to cleave	شکافتن شکاف	shikāftān (shikāf)
clergyman	کشیش	kashīsh
clever	با هوش	bā hūsh
climate (water and air)	اب و هوا	āb u havā
to cling	چسپیدن چسپ	chaspīdan (chasp)
cloak	عبا	ᶜabā
clock	ساعت مجلسی	sāᶜat-i majlisī
to close	بستن بند	bastan (band)
cloth	ماهوت	māhūt
to clothe	پوشیدن پوش	pūshīdan (pūsh)
— (causal)	پوشاندن پوشان	pūshāndan (pūshān)
clothes	رخت	rakht
	لباس	libās

cloud	ابر	abr
clove	میخک	mīkhak
clover	شبدر	shabdar
coachhouse	کالسکه خانه	kālaskakhāna
coachman	کالسکه‌چی	kālaskachī
coal	زغالِ سنگ	zughāl-i sang
coarse	درشت	durusht
coast	کنار	kanār
—	ساحل	sāhil
— (plur.)	سواحل	savāhil
coat (persian)	سرداری	sardārī
cobweb	تارِ عنکبوت	tār-i ʿankabūt
cock	خروش	khurūs
coffee	قهوه	qahva
coffin	تابوت	tābūt
coin	سکه	sikka
to coin	ضرب کردن	zarb kardan
cold (adj.)	سرد	sard
to catch cold	سرما خوردن	sarmā khurdan
collar	یقه	yakha
to collect	جمع کردن	jamʿ kardan
collyrium	سرمه	surma
colonel	سرهنگ	sarhang
colour	رنگ	rang
colt	کره	kurra
column	ستون	sutūn
comb	شانه	shāna
to comb	شانه زدن	shāna zadan
to come	آمدن (آ)	āmadan (ā)

comet	ستارهٔ دنباله دار	sitāra-yi dumbāla-dār
comic	مضحک	muzhik
command	حکم فرمان	hukm, farmān
to command	فرمودن فرما	farmūdan (farmā)
commentary	تفسیر	tafsīr
commerce	تجارت	tijārat
companion	رفیق	rafīq
to compare	مقابله کردن	muqābila kardan
comparatively	بالنسبه	bi'n nisba
compass	قبله نما	qibla namā
compensation	مکافات	makāfāt
complaint	شکایت	shikāyat
complete	تمام	tamām
compliments	سلام	salām
composed	مرکب	murakkab
to conceal	پنهان کردن	panhān kardan
concerning	در خصوص	dar khusūs
concession	امتیاز	imtīāz
conciliation	مصالحه	musālaha
condition	حال	hāl
	plur: احوال	ahvāl
— (stipul)	شرط	shart
	plur: شروط	shurūt
to condole	تعزیه کردن	ta'zīa kardan
conduct	رفتار	raftār
confectioner	شیرینی‌ساز	shīrīnīsāz
confederacy	معاهده	mu'āhida
to confess	اقرار کردن	iqrār kardan
confidence	اعتقاد	i'tiqād
confidentially	محرمانه	mahramāna

to confirm	تصدیق کردن	tasdīq kardan
to confiscate	ضبط کردن	zabt kardan
conformably	موافق	mavāfiq
confusion	شلوق	shulūq
to congratulate	تبریك کردن	tabrīk kardan
conjurer	ساحر	sāhir
to conquer	فتح کردن	fath kardan
to consent	راضی بودن	rāzī būdan
consolation	تسلی	tasallī
consul	قونسل	qūnsul
consulate	قونسلگری	qūnsulgarī
contagion	سرایت	sarāyat
contagious	مسری	musrī
content	راضی	rāzī
to contradict	ردّ کردن	radd kardan
contrary	ضدّ عکس	zidd, ᶜaks
contrivance	تدبیر	tadbīr
convalescence	شفا	shafā
convent	دیر	deir
conversation	صحبت	suhbat
cook	آشپز	āshpaz
to cook	پختن پز	pukhtan (paz)
cool	خنك	khunuk
copper	مس	mis
coppersmith	مسگر	misgar
copy	سواد	savād
cork	خوبِ پنبه	chūb-i pamba
corkscrew	پیچ	pīch

corn	غله	ghalla
corner	کنج	kunj
corporal	وکیل	vakīl
corpulent	چاق	chāq
to correct	تصحیح کردن	tas-hīh kardan
correspondence	مکاتبه	mukātiba
corridor	دالان	dālān
corrupt	خواب	kharāb
cost	قیمت	qīmat
cotton	پنبه	pamba
cough	سلفه	sulfa
to count	شمردن شمار	shumurdan (shumār)
counterfeit	ساختگی	sākhtagi
country	ولایت	vilāyat
countryseat	ییلاق	yeilāq
couplet (verse)	بیت	beit
courage	دلیری	dilīrī
courier	چاپار	chāpār
court	دربار	darbār
courtesan	جنده	jinda
cover	پوشش	pūshish
to cover	پوشاندن پوشان	pūshāndan (pūshān)
cow	گاو	gāv
coward	ترسو	tarsū
crab	خرچنگ	kharchang
crack	ترك	tarak
cradle	گهواره	gahvāra
cravat	گردن‌بند	gardanband
cream	خامه	khāma

to create	آفریدن آفرین	āfarīdan (āfarīn)
creator	خالق	khāliq
creature	مخلوق	makhlūq
credentials	اختیار نامه	ikhtīār nāma
creditor	طلب کار	talab-kār
crime	تقصیر	taqsīr
cripple	چلاغ	chulāgh
crooked	خم کج	kham, kaj
crop	حاصل	hāsil
to cross	عبور کردن	ʿubūr kardan
crow	کلاغ	kalāgh
crowd	جمعیت	jamʿīat
crown	تاج	tāj
to crucify	به صلیب زدن	bi salīb zadan
cruel	ظالم	zālim
cruelty	ظلم	zulm
to crush	خورد کردن	khurd kardan
to cry	داد زدن	dād zadan
crystal	بلور	bulūr
cucumber	خیار	khīār
cultivated	آباد	ābād
cultivation	زراعت	zarāʿat
cup	فنجان	finjān
cupboard	دولابچه	dūlābcha
cupola	گنبد	gumbad
curb	دهنه	dahana
curds and whey	ماست	māst
cure	علاج	ʿilāj
curiosity	کنج کاوی	kunj kāvī
curl	زلف	zulf

currants	سبزه	sabza
currier	دبّاغ	dabbāgh
currycomb	قشو	qashou
curse	لعنت	laʿnat
curtain	پرده	parda
cushion	بالش	bālish
custom	رسم	rasm
custom-house	گمرك خانه	gumruk-khāna
to cut	بريدن (بر)	burrīdan (burr)
cypress	سرو	sarv

D.

dagger	خنجر	khanjar
dam	سدّ	sadd
damage	خرابی	kharābī
,,	ضرر	zarar
Damascus	شام	Shām
damasked (steel)	جوهر دار	jouhar-dār
to dance	رقصيدن (رقص)	rakhsīdan (rakhs)
danger	خطر	khatar
dangerous	خطرناك	khatarnāk
daring	جرأت	jurʿat
dark	تاريك	tārīk
darkness	تاريكی	tārīkī
date (fruit)	خرما	khurmā
— (time)	تاريخ	tārīkh
daughter	دختر	dukhtar
day	روز	rūz
dead	مرده	murda

deaf	کر	kar
dealing	معامله	muʿāmala
dear (beloved)	عزیز	ʿazīz
— (expensive)	گران	girān
death	مرگ	marg
debt	قرض	qarz
debtor	بده کار	bidih kār
decanter	تنگ	tung
to decay	پوسیدن (پوس)	pūsīdan (pūs)
deceit	تقلّب	taqallub
to decorate	زینت دادن	zīnat dādan
decoration (order)	نشان	nishān
to deduct	کم کردن	kam kardan
deep	گود	goud
defeat	شکست	shikast
to defend	حمایت کردن	himāyat kardan
defendant	مدّعیٰ الیه	mudda'ā ileihi
degree	درجه	daraja
delicious	لذیذ	lazīz
delight	لذت	lazzat
to deliver	تسلیم کردن	taslīm kardan
deluge	طوفان	tūfān
demon	دیو	dīv
demon of the desert	غول بیابانی	ghūl-i bīābūnī
denial	انکار	inkār
dentist	دندان ساز	dandān-sāz
to depose (office)	معزول کردن	maʿzūl kardan
deposit	امانت	amānat
deputy	نایب	nāyib

derision	ریش خند	rīsh-khand
to descend	پایین آمدن	pāīn āmadan
to describe	تعریف کردن	taʿrīf kardan
description	بیان	beyān
desert	بیابان	bīābūn
deserving	سزاوار	sazāvār
desire	آرزو	ārzū
to despair	مایوس شدن	māyūs shudan
to despise	بهیچ نشمردن	bi hīch na shumurdan
destiny	بخت	bakht
to destroy	خراب کردن	kharāb kardan
detail	تفصیل	tafsīl
devil	شیطان	sheitān
dew	شبنم	shabnam
dialogue	گفتگو	guftugū
diamond	الماس	almās
diarrhoea	اسهال	isʿhāl
diary	روزنامه	rūznāma
— (of a journey)	سفر نامه	safar-nāma
dictionary	لغت	lughat
to die	مردن (میر)	murdan (mīr)
difference	فرق تفاوت	farq, tafāvut
different	جورِ دیگر	jūr-i dīgar
difficult	مشکل	mushkil
to dig	کندن (کن)	kandan (kan)
to digest	تحلیل کردن	tahlīl kardan
dignity	شان	shān
diligent	کارکن	kār-kun

to dine	شام خوردن	shām khurdan
dining-room	سفره خانه	sufra-khāna
dinner	شام	shām
direction	سمت	samt
directly	الآن	al ān
director	رئیس	raʿīs
dirt	کثافت	kasāfat
dirty	چرك , کثیف	chirk , kasīf
to discharge	جواب دادن	javāb dādan
discipline	انتظام	intizām
discontented	ناخوشنود	nā-khushnūd
to discover	پیدا کردن	peidā kardan
to disgrace	رسوا کردن	rusvā kardan
dish	دیس	dīs
— (food)	خوراك	khurāk
disinterested	بی غرض	bī-gharaz
to dismiss	مرخص کردن	murakhkhas kardan
disobedient	سرکش	sarkash
dispersed	متفرق	mutafarriq
displeased	کج خلق	kaj-khulq
dispute	دعوا	daʿvā
to dissolve	حل کردن	hall kardan
distance	مسافت	masāfat
distant	دور	dūr
to distribute	تقسیم کردن	taqsīm kardan
district	بلوك	bulūk
ditch	خندق	khandaq
ditto	ایضاً	eizan
to dive	غوطه خوردن	ghūta khurdan
to divide	قسمت کردن	qismat kardan

divine	آلهی	ilāhī
divorce	طلاق	talāq
to do	کردن (کن)	kardan (kun)
doctor	حکیم	hakīm
dog	سگ	sag
— (sporting)	طوله	tūla
— (greyhound)	تازی	tāzī
doll	عروسك	ʿarūsak
dome	گنبد	gumbad
domestic	خانگی	khānagī
domicile	منزل	manzil
door	در	dar
— (to shut the door)	در را پیش کردن	dar-rā pīsh kardan
— (to bolt the door)	در را چفت کردن	dar-rā chift kardan
— (to open the door)	در را وا کردن	dar-rā vā kardan
dot	نقطه	nuqta
double	دو لا	du lā
doubt	شك	shak
dough	خمیر	khamīr
dove	قمری	qumrī
down	پایین	pāīn
dragoman	مترجم	mutarjim
draper	بزاز	bazzāz
draft	برات	barāt
	حواله	havāla
draughtsboard	تختهء نرد	takhta-yi nard
to draw	کشیدن (کش)	kashīdan (kash)
drawer (furniture)	جعبه	jaʿba
drawers	زیر جامه	zīr-jāma
dreadful	مهیب	muhīb

to dream	خواب دیدن	khāb dīdan
dress	لباس	libās
to dress	رخت پوشیدن	rakht pūshīdan
to drill	مشق کردن	mashq kardan
to drink	خوردن (خور)	khurdan (khur)
to drip	چکیدن (چك)	chakīdan (chak)
to drive	راندن (ران)	rāndan (rān)
— (in a carriage)	سوار کالسکه رفتن	savār-i kālaska raftan
drop (of liquor)	قطره	qatra
	چکه	chaka
drowned	غرق	gharq
druggist	عطار	ʿattār
drum	طبل	tabl
»	بالابان	bālābān
drunk	مست	mast
dry	چشك	khushk
duck	اوردك	urdak
dumb	لال	lāl
dun (horse)	سمند	samand
dung	پهین	pahīn
dungeon	دستاخ خانه	dustākh-khāna
durability	دوام	davām
during	ما دام	mā dām
dust	گرد و خاك	gard u khāk
to dust	گرد گرفتن	gard giriftān
duster	دست مال	dastmāl
duty	تکلیف	taklīf
to dye	رنگ زدن	rang zadan
dynasty	سلسله	silsila

E.

each	هر یکی	har yakī
eagle	قره قوش	qara-qūsh
ear	گوش	gūsh
— (of corn)	خوشه	khūsha
early	زود	zūd
earring	گوشواره	gūshvāra
earth	زمین خاك	zamīn, khāk
earthenware	کوزهٔ	kūzaī
earthquake	زلزله	zalzala
ease	راحت	rāhat
easy	آسان	āsān
east	مشرق	mashriq
The East	مشرق زمین	mashriq-zamīn
to eat	خوردن (خور)	khurdan (khur)
ebony	آبنوس	ābnūs
edifice	عمارت	ʿimārat
to educate	تربیت کردن	tarbīat kardan
education	تربیت	tarbīat
effect	اثر	asar
egg	تخم	tukhm
— (fried)	تخمِ نیم رو	tukhm-i nīm-rū
— soft boiled	تخمِ نیم بند	tukhm-i nīm band
egotism	خود پرستی	khud-parasti
either-or	یا یا	yā…yā
elastic	جهنده	jahanda
elbow	مرفق	mirfaq
— (plur:)	مرافق	marāfiq

to elect	گزیدن (گزین)	guzīdan (guzīn)
elegant (in clothes)	خوش لباس	khush-libās
element	عنصر	ᶜunsur
— (plur)	عناصر	ᶜanāsir
elephant	فیل	fīl
elm	نارون	nārvan
eloquence	فصاحت	fasāhat
eloquent	فصیح	fasīh
embassy	سفارت کبری	safārat-i kubrā
to embezzle	خیانت کردن	khīānat kardan
to embrace	بغل گرفتن	baghal giriftan
embroidery	گلدوزی	guldūzī
emerald	زمرد	zumurrud
emery	سنباده	sumbāda
emetic	مستفرغ	mustafrigh
emperor	امپراطور	imparātūr
empress	امپراتریس	imparātrīs
employed	مشغول	mashghūl
empty	خالی	khālī
enamel	مینا	mīnā
enclosed (in a letter)	لفاً	laffan
end	آخر	ākhir
to end	تمام شدن	tamām shudan
enemy	دشمن	dushman
energy	شوق	shouq
engagement	وعده	vaᶜda
engine	ماشین	māshīn
engineer	مهندس	muhandis
English	انگلیس	inglīs
enough	بس	bas
»	کافی	kāfī

to enter	داخل شدن	dākhil shudan
envelope	پاکت	pākat
envions	حسود	hasūd
envirous	اطراف	atrāf
envy	حسد	hasad
equal	برابر	barābar
error	غلط	ghalat
to escape	رستن (ره)	rastan (rah)
especially	خصوصاً	khusūsan
etc	و غیره	va gheira
eternity (without beginning)	ازل	azal
— (without end)	ابد	abad
eunuch	خواجه آغا	khāja, āghā
Europe	فرنگستان	Farangistān
European	فرنگی	Farangī
evening	شام	shām
every	هر	har
ewer	آفتابه	āftāba
exact	درست	durust
to exaggerate	مبالغه کردن	mubālagha kardan
examination	امتحان	imtihān
example	مثل	masal
excellency	جناب عالی	janāb-i ʿalī
except	بغیر	bi gheir
exception	استثنا	istisnā
exchange (money)	صرف	sarf
to exchange	عوض کردن	ʿavaz kardan
excrement	گه	guh

excuse	عذر	ᶜuzr
executioner	میر غضب	mīr ghazab
exercise	مشق	mashg
existence	وجود	vujūd
existent	موجود	moujūd
to expect	منتظر بودن	muntazir būdan
to expel	بیرون کردن	bīrūn kardan
to expend	خرج کردن	kharj kardan
experience	تجربه	tajruba
expert	اهل خبره	ahl-i khibra
to explain	بیان کردن	beiān kardan
to export	بخارج بردن	bi khārij burdan
extra ordinary	فوق العاده	fouq al ᶜāda
eye	چشم	chashm
eyebrow	ابرو	abrū
eyeglass	عینك	ᶜeinak

F.

face	صورت	sūrat
facing	رو برو	rū bi rū
fact	حقیقت	haqīqat
factory	کارخانه	kārkhāna
to fade	پژمردن (پژمیر)	pajmurdan (pajmīr)
to faint	بی هوش شدن	bī hūsh shudan
fairy	پری	parī
faith	وفا	vafā
faithful	وفادار	vafādār
faithless	بی وفا	bī vafā
falcon	قوش	qūsh
to fall	افتادن (افت)	uftādan (uft)

false	دروغی	durūghī
fame	نام و ننگ	nām u nang
family	عیال و اطفال	ʿayāl u atfāl
famous	مشهور	mash-hūr
fan	باد بزن	bād-bizan
fanatic(al)	متعصّب	mutaʿassib
fancy	خیال	kheyāl
far	دور	dūr
farewell	وداع	vidāʿ
farrier	نعل بند	naʿl band
fast (well fixed)	محکم	muhkam
to fast	روزه گرفتن	rūza giriftan
fat (subst.)	پی	pī
— (adj.)	چاق	chāq
father	پدر والد	padar, vālid
fault	عیب تقصیر	ʿeib, taqsīr
favour	التفات	iltifāt
favourite	عزیز	ʿazīz
fayence	کاشی	kāshī
fear	ترس و باك	tars u bāk
to fear	ترسیدن (ترس)	tarsīdan (tars)
feast	مهمانی	mihmānī
feastday	عید	ʿīd (vulg. ʿeid)
feather	پر	par
fee	انعام	inʿām
to feed	پروردن (پرور)	parvardan (parvar)
feeling	حس	hiss
felt	نمد	namad
female	ماده	māda
fertile	حاصل ده	hāsil-dih

fetters	پا بند	pā-band
fever (intermittent)	نوبه	nouba
— (trembling)	تپ لرز	tap-i larz
few	کم	kam
field	صحرا	sahrā
— (in compositions)	زار	zār
fig	انجیر	anjīr
to fight	دعوی کردن	da'vā kardan
figure	شکل	shakl
to fill	پر کردن	pur kardan
to filter	صاف کردن	sāf kardan
filth	کثافت	kasāfat
filthy	کثیف	kasīf
finance	مالیات	mālīāt
to find	پیدا کردن	peidā kardan
fine	نازك	nāzuk
a fine	جریمانه	jarīmāna
to fine	جریمانه کردن	jarīmāna kardan
finger	انگشت	angusht
to finish	تمام کردن	tamām kardan
fire	آتش	ātash
— (to light the fire)	آتش روشن کردن	ātash roushan kardan
— (to put out the fire)	آتش خاموش کردن	ātash khāmūsh kardan
firewood	هیزم	hīzum
fireworks	آتش بازی	ātashbāzī
first	اول	avval

fish	ماهی	māhī
fist	مشت	musht
fitting	باندازه	bi andāza
to fix	نصب کردن	nasb kardan
flag	بیرق	beiraq
— vulg:	بیدق	beidaq
flame	شعله	shu'la
flattery	تملّق	tamalluq
flea	کهک	kahk
to flee	فرار کردن	farār kardan
flesh	گوشت	gūsht
flint	سنگ چقماق	sang-i chaqmāq
flock	گله رمه	gala, rama
flood	سیل	seil
flour	آرد	ārd
flowing	جاری	jārī
flower	گل	gul
flute	نی	nei
fly	مگس	magas
to fly	پریدن (پر)	parīdan (par)
foal	کره	kurra
foam	کف	kaf
fog	مه	mih
to fold	تا کردن	tā kardan
the following	ذیل	zeil
food	خوراك	khurāk
fool	خر	khar (ass.)
foot	پا	pā
for	برای	barāyi

to forbid	منع کردن	manᶜ kardan
forehead	پیشانی	pīshānī
foreign	غریب	gharīb
Foreign Affairs	امورِ خارجه	umūr-i khārija
forest	جنگل	jangal
forgery	ساختگی	sākhtagī
to forget	فراموش کردن	farāmūsh kardan
to forgive (بخش)	عفو کردن, بخشیدن	afv kardan, bakhshīdan (bakhsh)
fork	چنگال	changāl
form	صورت	sūrat
former (previous)	سابق	sābiq
fort	قلعه	qalaᶜ
fortunate	خوش بخت	khush-bakht
— (unfortunate)	بد بخت	bad-bakht)
fortune	بخت	bakht
fountain	فواره	favvāra
fowl	مرغ	murgh
fox	روباه	rūbāh
frame	قاب چهار چوبه	qāb, chahār-chūba
free	آزاد	āzād
freedom	آزادی	āzādī
freemason	فرامسون	farāmasūn
freeze	یخ بستن	yakh bastan
French	فرانسوی	farānsavī
fresh	تازه	tāza
Friday	جمعه	jumᶜa
friend	دوست	dūst
friendly	دوستانه	dūstāna

friendship	دوستی	dūstī
to frighten	ترسانیدن (ترسان)	tarsānīdan (tarsān)
frock	فستان	fistān
frog	قرباغه	qurbāgha
from	از	az
frontier	سرحدّ	sar-hadd
frost	سرما	sarmā
fruit	میوه	mīva
to fry	بریان کردن	birīān kardan
full	پر	pur
fun	تفرج	tafarruj
funny	مضحک	muzhik
fur	پوستین	pūstīn
furlough	مرخصی	murakhasī
furnace	تنور	tanūr
furniture	مبل و اسباب	mubl u asbāb
future	آینده	āyanda

G.

gall	زهره	zahra
gallnut	مازو	māzū
to gallop	دویدن (دو)	davīdan (dou)
— (causal)	دواندن (دوان)	davāndan (davān)
— (a horse)	تاختن (تاز)	tākhtan (tāz)
gambling	قمار بازی	qumār-bāzī
game	بازی	bāzī
gaol	حبس	habs
garden	باغ	bāgh
gardener	باغبان	bāghbān vulg: bāghbūn
garlic	سیر	sīr

garnet	لعل	laʿl
garter	جراب بند	jurāb band
gate	دروازه	darvāza
gate-keeper	دربان	darbān
gazelle	آهو	āhū
gelding	اخته	ākhta
general (army)	سرتیپ	sartīp
general (adjective)	عمومی	ʿumūmī
generation	پشت	pusht
gentle	ملایم	mulāyim
gentleman	نجیب	najīb
genuine	صحیح	sahīh
geography	جغرافیا	jughrāfīā
geometry	هندسه	handasa
ghost	روح	rūh
— (Holy Ghost)	روح القدس	Rūh al quds
gift	پیشکش	pīshkash
gilt	مطلا	mutallā
ginger	زنجبیل	zanjabīl
girl	دختر	dukhtar
to give	دادن (ده)	dādan (dih)
glass	شیشه	shīsha
— (wine glass)	گلاس	gilās
— (tea glass)	استقام	istaqām
— (looking glass)	آینه	āina
glory	جلال	jalāl
glue	سریشم	sirīshum
to go	رفتن (رو)	raftan (rou)
goat	بز	buz

God	خدا	Khudā
»	الله	Allāh
gold	طلا	tilā
»	زر	zar
goldsmith	زرگر	zargar
good	خوب	khūb
good-bye	خدا حافظ	khudā hāfiz
goods	مال	māl
goose	قاز	qāz
gospel	انجیل	anjīl
gourd	کدو	kadū
gout	نقرس	niqris
government	حکومت	hukūmat
governor	حاکم	hākim
gradually	کم کم	kam-kam
grain	دانه	dāna
grammar	صرف و نحو	sarf u nahv
grandfather	جدّ	jadd
grandmother	جدّه	jadda
grandvizier	صدر اعظم	Sadr aʿzam
grape	انگور	angūr
grass	علف	ʿalaf
grateful	حق شناس	haqq shanās
gratis	مفت	muft
grave (tomb)	قبر گور	qabr, gūr
gravel	ریگ	rīg
gray	خاکستری	khākistarī
— (horse)	قزل	qizil
grease	چربی	charbī

greasy	چرب	charb
great	بزرگ	buzurg
green	سبز	sabz
greens	سبزی	sabzī
greyhound	سگ تازی	sag-i tāzī
grief	غم	gham
to grind	سابیدن (ساب)	sābīdan (sāb)
grocer	بقال	baqqāl
groom	مهتر	mihtar
ground	زمین	zamīn
to grow (veget)	رستن (رو)	rustan rū
— (persons and animals)	بزرگ شدن	buzurg shudan
guarantee	ضمانت	zamānat
guard	کشیك	kashīk
guess	قیاس	qīās
guest	مهمان	mihmān
guide	بلد	balad
gulf (sea)	خلیج	khalīj
gun	تفنگ	tufang
— (double barrelled)	دو لوله	du lūla
— (breech loader)	تهپر	tahpur
— (muzzle loader)	دهن پر	dahan pur
gunner	توپچی	tūpchī
gut	روده	rūda
gutter	راه آب	rāh-i āb
gymnasium	زور خانه	zūr-khāna
gymnastics	ورزش	varzish
gypsum	گچ	gaj

gipsy	کولی	koulī

H.

habitation	مسکن	maskan
— (plur.)	مساکن	masākin
hail	تگرگ	tagarg
hair	مو	mū
half	نیم نصف	nīm, nisf
hall	ایوان	eivān
hammer	چکوش	chakush
hand	دست	dast
handful	مشت	musht
handkerchief	دست مال	dast māl
handle	دسته	dasta
to hang	آویزان کردن	āvīzān kardan
to happen	اتفاق افتادن	ittifāq uftādan
happy	خوش وقت	khush-vakht
harbour	لنگر گاه	langar-gāh
hard	سخت	sakht
harem	اندرون	andarūn
harm	ضرر	zarar
harness	یراق	yarāq
harvest	درو حاصل	dirou, hāsil
haste	عجله	ʿajala
hasty	دست پاچه	dast-pācha
hat	کلاه	kulāh
hatred	کین	kīn
haughtiness	غرور	ghurūr
haughty	مغرور	maghrūr
hawk	قوش	qūsh

hay	یونجه	yūnja
head	سر	sar
headache	درد سر	dard-i sar
health	صحت	sihhat
»	احوال	ahvāl
»	سلامتی	salāmatī
to hear	شنیدن (شنو)	shanīdan (shanou)
heart	دل	dil
heat	گرمی	garmī
heathen	کافر	kāfir
heaven	بهشت	bihisht
heavy	سنگین	sangīn
hedgehog	خار پشت	khār-pusht
heel	پاشنه	pāshna
height	بلندی	bulandī
heir	وارث	vāris
hell	دوزخ	dūzakh
»	جهنم	jahannam
helmet	خود	khūd
help	کمك	kumak
hen	مرغ	murgh
here	اینجا	īnjā
hero	بهادر	bahādur
hideous	زشت	zisht
high	بلند	buland
Highness	حضرت والا	hazrat-i vālā
hill	تپه	tapa
to hinder	منع کردن	manᶜ kardan
hire	کرایه	kirāya
history	تاریخ	tārīkh

to hit	زدن (زن)	zadan (zan)
hog	خوك	khūk
to hold	نگاه داشتن	nigāh dāshtan
hole	سوراخ	sūrākh
holiday	روز تعطيل	rūz-i taʿtīl
hollow	خالی	khālī
holsters	قبل	qubul
holy	مقدس	muqaddas
honest	درست كار	durust-kār
honey	عسل	ʿasal
honour	آبرو	ābrū
to honour	احترام كردن	ihtirām kardan
hoof	سم	sum
hook	قلاب	qullāb
hoopoe	هدهد	hudhud
	شانه سر	shāna-sar
hope	اميد	umīd
hopeful	اميدوار	umīdvār
hopeless	نااميد	nā-umīd
horizon	عفق	ʿufuq
horn	شاخ	shākh
horse	اسپ	asp
— (pack-horse)	يابو	yābū
horse-shoe	نعل	naʿl
horseman	سوار	savār
hospitable	مهمان دوست	mihmān-dūst
hospital	مريض خانه	marīz-khāna
hot	داغ	dāgh
hotel	مهمان خانه	mihmān-khāna
hour	ساعت	sāʿat

house	خانه	khāna
household	خانوار	khānavār
human	انسانی	insānī
humble	مظلوم	mazlūm
hunger	گرسنگی	gurusnagī
hungry	گرسنه	gurusna
— (vulg.)	گشنه	gushna
hunt	شکار	shikār
hunter	شکارچی	shikārchī
hurry	عجله	ʿajala
to hurt	رنجانیدن (رنجان)	ranjānīdan (ranjān)
husband	شوهر	shouhar
hyacinth	سنبل	sumbul
hyaena	کفتار	kaftār
hypocrisy	ریا	rīā
hypothesis	فرض	farz

I.

ibex	بزِ کوهی	buz-i kūhī
ice	یخ	yakh
idea	خیال	kheyāl
idiom	اصطلاح	istilāh
idiot	بی شعور	bī shuʿūr
idle	بی کار	bī-kār
idol	بت	but
if	اگر	agar
ignorant	نادان	nā dān
ill	نا خوش	nā-khush
illness	ناخوشی	nākhushī
illumination	چراغان	chirāghān
image	تمثیل	tamsīl

to imagine	تصور کردن	tasavvur kardan.
imitation (plur)	تقلید (تقالید)	taqlīd (taqālīd)
immediately	الآن	al ān
imperfect	ناقص	nāqis
imperial	شاهنشاهی	shāhinshāhī
to import (goods)	داخل کردن	dākhil kardan
importance	اهمیت	ahammīat
important	مهم	muhimm
impossible	غیر ممکن	gheir mumkin
improbable	دور	dūr
impure	نا پاك	nā-pāk
incense	بخور	bukhūr
inclination	میل	meil
income	مداخل	madākhil
to increase	افزودن (افزا)	afzūdan (afzā)
indeed	البته	albatta
independent	خود مختار	khud mukhtār
index	فهرست	fihrist
India	هند	Hind
»	هندوستان	Hindūstān
indigo	نیل	nīl
infancy	بچگی	bachagī
infant	بچه طفل	bacha, tifl
infantry	پیاده	pīāda
infection	سرایت	sirāyat
influence	نفوذ	nufūz
influenza	زکام فرنگی	zukkām-i farangī
information	اطلاع	ittilā^{c}
ingratitude	نمك بحرامی	namak bi harāmī
inhabitant	ساکن	sākin

inhabitant (plur.)	سکنه	sakana
inheritance	میراث	mīrās
inheritor	وارث	vāris
ink	مرکب	murakkab
inlaidwork	خاتم کار	khātim-kār
inn	مهمان خانه	mihmān-khāna
innocent	بی گناه	bī-gunāh
insect	جانور	jānvar
— (vulg.)		jūnavar
inside	اندرون	andarūn
to insist	اصرار کردن	isrār kardan
insolent	بی ادب	bī adab
instead	عوض	ʿavaz
instruction	تعلیم	taʿlīm
instrument	آلت	ālat
insult	فحش	fuhsh
to insult	فحش دادن	fuhsh dādan
insurance	بیمه	bīma
intellect	عقل	ʿaql
intention	مقصود	maqsūd
interesting	دل چسپ	dil-chasp
interference	مداخله	mudākhila
internal	داخلی	dākhilī
interpreter	مترجم	mutarjim
interval	فاصله	fāsila
intoxicated	مست	mast
intoxicating	مسکر	muskir
intronchment	سنگر	sangar
to introduce (to one another)	معرفی کردن	muʿarafī kardan
to intrust	سپردن (سپار)	supurdan (sipār)
inundation	سیل	seil

invention	ایجاد	ījād
»	اختراع	ikhtirāᶜ
inventory	سیاهه	sīāha
to invite	دعوت کردن	daᶜvat kardan
iron	آهن	āhan
irregular (troops)	غیر نظامی	gheir-nizāmī
irrigation	آبیاری	ābyārī
island	جزیره	jazīra
itch	خارش	khārish
ivory	عاج	āj
— (of the walrus)	شیر ماهی	shīr-māhī
ivy	لبلب	lablab

J.

jackall	شغال	shaghāl
jade	یشم	yashm
jam	مربا	murabbā
jealousy	رشك	rashk
Jesus	حضرت عیسی	Hazrat-i ᶜIsā
Jew	یهودی	Yahūdī
jockey	چابك سوار	chābuk-savār
to join	پیوستن (پیوند)	peivastan (peivand)
joint	بند	band
journal	روز نامه	rūz-nāma
journey	سفر	safar
joy	خوشی	khushī
Judas-tree	ارغوان	arghavān
judge (coranic law)	حاکم شرع	hākim-i sharᶜ
» (civil law)	حاکم عرف	hākim-i ᶜurf
judgment	حکم	hukm

jug	کوزه	kūza
to jump	جستن (جه)	jastan (jah)
just	عادل	ʿādil
justice	عدل انصاف	ʿadl, insāf

K.

to keep	نگاه داشتن	nigāh dāshtan
keeper	مستحفظ	mustahfiz
keepsake	یادگار	yādgār
kettle	کتری	katrī
key	کلید	kalīd
— (of a carriage)	آچار	āchār
to kick	لگد زدن	lagad zadan
— (vulg.)		laghat zadan
to kill	کشتن (کش)	kushtan (kush)
kind (species)	قسم	qism
— (plur.)	اقسام	aqsām
kind (friendly)	مهربان	mihribān
king	پادشاه	pādishāh
»	شاه	shāh
»	ملك	malik
kiss	بوسه	būsa
— (vulg.)	ماچ	māch
kitchen	آشپز خانه	āshpaz khāna
knee	زانو	zānū
to kneel	زانو نشستن	zānū nishastan
knife	کارد	kārd
— (penknife)	چاقو	chāqū
to knit	بافتن (باف)	bāftan (bāf)
to knock	کوبیدن (کوب)	kūbīdan (kūb)

knot	گره	girih
to knot	گره زدن	girih zadan
to know	دانستن (دان)	dānistan (dān)
knowledge	دانش علم	dānish, ilm
known	معلوم	maʿlūm

L.

labour	کار	kār
labourers	عمله فعله	ʿamala, faʿala
lace	تورى	tūrī
ladder	نردبان	nardubān
lady	خانم	khānum
lake	دریاچه	daryācha
lamb	بره	barra
lame	لنك	lang
lamentation	ناله	nāla
lamp	چراغ	chirāgh
lance	نیزه	neiza
lancet	نیشتر	nīshtar
land	زمین	zamīn
lane	کوچه	kūcha
language	زبان	zabān
lantern	فانوس	fānūs
large	بزرگ	buzurg
lark	چکاوك	chakāvuk
last	آخر	ākhir
late	دیر	dīr
latitude	عرض	ʿarz
to laugh	خندیدن (خند)	khandīdan (khand)
laughable	مضحك	muzhik
laughter	خنده	khanda

laundress	رخت‌شور	rakhtshūr
law	قانون	qānūn
coranic law	شرع	shar^{c}
common law	عرف	^{c}urf
lawcourt	دیوان خانه	divān-khāna
lawsuit	مرافعه	murāfa^{c}a
lawn	چمن	chaman
laxative	مسهل	mus^{c}hil
to lay	گذاشتن (گذار)	guzāshtan (guzār)
lazy	تنبل	tambal
lead	سرب	surb
leaf	برگ ورق	barg, varaq
lean	لاغر	lāghir
to lean	تکیه دادن	takīa dādan
to learn	یاد گرفتن	yād giriftan
learned	عالم	^{c}ālim
learning	علم	^{c}ilm
leather	چرم تیماج	charm, tīmāj
leave	اذن	izn
to leave	ترک کردن	tark kardan
leech	زالو	zālū
left	چپ	chap
leg	پا	pā
legation	سفارت	safārat
legible	خوانا	khānā
leisure	فرصت	fursat
lemon	لیمو	līmū
lemonade	شربت لیمو	sharbat-i līmū
to lend	امانت دادن	amānat dādan
length	طول	tūl

lentils	عدس	ʿadas
leopard	پلنگ	palang
less	کمتر	kamtar
lesson	درس	dars
letter (epistle)	کاغذ	kāghaz
— (alphab.)	حرف	harf
lettuce	کاهو	kāhū
lexicon	لغت	lughat
liar	دروغ گو	durūgh-gū
liberality	سخاوت	sakhāvat
liberty	آزادی	āzādī
library	کتب خانه	kutub-khāna
to lick	لیسیدن (لیس)	līsīdan (līs)
lid	سر پوش	sar-pūsh
lie	دروغ	durūgh
to lie (mentir)	دروغ گفتن	durūgh guftan
to lie (coucher)	خوابیدن (خواب)	khābīdan (khāb)
lieutenant	نایب	nāyib
life	زندگی	zindagī
lifetime	عمر	ʿumr
to lift	بلند کردن	buland kardan
light (subst.)	نور	nūr
— (adj.)	سبک	sabuk
to light	روشن کردن	roushan kardan
lightning	برق	barq
like	مثل	misl
to like	پسند کردن	pasand kardan
likeness	شباهت	shabāhat
lily	زنبق	zambaq
lime	آهک	āhak

limit	حدّ	hadd
line	خطّ	khatt
linen	کتان	kattān
lining	استر	astar
linseed	بزرك	bazrak
lion	شیر	shīr
lip	لب	lab
list	فهرست	fihrist
to listen	گوش دادن	gūsh dādan
lithography	چاپ	chāp
litter (travelling)	تخت روان	takht-i ravān
little	خورده	khurda
to live	زنده بودن	zinda būdan
liver	جگر	jigar
load	بار	bār
local	محلی	mahallī
lock	قفل	qufl
— (vulg.)		(qulf)
locust	ملخ	malakh
logic	منطق	mantiq
long	دراز	dirāz
to look	نگه کردن	nigāh kardan
loose	شل	shul
to lose	گم کردن	gum kardan
loss	ضرر	zarar
lost	گم	gum
loud	بلند	buland
louse	شپش	shipish
love	عشق	ʿishq
to love	دوست داشتن	dūst dāshtan

to be in love	عاشق بودن	ʿāshiq būdan
lover	عاشق	ʿāshiq
low	پست	past
lucerne (hay)	یونجه	yūnja
luck	بخت	bakht
luggage	اسباب	asbāb
lunar	قمری	qamarī
lunatic	دیوانه	dīvāna
lunch	نهار	nahār
lung	شش	shush
luxury	عیش	ʿeish

M.

mace	گرز	gurz
»	چماق	chumāgh
mad	دیوانه	dīvāna
madness	دیوانگی	dīvānagī
magic	جادوگری	jādū-garī
magnet	آهن ربا	āhan-rubā
magpie	زاغ	zāgh
mail (armour)	زره	zira
maimed	چلاق	chulāgh
maize	ذرت	zurrat
majesty	اعلیحضرت	aʿlāhazrat
major	یاور	yāvar
to make	ساختن (ساز)	sākhtan (sāz)
male	نر	nar
man (kind)	آدم	ādam
»	انسان	insān
— (plur.)	ناس	nās
— (male)	مرد	mard

man (plur. men)	مردها	mardhā
— » people)	مردم	mardum
mane	یال	yāl
mange	خارش	khārish
manger	آخور	ākhur
manna	گز	gaz
— (biblical)	من	mann
manner	طور	tour
— (plur.)	اطوار	atvār)
manœuvres	جنگ هفت لشگر	jang-i haft lashgar
manuscript (adject)	خطی	khattī
many	بسیار خیلی	bisyār, kheilī
map	نقشه	naqsha
marble	مرمر	marmar
to march	کوچ کردن	kūch kardan
mare	مادیان	mādīan
mark	نشان علامت	nishān, ʿalāmat
to mark	علامت گذاشتن	ʿalāmat guzāshtan
market	بازار	bāzār
marriage	عروسی	ʿarūsī
marrow (bone)	مغز	maghz
marrow (vegetable)	کدوچه	kadūcha
to marry (a woman)	زن گرفتن	zan giriftan
» (a man)	شوهر کردن	shouhar kardan
martingale	سینه بند	sīna-band
martyr	شهید	shahīd
masculine	مذکر	muzakkar
mason	بنّا	bannā
massacre	قتل	qatl
mast (of a tent)	دیرك	dīrak

master	آقا	āghā
mat	حصیر	hasīr
match (lucifer)	کبریت	kibrīt
— (wax match)	شمعچه	sham'cha
mattress	دوشك	dūshak
mausoleum	مقبره	maqbara
meadow	چمن	chaman
meal	غذا	ghazā
meaning	معنی	ma'nī
measles	سرخك	surkhak
measure	اندازه	andāza
meat	گوشت	gūsht
to meddle	مداخله کردن	mudākhila kardan
mediation	واسطه	vāsita
medicine	دوا	davā
medlar	ازگیل	azgīl
to meet	ملاقات کردن	mulāqāt kardan
meeting	مجلس	majlis
melody	نوا آهنگ	navā, āhang
melon	گرمك	garmak
	خربوزه	kharbūza
— (water melon)	هندوانه	hindavāna
— (vulg.)		handūna
to melt	گداختن (گداز)	gudākhtan (gudāz)
memorandum	یاد داشت	yād-dāsht
memory	یاد	yād
»	خاطر	khātir
to mend	تعمیر کردن	ta'mīr kardan
mentioned	مذکور	mazkūr
merchant	تاجر	tājir
— (plur.)	تجار	tujjār

merciful	رحیم	rahīm
merciless	بی رحم	bī rahm
mercury	جیوه	jīva
message	پیغام	peighām
metal	فلز	filiz
metre (verse)	وزن	vazn
middle	میان وسط	mīān, vasat
mighty	توانا	tavānā
mild	ملایم	mulāyim
military	نظامی	nizāmī
milk	شیر	shīr
milkpot	شیردان	shīrdān
mill	آسیا	āsyā
millet	ارزن	arzan
minarat	مناره	manāra
mind	خاطر	khātir
mine	معدن	maᶜdan
minister	وزیر	vazīr
ministry	وزارت	vazārat
mint (for coinage)	زراب خانه	zarrāb-khāna
» (plant)	نعنا	naᶜnā
minute (time)	دقیقه	daqīqa
minutely	با دقت	bā diqqat
miracle	معجزه	muᶜjiza
mirage	آب یزید	āb-i Yazīd
mirror	آینه	āina
mischief	شیطانی	sheitānī
miser	بخیل	bakhīl
miserable	پریشان	parīshān
misfortune	بلا	balā

to miss (the aim)	خطا کردن	khatā kardan
missionary	کشیش مرسل	kashish, mursil
mist	مه	mih
mistake	غلط	ghalat
mistrustful	بدگمان	bad-gumān
to mix	امیختن (امیز)	āmīkhtan (āmīz)
»	قطی کردن	qātī kardan
mixed	مخلوط قاطی	makhlūt, qātī
moat	خندق	khandaq
mockery	ریش خند	rīsh-khand
modest	شرم سار	sharm-sār
moist	نم تر	nam, tar
moisture	رطوبت	rutūbat
moment	آن	ān
money	پول	pūl
money-changer	صراف	sarrāf
monkey	میمون	meimūn
monopoly	انحصار	inhisār
month	ماه	māh
— (arabic)	شهر	(shahr)
moon	ماه	māh
moonlight	مهتاب	mahtāb
morals	اخلاق	akhlāq
more	بیشتر	bīshtar
morning	صبح	subh
morter	هاونگ	hāvang
mosque	مسجد	masjid
mosquito	پسه	pasha
most	اکثر	aksar
moth	بید	bīd

mother	مادر	mādar
mother of pearl	صدف	sadaf
motion	حرکت	harakat
— (plur.)	حرکات	harakāt
to mount	سوار شدن	savār shudan
mountain	کوه	kūh
mourning	تعزیه دری	taʿzīa-dārī
mouse	موش	mūsh
mouth	دهن	dahan
to move (trans.)	حرکت دادن	harakat dādan
— (intrans.)	حرکت کردن	harakat kardan
much	خیلی, بسیار	kheilī, bisyār
mud	گل	gil
mulberry	توت	tūt
mule	قاطر	qātir
mule-driver	قاطرچی	qātirchī
muleteer	چاروادار	chārvadār
murder	قتل	qatl
mushroom	قارچ	qārch
music	ساز	sāz
musician	مطرب	mutrib
musk	مشك	mishk
musket	تفنگ	tufang
musketeer	تفنگچی	tufangchī
muslin	ململ	malmal
mustachios	سبیل	sibīl
mustard	خردل	khardal
mute	لال	lāl
mutineer	یاغی	yāghī
mutiny	طغیان	tughyān

mutton	گوشت گوسفند	gūsht-i gūsfand
muzzle-loader	دهن پر	dahan-pur
mystic	صوفی	sūfī
mysticism	تصوف	tasavvuf

N.

nail (finger)	ناخن	nākhun
— (of iron or wood)	میخ	mīkh
naked	لخت	lukht
name	اسم	ism
— (plur.)	اسامی	asāmī
named	نام	nām
namely	یعنی	yaʿnī
napkin	دستمال	dast-māl
narcissus	نرگس	nargis
narrow	تنگ	tang
nasty	مکروح	makrūh
nation	ملّت	millat
natural	طبیعی	tabīʿī
nature	طبعیت	tabʿīat
near	نزدیک, قریب	nazdīk, qarīb
nearly	تقریباً	taqrīban
necessary	لازم	lāzim
neck	گردن	gardan
necktie	گردن بند	gardan-band
nectarine	شلیل	shalīl
to need	لازم داشتن	lāzim dāshtan
needle	سوزن	sūzan
negation	انکار	inkār
neglect	غفلت	ghaflat

negro	زنگی	zangī
vulg: negro man slave	کاکا سیاه	kākā siāh
vulg: slave girl	دده سیاه	dada siāh
to neigh	شیهه زدن	sheiha zadan
neighbour	همسایه	ham-sāya
neighbourhood	همسایگی	ham-sāyagī
neither-nor	نه نه	na-na
nephew (brother's son)	برادر زاده	barādar zada
— (sister's son)	همشیره زاده	hamshīra-zāda
nest	لونه	lūna
net	توره	tura
neutral	بی طرف	bī-taraf
neutrality	بی طرفی	bī-tarafī
new	نو, تازه	nou, tāza
news	خبر	khabar
nice	مرغوب	marghūb
niche	طاقچه	tāqcha
niece (the same as nephew)		
night	شب	shab
nightingale	بلبل	bulbul
no	نه خیر	na-kheir
noble	شریف, نجیب	sharīf, najīb
nobody	هیچ کس	hīch-kas
noise	صدا	sadā
nomads	ایلات	īlāt
nom de plume	تخلّص	takhallus
noon	ظهر	zuhr
north	شمال	shamāl
north-pole	قطب شمال	qutb-i shamāl
nose (obsol.)	دماغ (بینی)	damāgh (bīnī)

nosebag (of a horse)	توبره	tūbra
note (letter)	رقعه	ruqᶜa
nothing	هیچ نه	hīch-na
to nourish	پروردن (پرور)	parvardan (parvar)
novelty	تازگی	tāzagī
now	حالا	hālā
numbed	بی حس	bī hiss
number	عدد	ᶜadad
numerous	متعدّد	mutaᶜaddid
nun	راهبه	rāhiba
nurse	دایه	dāya (vulg. tāya)
nut (hazelnut)	فندق	funduq
— (walnut)	گردو	girdū
— (cocoanut)	نارگیل	nārgīl
nutmeg	جوز	jouz

O.

oak	بلوط	ballūt
oar	پارو	pārū
oath	قسم	qasam
»	سوگند	sougand
obedience	اطاعت	itāᶜat
obliged (grateful)	ممنون	mamnūn
obscene	فاحش	fāhish
to observe	ملاحظه کردن	mulāhaza kardan
obstacle	مانع	māniᶜ
obvious	پیدا, ظاهر	peidā, zāhir
occasion	موقع	mouqaᶜ
occasionally	گاه گاه	gāh-gāh
occident	مغرب	maghrib
occupation	مشغولیت	mashghūlīat

occupied	مشغول	mashghūl
to occur	واقع شدن	vāqi^{c} shudan
ocean	بحرِ محیط	bahr-i muhīt
ode	غزل	ghazal
to offend	رنجانیدن (رنجان)	ranjānīdan (ranjān)
offer	تقدیم	taqdīm
office	مأموریت	ma^{c}mūrīat
— (place of business)	دفتر	daftar
officer	صاحب منصب	sāhib mansab
official	رسمی	rasmī
officially	رسماً	rasman
often	خیلی	kheilī
oil	روغن	roughan
castor oil	روغن چراغ	roughan chirāgh
olive oil	روغنِ زیتون	roughan-i zeitūn
linseed oil	روغنِ بزرك	roughan-i bazrak
kerosine oil	نفت	naft
oily	روغنی	roughanī
old (persons or animals)	پیر	pīr
— (things)	کهنه	kuhna
olive	زیتون	zeitūn
onager (wild ass)	گورِ خر	gūr-i khar
once	یك دفعه	yak daf^{c}a
onion	پیاز	pīāz
only	فقط	faqat
onyx	سنك سلیمانی	sang-i suleimānī
open	باز, وا	bāz, vā

to open	وا کردن	vā kardan
operation	عمل کاری	ᶜamalkārī
opinion	رئی	raī
opium	تریاك	taryāk
opposite	رو برو	rū bi rū
opposition	مخالفت	mukhālifat
to oppress	ظلم کردن	zulm kardan
oppression	ظلم	zulm
oppressor	ظالم	zālim
orange	پرتقال	purtuqāl
— (tangerine)	نارنگی	nārangī
— (bitter or.)	نارنج	nāranj
orangery	نارنجستان	nāranjistān
order	نظم	nazm
— (command)	حکم, فرمان	hukm, farmān
to order	فرمودن (فرما)	farmūdan (farmā)
ordinary	عادی	ᶜādī
orient	مشرق زمین	mashriq-zamīn
oriental	مشرق زمینی	mashriq-zamīnī
origin	اصل	asl
original	اصلی	aslī
ornament	زینت	zīnat
ornamented	مزین	muzayyan
orphan	یتیم	yatīm
orthography	املا	imlā
ostrich	شتر مرغ	shutur-murgh (camel bird)
other	دیگر	dīgar
otter	سگ آبی	sag-i ābī
ottoman	عثمانی	ᶜusmānī

outpost	قراول	qarāvul
outside	بیرون	bīrūn
oval	تخمِ مرغی	tukhm-i murghī
oven	کوره	kūra
overseer	ناظر	nāzir
to overwhelm	غالب شدن	ghālib shudan
to owe	بده کار بودن	bidih-kār būdan
owl	جغد	jughd
owner	صاحب	sāhib
ox	گاو	gāv
oyster	صدف	sadaf

P.

pace	قدم	qadam
to pack	بستن (بند)	bastan (band)
pack-horse	یابو	yābū
packing-needle	جوال دوز	javāl-dūz
packsaddle	پالان	pālān
padlock	قفل	qufl
— (vulg.)		qulf
page	صفحه	safha
— (boy)	غلام بچه	ghulām bacha
pail	دلو, سطل	dalv, satl
pain	درد	dard
pains	زحمت	zahmat
paint	رنگ	rang
to paint	نقاشی کردن	naqqāshī kardan
painter	نقاش	naqqāsh
pair	جفت	juft
palace	عمارت	ʿimārat
pale	کمرنگ	kamrang

palm tree	نخل	nakhl
— (date-tree)	درخت خرما	dirakht-i khurmā
pan	تاوه	tāva
panther	پلنگ	palang
paper	کاغذ	kāghaz
parade	سان	sān
parade-ground	میدان مشق	meidān-i mashq
paradise	بهشت , فردوس	bihisht, firdous
paragraph	فصل	fasl
— (plur.)	فصول	fusūl
parasang (4 miles)	فرسخ , فرسنگ	farsakh, farsang
parasol	آفتاب گیر	āftāb-gīr
parcel	بسته	basta
pardon	عفو	ʿafv
to beg pardon	عذر خواستن	ʿuzr khāstan
pardon!	ببخشید	bibakhshīd!
parents	والدین	vālidein
parliament (members of)	وکلای ملّت	vukalā-yi millat
parsee	گبر	gabr
parsley	جعفری	jaʿfarī
part	قسمت	qismat
partiality	طرفداری	taraf-dārī
particular	مخصوص	makhsūs
partner	شریك	sharīk
partnership	شراکت	sharākat
pass (mountain)	گردنه , کوتل	gardana, kūtal
to pass	گذشتن (گذر)	guzashtan (guzar)
passenger	مسافر	musāfir
passport	تذکره , باشپورت	tazkara, bāshpurt
past	گذشته	guzashta

pasture	چراگاه	charā-gāh
to pasture	چریدن (چر)	charīdan (char)
to patch	وصله کردن	vasla kardan
patience	صبر	sabr
patriot	وطن پرست	vatan-parast
pattern	نمونه	namūna
pavement	سنگ فرش	sang-farsh
pavillion	کلاه فرنگی	kulāh-i farangī
pawn	گرو	girou
to pay	پول دادن	pūl dādan
pea	نخود فرنگی	nukhud-i farangī
peace	صلح	sulh
peach	هلو	hullū
peacock	طاوس	tāūs
pear	گلابی	gulābī
pearl	مروارید	murvārīd
peasant	دهاتی, رعیت	dahātī, raʿīat
pebble	ریگ	rīg
peddler	خورده فروش	khurda-furūsh
to peel	پوست کندن (کن)	pūst kandan (kan)
peg	میخ	mīkh
pelican	مرغ سقّا	murgh-i saqqā
pen	قلم	qalam
pencil	مداد	midād
pendulum	لنگر	langar
peninsula	نیم جزیره	nīm-jazīra
pension	مستمری	mustamarrī
people	مردم	mardum
pepper	فلفل	filfil

peppermint	نعنا	naʿnā
(5) percent	صد و (پنج)	sad u (panj)
perfect	کامل	kāmil
perfume	خوسبوی, عطر	khushbūī, ʿatr
perhaps	شاید	shāyad
to perish	هلاك شدن	halāk shudan
permission	اذن	izn
to permit	گذاشتن (گذار)	guzāshtan (guzār)
perquisite	مداجل	madākhil
Persia	ایران	Irān
Persian	ایرانی	Irānī
— (language)	فارسی	fārsī
person	شاخص	shakhs
to perspire	عرق کردن	ʿaraq kardan
petition	عرض	ʿarz
petitioner	عارض	ʿāriz
petroleum	نفت	naft
phaeton	درشکه	durushka
pheasant	قره‌قاول	qaraqāvul
philosopher	حکیم آلهی	hakīm-i Illāhī
philosophy	حکمت, فلسفه	hikmat, falsafa
photograph	عکس	ʿaks
photographer	عکّاس	ʿakkās
physician	طبیب, حکیم	tabīb, hakīm
to pick	چیدن (چین)	chīdan (chīn)
pickles	ترشی	turshī
pick-pocket	جیب بر	jīb-burr
picture	تصویر	tasvīr
piebald	ابلق	ablaq
piece	تکه	tikka

to pierce	سفتن	suftan
pig	خوک , گراز	khūg, gurāz
pigeon	کبوتر , کفتر	kabūtar kaftar
pilgrim (to Mecca)	حاجی	hājī
— plur.	حجاج	hajāj
— (to other shrines)	زوّار	zavvār
pilgrimage	حج , زیارت	hajj, zīārat
pill	حب	habb
pillage	چپو	chapou
pillar	ستون	sutūn
pillow	بالش	bālish
pin	سنجاق	sanjāq
pine-tree	کاج	kāj
pink (flower)	میخک	mīkhak
pink (colour)	پشت گلی	pusht-i gulī
pious	دیانت دار	dīānat-dār
pipe (hubble-bubble)	قلیان	qalyān
— (turkish)	چپق	chupukh
— (tube)	لوله	lūla
pipe-clay	گل سفید	gil-i safid
pistachio	پسته	pista
pistol	طپانچه	tapāncha
pit	چاه	chāh
pity (sympathy)	رحم	rahm
it is a pity	افسوس است	afsūs ast
place	جا	jā
plague	طاعون	tāʿūn
plain	صحرا	sahrā
plaintiff	مدّعی	muddaʿī
to plait	بافتن (باف)	bāftan (bāf)

plane	رنده	randa
plane-tree	چنار	chinār
planet	سیاره	seyyāra
plant	سبزی	sabzī
plaster	گچ	gaj
— (medical)	مرحم	marham
plate	بشقاب	bushqāb
platform	سکو	sakkū
play	بازی	bāzī
to be pleased	پسندیدن (پسند)	pasandīdan (pasand)
if you please	التفات کرده	iltifāt karda
pleasure	عیش	ʿeish
plenipotentiary	وزیر مختار	vazīr mukhtār
plenty	فراوان	farāvān
plough	خیش	khīsh
to pluck	چیدن (چین)	chīdan (chīn)
plum	آلو	ālū
plunder	چپو	chapou
pocket	جیب	jīb
poem	شعر, نظم	shiʿr, nazm
poet	شاعر	shāʿir
poison	زهر	zahr
police	پلیس	pulīs
polite	باادب	bā adab
politeness	ادب	adab
politics	پلیتیك	pulītīk
pomegranate	انار	anār
pomp	حشمت	hashmat
pond	حوض	houz
pony	یابو	yābū

poor	فقیر	faqīr
poplar	تبریزی	tabrīzī
poppy	خشخاش	khashkhāsh
population	جمعیت	jamʿīat
porcupine	جوجه تیغه	jūja tīgha
porter	دربان	darbān
— (carrier)	حمال	hammāl
portmanteau	یاخدان	yakhdān
portrait	شبیه, تمثال	shabīh, timsāl
to possess	داشتن (دار)	dāshtan (dār)
possible	ممکن	mumkin
post	چاپار	chapar
postage-stamp	تمبر	tambr (timbre)
post-office	پوست خانه	pūst-khāna
pot	کاسه	kāsa
— (earthenwar)	کوزه	kūza
potato	سیب زمینی	sīb-i zamīnī
potter	کوزه گر	kūza-gar
to pound	کوبیدن (کوب)	kūbīdan (kūb)
to pour	ریختن (ریز)	rīkhtan (rīz)
poverty	فقر	faqr
powder	سفوف	sufūf
— (gun p.)	باروت	bārūt
power	زور	zūr
praise	تعریف	taʿrīf
to pray	نماز خواندن	namāz khāndan
prayer	نماز	namāz
preacher	واعظ	vāʿiz
preaching	وعظ	vaʿz
precious	قیمتی	qīmatī

precipice	پرت گاه	part-gāh
preface	دیباچه	dībācha
to prefer	ترجیح دادن	tarjīh dādan
pregnant	آبستن	ābastan
to prepare	حاضر کردن	hāzir kardan
preparations	تدارك	tadāruk
presence	حضور	huzūr
present (adjective)	حاضر	hāzir
— (gift)	پیشکش	pīshkash
to preserve	نگاه داشتن	nigāh dāshtan
— (fruit)	مربا کردن	murabbā kardan
press (printer's)	مطبع	matbaᶜ
— (Minister of the Press)	وزیر انطباعات	vazīr-i intibāᶜāt
to press	فشاردن (فشار)	fishārdan (fishār)
pretext	بهانه	bahāna
pretty	قشنك	qashang
to prevent	مانع شدن	māniᶜ shudan
previous	سابق	sābiq
price	قیمت	qīmat
pride	غرور	ghurūr
priest (muhammedan)	ملا	mullā
— (christian)	کشیش	kashīsh
prince	شاهزاده	shāhzāda
— (vulg.)		shāzda
princess	شاهزاده خانم	shāzda khānum
to print	چاپ کردن	chāp kardan
prison	حبس	habs
	دستاخ خانه	dustākh-khāna
prisoner	محبوس	mahbūs
— (of war)	اسیر	asīr

privilege	امتیاز	imtīāz
probably	احتمال میرود	ihtimāl mīravad
to procure	پیدا کردن	peidā kardan
produce	حاصل	hāsil
profession	پیشه	pīsha
professor	معلّم	mu'allim
progress	ترقی	taraqqī
promenade	گردش	gardish
to promise	وعده کردن	va'da kardan
pronunciation	تلفّظ	talaffuz
»	لهجه	lahja
proof	دلیل	dalīl
property	ملک	milk
prophet	پیغمبر	peighambar
prose	نثر	nasr
prostitute	جنده	jinda
to protect	حمایت کردن	himāyat kardan
protection	حمایت	himāyat
protocol	صورت مجلس	sūrat-i majlis
proud	مغرور	maghrūr
proverb	مثل	masal
provident	دور اندیش	dūr-andīsh
province	مملکت	mamlikat
»	ولایت	vilāyat
provisions	خوراک	khurāk
prudence	هوش	hūsh
prudent	هوشیار	hūshyār
psalm	زبور	zabūr
puberty	بلوغ	bulūgh

public	عام	ʿāmm
public-house	میخانه	mei-khāna
pudding	شیرینی	shīrīnī
to pull	کشیدن (کش)	kashīdan (kash)
pulpit	منبر	mambar
pulse	نبض	nabz
pumice-stone	سنگ پا	sang-i pā
pump	طلمبه	tulumba
pumpkin	کدو	kadū
punctually	بوقت	bi vakht
to punish	تنبیه کردن	tambīh kardan
punishment	تنبیه	tambīh
pupil	شاگرد	shāgird
pure	پاك, خالص	pāk, khālis
purgative	مسهل	mus-hil
purgatory	اعراف	iʿrāf
purple	بنفشه رنگ	binafsha-rang
purpose	مقصود	maqsūd
purse	کیسه	kīsa
to pursue	تعقیب کردن	taʿqīb kardan
to push	تکان دادن	takān dādan
to put	گذاشتن (گذار)	guzāshtan (guzār)
— (nearly obsolete)	نهادن (نه)	nihādan (nih)
to put on (clothes)	پوشیدن (پوش)	pūshīdan (pūsh)
to put out (a light)	خاموش کردن	khāmūsh kardan

Q.

quail	بلدرچین	baldarchīn
quality	خصلت	khaslat
quantity	مقدار	miqdār
quarantine	کرنتین	karantīn

quarrel	دعوی	daᶜvā
quarry	معدنِ سنگ	maᶜdan-i sang
quarter	ربع, چهاریک	rubᶜ, chahār-yak
quatrain	رباعی	rubāᶜī
queen	ملکه	malika
queer	غریب	gharīb
question	سؤال	suᶜāl
— (affair)	مسأله	masᶜala
to question	پرسیدن (پرس)	pursīdan (purs.)
quick	زود	zūd
quicksilver	جیوه, سیماب	jīva, sīmāb
quiet	آرام	ārām
quietly	یاواش	yāvāsh
quilt	لحاف	lahāf
quince	به	bih
quinine	گنه گنه	gana-gana
quite	تماماً	tamāman

R.

rabbit (tame)	خرگوش خانگی	khargūsh-i khānagī
racing	اسپ دوانی	asp-davānī
radish	تربچه	turbcha
rafter	تیر	tīr
rag	کهنه	kuhna
railing	دست انداز	dast-andāz
railroad	راهِ آهن	rāh-i āhan
rain	باران, بارش	bārān, bārish
to rain	باریدن (بار)	bārīdan (bār)

ram	قوچ	qūch
ramparts	خاکریز	khākrīz
rank	منصب	mansab
rare	کم یاب	kam-yāb
rarely	ندرةً	nudratan
rat	موش سلطانیه	mūsh-i Sultānīa [1])
raw	خام	khām
razor	تیغ دلاکی	tīgh-i dallākī
to reach	رسیدن (رس)	rasīdan (ras)
to read	خواندن (خوان)	khāndan (khān)
ready	حاضر	hāzir
real	صحیح	sahīh
really	حقیقةً	haqīqatan
to reap	درو کردن	dirou kardan
reason	عقل	ʿaql
— (cause)	سبب	sabab
rebel	یاغی	yāghī
rebellion	طغیان	tughyān
to receive	گرفتن (گیر)	giriftan (gīr)
reception	پذیرائی	pazīrāī
to reckon	حساب کردن	hisāb kardan
to recognize	شناختن (شناس)	shanākhtan (shanās)
recommendation	سفارش	safārish
— (letter of r.)	سفارشنامه	safārish-nāma
recompense	انعام	inʿām
recruit	جدید	jadīd
red	قرمز	qirmiz

1) *Mouse of Sultania*, so called because *Sultania* is the only place in which the rat is to be found in the highlands of Persia.

reed	نی	nei
reflet métallique tiles	کاشیِ طلائی	kāshī-yi tillāī
reform	اصلاح	islāh
refuge	پناه	panāh
— (asylum)	بست	bast
to refuse	قبول نکردن	qabūl nakardan
regiment	فوج	fouj
register	دفتر	daftar
regret	تاسف	taʿassuf
to regret	افسوس خوردن	afsūs khurdan
regular (troops)	نظامی	nizāmī
regularly	باقاعده	bā qāʿida
reign	سلطنت	saltanat
rein	دسته جلو	dasta-jilou
relation (kin)	قوم و خویش	qoum u khīsh
to release	ول کردن	vil kardan
religion	مذهب, دین	mazhab, dīn
to remain	ماندن (مان)	māndan (mān)
remedy	چاره, علاج	chāra, ʿilāj
I remember	یادم است	yād-am ast
to remind	یاداوری کردن	yādāvarī kardan
to remove	بر داشتن (بر دار)	bar dāshtan (bar dār)
renewal	تجدید	tajdīd
rent (of a house)	اجاره	ijāra
repairs	تعمیر	taʿmīr
repeatedly	مکرر	mukarrar
repentance	پشیمانی	pashīmānī
repentant	پشیمان	pashīmān
repetition	تکرار	takrār

reproach	ملامت	malāmat
republican	جمهوری	jumhūrī
reputation	آبرو	ābrū
request	خواهش	khāhish
to request	خواستن (خواه)	khāstan (khāh)
research	تفحص	tafahhus
to resign	استعفا کردن	istiʿfā kardan
responsible	مسئول	masʿūl
responsibility	مسئولیت	masʿūlīat
rest (remainder)	باقی	bāqī
— (repose)	راحت	rāhat
result	نتیجه	natīja
resurrection	قیامت	qīāmat
return	مراجعت	murājaʿat
to return	بر گشتن	bar gashtan (bar gard)
revenge	انتقام	intiqām
review (military)	سان	sān
revolt	فساد	fisād
revolver	طپانچهٔ شش لوله	tapāncha-yi-shish-lūla
reward	انعام	inʿām
rheumatism	درد استخوان	dard-i-ustukhān
rhinoceros	کرگدن	kargadan
rhubarb	ریباس	rībās
rhyme	ردیف	radīf
rib	دنده	danda
ribbon	نوار	navār
rice (in the field)	شلتوك	shalītūk
— (cleared from the husk)	برنج	birinj

rice (plain boiled)	چلو	chilou
— (cooked with meat and spices)	پلو	pilou
rich	با دولت	bā doulat
riches	دولت	doulat
to ride	سوار شدن	savār shudan
rider	سوار	savār
ridiculous	مضحک	muzhik
rifle	تفنگ گلوله زن	tufang-i gulūla-zan
right	راست	rāst
ring	حلقه	halqa
— (finger r.)	انگشتر	angushtar
ringlet	زلف	zulf
ripe	رسیده	rasīda
to ripen	رسیدن (رس)	rasīdan (ras)
to rise	بر خواستن (بر خیز)	bar khāstan (bar khīz)
risk	خطر	khatar
rival	حریف	harīf
river	رود خانه	rūd-khāna
road	راه, جاده	rāh, jādda
roan (horse)	سرخون	surkhūn
roast	کباب	kabāb
robber	راه زن	rāh-zan
rock	سنگ	sang
rocket	موشک	mūshak
roe	شوکا	shūkā
to roll	غلطیدن (غلط)	ghaltīdan (ghalt)
roller (for the roofs)	بام غلطان	būm-ghaltūn
roof	پشت بام	pusht-i būm
»	(vulg)	būm

room	اوطاق	utāq
root	بیخ ریشه	bīkh, rīsha
rope	طناب	tanāb
rosary	تسبیح	tasbīh
to rot	پوسیدن (پوس)	pūsīdan (pūs)
round	گرد	gird
rough	ناهموار	nā-hamvār
row	صف	saff
to row	پارو زدن	pārū zadan
royal	شاهی	shāhī
»	همایون	humāyūn
»	مبارك	mubārak
to rub	مالیدن (مال)	mālīdan (māl)
ruby	یاقوت	yāqūt
rude	بی ادب	bī-adab
ruffian	لوطی	lūtī
— (plur)	الواط	alvāt
ruin	خرابی	kharābī
— (building)	خرابه	kharāba
to ruin	خراب کردن	kharāb kardan
rule	رسم	rasm
to run	دویدن (دو)	davīdan (dou)
rusk (Europ)	نان سخری	nān-i sakharī
— (Persian)	نان خشك	nān-i khushk
rust	زنگ	zang
rusty	زنگ آلوده	zang-ālūda
rye	گندم سیاه	gandum-i siāh

S.

sack	جوال	javāl

sacred	مقدّس	muqaddas
sacrifice	قربان, فدا	qurbān, fadā
sad	دل تنگ	dil tang
saddle	زین	zīn
saddle (lady's)	زینِ زنانه	zīn-i zanāna
— (packsaddle)	پالان	pālān
to saddle	زین کردن	zīn kardan
saddler	سراج	sarrāj
safe	سالم	sālim
safety	سلامت, امنیت	salāmat, amnīat
sail	باد بان	bād-bān
sailor	ملّاح	mallāh
Saint (Persian)	امام زاده	Imām-zāda
salary	مواجب	mavājib
sale	فروش	furūsh
salmon	آزاد ماهی	āzād-māhī
salt	نمك	namak
— (adjective)	شور	shūr
salt-cellar	نمکدان	namak-dān
salt-desert	کویر	kavīr
salute	سلام	salām
salvation	نجات	nijāt
same	همین	hamīn
sample	نمونه	namūna
sand	ریگ	rīg
sapphire	یاقوتِ کبود	yāqūt-i kabūd
sash	شال	shāl
satiated	سیر	sīr

satin	اطلس	atlas
satisfaction	رضامندی	rizāmandī
saturday	شنبه	shamba
saucepan	دیگ	dīg
savage	وحشی	vahshī
to save	رهانیدن (رهان)	rahānīdan (rahān)
saw	ارّه	arra
to say	گفتن (گو)	guftan (gū)
— (respectfully)	فرمودن (فرما)	farmūdan (farmā)
scales	ترازو	tarāzū
scarcity	قحط	qaht
to scatter	پاچیدن (پاچ)	pāchīdan (pāch)
school	مکتب	maktab
— (high)	مدرسه	madrasa
school-master	آخوند	ākhund
science	علم	ʿilm
scissors	قیچی	qeichī
scorpion	عقرب	ʿaqrab
scout	جاسوس	jāsūs
to scratch	خاریدن (خار)	khārīdan (khār)
to scream	فریاد کردن	faryād kardan
screen	پرده	parda
— (tenting)	تاجیر	tajīr
screw	پیچ	pīch
scribe	منشی, کاتب	munshī, kātib
scull	کلّه	kalla
sea	دریا	daryā
seal	مهر	muhr
sealing-wax	لاك	lāk

seam	درز	darz
season	فصل	fasl
seat	نشیمن	nishīman
to seat	نشاندن (نشان)	nishāndan (nishān)
second	دویم	duyum
— (arabic)	ثانی	sānī
second (sixtieth part of minute)	ثانیه	sānīa
secret	راز	rāz
secretary	منشی	munshī
— (of legation)	نایب سفارت	nāyib-i safārat
sect	فرقه	firqa
secure	محفوظ	mahfūz
sedition	فساد	fisād
seditious	مفسد	mufsid
to see	دیدن (بین)	dīdan (bīn)
seed	تخم	tukhm
to seek	جستن (جو)	justan (jū)
»	پیِ چیزی گشتن (گرد)	pei-i chīzī gashtan (gard)
to seize	گرفتن (گیر)	giriftan (gīr)
seldom	کم	kam
to select	منتخب کردن	muntakhab kardan
self	خود	khud
to sell	فروختن (فروش)	furūkhtan (furūsh)
to send	فرستادن (فرست)	firistādan (firist)
sense (plur)	حس	hiss
senseless	بی حس	bī-hiss
sentence (gramm.)	جمله	jumla
sentinel	قراول	qarāvul
to separate	جدا کردن	judā kardan

separate	جدا	judā
seraglio	اندرون	andarūn
sergeant	وکیل	vakīl
sermon	وعظ	vaʿz
serpent	مار	mār
servant	نوکر	noukar
to serve	نوکری کردن	noukarī kardan
service	خدمت	khidmat
sesamum	کنجت	kunjit
to sew	دوختن (دوز)	dūkhtan (dūz)
sex	جنس	jins
shadow	سایه	sāya
shagreen	ساغری	sāghirī
to shake	تکاندن (تکان)	takāndan (takān)
shame	شرم, خجالت	sharm, khajālat
shape	صورت	sūrat
sharp	تیز	tīz
to shave	تراشیدن (تراش)	tarāshīdan (tarāsh)
sheathe	غلاف	ghilāf
sheep	گوسفند	gūsfand
sheet (bedding)	ملافه	malāfa
shelter	پناه	panāh
shepherd	چپان	chupān
shield	سپر	sipar
to shine	تابیدن (تاب)	tābīdan (tāb)
ship	کشتی, جهاز	kashtī, jahāz
shoe	کفش, گیوه	kafsh, gīva
— (horse-shoe)	نعل	naʿl
shoemaker	کفش دوز	kafsh-dūz
to shoot	(انداز) انداختن (تیر گلوله)	(tīr or gulūla) andākhtan (andāz)

shop	دکّان	dukkān
— (plur)	دکاکین	dakākīn
shore	کنار	kanār
short	کوتاه	kūtah
small shot	ساچمه	sāchma
shoulder	شانه دوش	shāna, dūsh
to show	نشان دادن	nishān dādan
shrimp	میگو	meigū
shrine	زیارت گاه	zīārat-gāh
shroud	کفن	kafan
shrub	بوته	buta
to shut	بستن (بند)	bastan (band)
sick (I am)	احوالم بهم خورد	ahvāl-am bi ham khurd
side	پهلو	pahlū
siege	محاصره	muhāsira
sieve	غلبیر	ghalbīr
fine sieve	الک	alak
sight	تماشا	tamāshā
signature	امضا	imzā
signet	خاتم	khātim
silence	خاموشی	khāmūshī
silent	خاموش	khāmūsh
silk	ابریشم	abrishum
silver	نقره	nuqra
simple	ساده	sāda
simplicity	سادگی	sādagī
sin	گناه	gunāh
since	از آن که	az ān ki
sincere	صادق	sādiq

sinew	پی	pei
to sing	خواندن (خوان)	khāndan (khān)
»	آوازه خواندن	āvāza khāndan
singer	مطرب	mutrib
single	تك	tak
to sink	غرق شدن	gharq shudan
sinless	بی گناه	bī gunāh
sinner	گناه کار	gunāh-kār
sister	خواهر	khāhar
»	همشیره	hamshīra
to sit	نشستن (نشین)	nishastan (nishīn)
size	اندازه	andāza
skating	یخ بازی	yakh-bāzī
skill	هنر, استادی	hunar, ustādī
skin	پوست	pūst
skirt	دامن	dāman
sky	آسمان	āsmān
slack	سست	sust
slab	تخته	takhta
slate	لوح	louh
slaughterhouse	قصاب خانه	qassāb-khāna
slave	بنده, غلام	banda, ghulām
	زر خرید	zar-kharīd
sledge	کالسکه برفی	kālaska-yi barfī
to sleep	خوابیدن (خواب)	khābīdan (khāb)
sleeve	آستین	āstīn
to slide, to slip	لغزیدن (لغز)	laghzīdan (laghz)
slipper	کفش	kafsh
slippery	لغزنده	laghzanda

slow, slowly	کند, یاواش	kund, yāvāsh
small	خورد, کم, ریزه	khurd, kam, rīza
small-pox	آبله	ābla
smart	زرنگ	zarang
to smash	شکستن (شکن)	shikastan (shikan)
smell	بو	bū
smile	تبسّم	tabassum
smith	آهنگر	āhangar
smoke	دود	dūd
to smoke (tobacco)	کشیدن (کش)	kashīdan (kash)
smooth	هموار صاف	hamvār, sāf
to smother	خفه کردن	khafa kardan
smuggler	قاچاقچی	qachaqchī
snake	مار	mār
to sneeze	عطسه کردن	ʿatsa kardan
snipe	نوکدراز	nuk-dirāz
snow	برف	barf
to snow	برف باریدن	barf bārīdan
snuff	نشوق	nushūq
so	چنین	chunīn
soap	صابون	sābūn
sock	جوراب	jūrāb
sopha	نیمتخت, نیم‌کت	nīm-takht, nīm-kat
soft	نرم	narm
sojourn	اقامت	iqāmat
solar	شمسی	shamsī
soldier	سرباز	sarbāz
some	چند تا, چندنفر	chand tā, chand nafar

son	پسر	pisar
song	تصنیف	tasnīf
soon	زود	zūd
sorrow	غم	gham
sorrowful	دل تنگ	dil tang
soul	جان	jān
sound	صدا	sadā
soup	اش, سوپ	āsh, sūp
— (broth)	آب گوشت	āb-i gūsht
sour	ترش	turs̱h
source	اصل	asl
south	جنوب	junūb
souvenir	یادگار	yādgār
to sow	کاشتن (کار)	kās̱htan (kār)
spade	بیل	bīl
span	وجب	vajab
spark	اخگر	akhgar
sparrow	گنجشک	gunjishk
to speak	حرف زدن	harf zadan
spear	نیزه	neiza
special	مخصوص	makhsūs
speck	لکّه	lakka
spectacle	تماشا	tamāshā
spectacles	عینک	ʿeinak
speech	نطق	nutq
to spend	خرج کردن	kharj kardan
spice	ادویه	advīya
spider	عنکبوت	ʿankabūt
to spill	ریختن (ریز)	rīkhtan (rīz)
to spin	ریشتن (ریش)	rīshtan (rīsh)

spinach	اسفناج	isfināj
to spit	تف زدن	tuf zadan
splint (of a horse)	قره‌قوش	qaraqūsh
to spoil	ضایع کردن	zāyiᶜ kardan
sponge	ابر	abr
spoon	قاشق	qāshuq
spot	لکه	lakka
to spread	پهن کردن	pahn kardan
spring (season)	بهار	bahār
» (spiral)	فانار	fānār
spur	مهمیز	mahmīz
spy	جاسوس	jāsūs
squadron	دسته	dasta
square	مربع	murabbaᶜ
to squeeze	چلاندن (چلان)	chalāndan (chalān)
stable (for horses)	طویله	tavīla
stag	مرال	marāl
stage (on journey)	منزل	manzil
stain	لکه	lakka
staircase	پله	pilla
stale (bread)	بیات	beiāt
stallion	نریان	narīān
to stammer	لکنه کردن	lukna kardan
stamp (postage)	تمبر	tambr (timbre)
to stand	ایستادن (ایست)	Istādan (Ist)
standard	علم	ᶜalam
star	ستاره, اختر	sitāra, akhtar
starch	نشسته	nishasta
to start	روانه شدن	ravāna shudan
station	منزل	manzil

statue	مجسّمه	mujassama
to stay	ماندن (مان)	māndan (mān)
to steal	دزدیدن (دزد)	duzdīdan (duzd)
steam	بخار	bukhār
steamer	کشتیِ بخار	kashtī-yi bukhār
steel	فولاد	fūlād
steep	سرازیر	sarāzīr
step	قدم	qadam
stick	چوب دست	chūb-dast
to stick	چسپیدن (چسپ)	chaspīdan (chasp)
— (transitive)	چسپاندن (چسپان)	chaspāndan (chaspān)
stiff	خشک	khushk
sill	ساکت	sākit
to stink	گندیدن (کند)	gandīdan (gand)
to stir	هم زدن	ham zadan
stirrup	رکاب	rikāb
stockings	جوراب	jūrāb
stomach	معده	maʿda
stone	سنگ	sang
stony	سنگلاخ	sanglākh
stool	کرسی	kursī
to stop	وا ایستادن (وا ایست)	vā īstādan (vā īst)
store	انبار	ambār
stork	لکلک	laklak
story	حکایت, قصه, نقل	hikāyat, qissa, naql
stout	چاق	chāq
stove	بخاری	bukhārī
straight	راست	rāst
strange	غریب	gharīb

stranger	غریب	gharīb
to strangle	خفه کردن	khafa kardan
strap	قایش, تسمه	qāīsh, tasma
straw	کاه	kāh
strawberry	توت فرنگی	tūt-i farangī
stream	راهِ آب	rāh-i āb
street	کوچه	kūcha
strength	زور	zūr
to strike	زدن (زن)	zadan (zan)
string	نخ	nakh
stripe	خط	khatt
strong	قوی	qavī
stucco	گچ کاری	gaj-kārī
student	طلبه	talaba
study	تحصیل	tahsīl
to stumble	سرِ سم رفتن	sar-i sum raftan
»	ناخن بند کردن	nākhun band kardan
stupid	احمق, خر	ahmaq, khar
stupidity	خری	kharī
sturgeon	سگ ماهی	sag-mahī
style	عبارت	ʿibārat
subject (of a state)	تبعه, رعیت	tabaʿa, raʿīat
— (of a book or letter)	مطلب	matlab
sublime	عالی	ʿālī
substantive	اسم	ism
successor	خلف	khalaf
— (plur.)	خلفا	khulafā
such	چنین	chunīn

to suck	مکیدن (مك)	makīdan (mak)
suddenly	ناگاه	nā-gāh
suet	پی	pī
suffering	درد	dard
sufficient	کافی	kāfī
sufficiency	کفایت	kafāyat
sugar (soft s.)	شکر	shakar
— (lump s.)	قند	qand
sugar-cane	نی شکر	nei-shakar
suit of clothes	دسته لباس	dasta-yi libās
to suit	بکار خوردن	bi kār-khurdan
sulphur	گوگرد	gūgird
sum	مبلغ	mablagh
summer	تابستان	tābistān
Summer residence	ییلاق	yeilāq
summit	قله	qulla
to summon	احضار کردن	ihzār kardan
sun	آفتاب, خورشید	āftāb, khurshīd
supper	شام	shām
supplication	استدعا	istidʿā
to suppose	فرض کردن	farz kardan
sure	یقین	yaqīn
surface	رو	rū
surgeon	جراح	jarrāh
surroundings	اطراف	atrāf
suspicion	گمان	gamān
suspicious	بد گمان	bad-gamān
swallow	چلچله	chilchila
to swallow	فرو آوردن	furū āvurdan
swamp	لجن زار	lajan-zār
swan	غو	ghou

to swear	قسم خوردن	qasam khurdan
sweat	عرق	ʿaraq
to sweep	روفتن (روب)	rūftan (rūb)
»	جاروب کردن	jārūb kardan
sweet	شیرین	shīrīn
sweetheart	معشوقه	maʿshūqa
sweets	شیرینی	shīrīnī
to swell	باد کردن	bād kardan
swelling	ورم	varam
swift	تند	tund
to swim	شنو کردن	shanou kardan
to swindle	گول زدن	gūl zadan
swine	خوگ, گراز	khūg, gurāz
to swoon	بی هوش شدن	bī-hūsh shudan
sword	شمشیر	shamshīr
symptom	علامت	ʿalāmat
syntax	نحو	nahv
syringe	آب دزدك	āb-duzdak

T.

table	میز	mīz
table-cloth	سفره	sufra
tail	دم	dum
tailor	خیاط	kheiyāt
to take	گرفتن (گیر)	giriftan (gīr)
tale (see story)		
talent	قابلیت	qābilīat
to talk	حرف زدن	harf zadan
»	گفتگو کردن	guftugū kardan
tall	بلند قد	buland-qadd
tallow	پی	pī

tambourine	دایره	dāira (vulg. dārīa)
tank	حوض	houz
tap	شیر	shīr
tape	نواره	navāra
tar	قیر	qīr
tarantula	رتیل	ruteil
taste	مزه	maza
good taste	سلیقه	salīqa
tax	باج, مالیات	bāj, mālīāt
tea	چای	chāī
to teach	یاد دادن	yād dādan
»	درس دادن	dars dādan
teacher	معلّم	muʿallim
tear (weeping)	اشك	ashk
to tear	دریدن (در)	darīdan (dar)
telegram	تلگراف	talagrāf
telegraph	تلگراف	»
telegraphist	تلگرافچی	talagrāf-chī
telescope	دور بین	dūr-bīn
to tell	گفتن (گو)	guftan (gū)
temper	مزاج	mizāj
temporary	موقت	muvaqqat
tenant	مستاجر	mustaʿjir
tender	نازك	nāzuk
tent	چادر, خیمه	chādur, kheima
tepid	شیر کرم	shīr-garm
terrace	سکو	sakkū
territory	خاك	khāk
terror	هراس	hirās
testament	وصیت نامه	vasīyat-nāma

testimony	شهادت	shahādat
to thank	تشکر کردن	tashakkur kardan
theft	دردی	duzdī
thermometer	کرما نما	garmā-namā
thick	کلفت	kuluft
thief	دزد	duzd
thimble	انگشتانه	angushtāna
thin	نازك	nāzuk
thing	چیز	chīz
to think	خیال کردن	kheyāl kardan
thirst	تشنگی	tishnagī
thirsty	تشنه	tishna
thistle (eatable)	کنگر	kangar
thorn	خار	khār
thoroughbred	اصیل, جنس	asīl, jins
thought	خیال	kheyāl
thrashing-floor	خرمن	kharman
thread	ریسمان	rīsmān
to threaten	ترساندن (ترسان)	tarsāndan (tarsān)
threshold	آستانه, درگاه	āstāna, dargāh
throat	گلو	galū
throne	تاخت	takht
to throw	انداختن (انداز)	andākhtan (andāz)
thumb	شست	shast
thunder	رعد	raʿd
Thursday	پنج شنبه	panj-shanba
to tidy	جابجا کردن	jā-bi jā kardan
to tie	بستن (بند)	bastan (band)
tiger	ببر	babr
tight	تنگ, سفت	tang, sift

tile	کاشی	kāshī
time	وقت	vakht
— (leisure)	فرصت	fursat
tin	حلبی	halabī
tin-opener	حلبی بُر	halabī-burr
tinker	حلبی ساز	halabī-sāz
tipsy	مست	mast
tired	خسته	khasta
title	لقب	laqab
toast	نانِ برشته	nān-i birishta
tobacco for water-pipes	تنباکو	tambāku
— for short pipes or cigarettes	تتن	tutun
to-day	امروز	imrūz
toe	انگشتِ پا	angusht-i pā
together	با هم	bā ham
toll	راه داری	rāh-dārī
tomato	بادنجان فرنگی	bādinjān-i farangī
tomb	قبر	qabr
to-morrow	فردا	fardā
tone	صدا	sadā
tongs	انبر	ambur
tongue	زبان	zabān
tool	آلت	ālat
tooth	دندان	dandān
top	سر	sar
torch	مشعل	mash^{c}al
tortoise	لاک پشت	lāk-pusht
torture	شکنجه	shikanja
total	جمع	jam^{c}

to touch	دست زدن	dast zadan
touchstone	محک	mihāk
towel	دستمال	dast-māl
tower	برج	burj
town	شهر	shahr
toy	بازیچه	bāzīcha
track	ردّ پا	radd-i pā
trade	تجارت	tijārat
traffic	آمد و شد	āmad u shud
to translate	ترجمه کردن	tarjuma kardan
translation	ترجمه	tarjuma
translator	مترجم	mutarjim
transport	حمل و نقل	haml u naql
trap	تله	tala
trappings	یراق	yarāq
to travel	سفر کردن	safar kardan
traveller	سیاح	seiyāh
tray	سینی	sīnī
treasure	گنج, خزانه	ganj, khazāna
treaty	عهدنامه	ᶜahdnāma
tree	درخت	dirakht
to tremble	لرزیدن (لرز)	larzīdan (larz)
tribe	طایفه	tāifa
tribute	باج	bāj
troop	دسته	dasta
to trot	یورتمه رفتن	yurtma raftan
trouble	زحمت	zahmat
troublesome	پر زحمت	pur zahmat
trousers	شلوار	shalvār
trousseau	جهاز	jahāz

trout	قزل آله	qizil-ālа
true	صحیح	sahīh
truly	راستی	rāstī
trumpet	شیپور	sheipūr
trunk (of a tree)	ساق	sāq
» (of an elephant)	خرطوم	khartūm
» (box)	یخدان	yakhdān
truth	حقیقت	haqīqat
to try	تاجربه کردن	tajruba kardan
tube	لوله	lūla
Tuesday	سه شنبه	si-shamba
tulip	لاله	lāla
tumour	دنبل	dumbal
tune	آواز	āvāz
tunic	قبا	qabā
turban	عمامه	ʿamāma
Turk	ترك	Turk
Turkey	خاك روم	khāk-i Rūm
turkey (bird)	بوقلمون	būqalamūn
Turkish	ترکی	turkī
to turn	گردیدن (گرد)	gardīdan (gard)
turner	خراط	kharrāt
turnip	شلغم	shalgham
turquoise	فیروزه	fīrūza
turtle	سنك پشت	sang-pusht
twice	دو دفعه	du dafʿa
twin	توأم, دو غلو	touʿam, du ghulu
tyranny	ظلم	zulm
tyrant	ظالم	zālim

U.

ugly	زشت	zisht

ugly	بد گل	bad-gil
umbrella	چتر	chatr
un-	نه, غیر	na-, gheir-
unanimity	اتفاق	ittifāq
unbeliever	کافر	kāfir
uncle (paternal)	عمو	ʿammū
» (maternal)	خال	khāl
unclean	نا پاك, نجس	nā-pāk, najis
under	زیر	zīr
undersigned	امضا کننده	imzā-kunanda
to understand	فهمیدن (فهم)	fahmīdan (fahm)
»	ملتفت شدن	multafit shudan
undoubtedly	بلا شك	bilā shak
to undress	لباس کندن (کن)	libās kandan (kan)
unfortunate	بد بخت	bad-bakht
unhappy	دلتنگ	dil-tang
uniform (military)	لباسِ نظامی	libās-i nizāmī
— (civilians)	لباس رسمی	libās-i rasmī
uninterrupted	لاینقطع	lā yanqataʿ
university	مدرسه	madrasa
unjust	بی انصاف	bī-insāf
unless	مگر	magar
unofficial	غیر رسمی	gheir-rasmī
unpaid	مفت	muft
unripe	خام, نارس	khām, nā-ras
until	تا	tā
unwell	بی دماغ	bī damāgh
unworthy	نالایق	nā-lāyiq
up	بالا	bālā
upon	روی	rū-yi

upside down	وارونه	vārūna
use	فایده	fāida
to use	استعمال کردن	isti'māl kardan
useful	مفید	mufīd
useless	بی فایده	bī-fāida
usual	عادی	'ādī

V.

to vaccinate	آبله کوبیدن	ābla kūbīdan
vain	خود پسند	khud-pasand
valet	پیش خدمت	pīsh-khidmat
valid	بر قرار	bar qarār
valley	دره, جلگه	darra, julga
valuable	قیمتی	qīmatī
value	قیمت	qīmat
to value	قیمت کردن	qīmat kardan
vanity	خود پسندی	khud-pasandī
various	مختلف	mukhtalif
varnish	روغنِ کمان	roughan-i kamān
vault	طاق	tāq
vegetable	سبزی	sabzī
veil	رو بند, پرده	rū-band, parda
vein	رگ	rag
velvet	مخمل	makhmal
vengeance	انتقام	intiqām
to venture	جسارت کردن	jasārat kardan
Venus	زهره	Zuhra
verandah	ایوان	eivān
verb	فعل	fi'l
verdigris	زنگار	zangār

vermin	جانور	jānvar
— (vulg.)		jūnavar
verse	بیت	beit
very	خیلی , بسیار	kheilī, bisyār
vestige	اثر	asar
veterinary surgeon	بیطار	boitār
to vex	اذیت کردن	azīat kardan
viceroy	فرمان فرما	farmān-farmā
victor	فاتح	fātih
victory	فتح	fath
victuals	آذوقه	ʜzūqa
view	منظر	manzar
village	ده	dih
villager	دهاتی	dihātī
vine	مو	mou
vinegar	سرکه	sirka
vineyard	انگورستان	angūristān
violence	شدّت	shiddat
violent	شدید	shadīd
violet	بنفشه	binafsha
violin	کمانچه	kamāncha
virgin	باکره	bākira
virtue	هنر	hunar
visible	ظاهر	zāhir
visit	دیدنی	dīdanī
»	دید و بازدید	dīd u bāzdīd
visitor	مهمان	mihmān
visiting card	کارت	gārt
vocabulary	لغت	lughat

voice	آواز	ʌvʌz
volcano	کوهِ آتش فشان	kūh-i ʌtash fishʌn
volley	شلیك	shalīk
volume	جلد	jild
to vomit	قی کردن	qei kardan
voyage	سفرِ دریای	safar-i daryʌī
vulgar	عام, پست	ʿʌmm, past
vulture	لاش خور	lʌsh-khur

W.

wages	مواجب	mavʌjib
waist	کمر	kamar
waistcoat	جلکه	jilaka
to wait	صبر کردن	sabr kardan
to wake	بیدار شدن	bīdʌr shudan
walk	گردش	gardish
to walk	پیاده رفتن (رو)	pīʌda raftan (rou)
wall	دیوار	dīvʌr
wallet	قبل	qubul
walnut	گردو	girdū
want	خواهش	khʌhish
war	جنگ	jang
warehouse	مغازه	maghʌza
warm	گرم	garm
warmth	گرمی	garmī
warp and woof	تار و پود	tʌr u pūd
to wash	شستن (شور)	shustan (shūr)
washer	رختشور	rakhtshūr
wasp	زنبور	zambūr
waste	تفریط	tafrīt

watch	ساعت	saᶜat
water	آب	ab
to water	سیراب کردن	sirāb kardan
wave	موج	mouj
wax	موم	mūm
way	راه	rāh
weak	ضعیف	zaᶜif
wealth	دولت	doulat
weapon	اسلحه	aslaha
weather	هوا	havā
to weave	بافتن (باف)	bāftan (bāf)
wedding	عروسی	ᶜarūsī
Wednesday	چهار شنبه	chahār shamba
weight	وزن	vazn
welcome!	خوش آمدید	khush āmadīd
well (for water)	چاه	chāh
well (adverb)	بخوبی	bi khūbī
wellwisher	خیر خواه	kheir-khāh
west	مغرب	maghrib
wet	تر, خیس	tar, khīs
what	چه	chi
wheat	گندم	gandum
wheel	چرخ	charkh
when?	کی	kei?
where	کجا, کو	kujā, kū
while	مدت	muddat
whip	شلاغ	shallāgh
whirlpool	گرداب	girdāb
to whistle	سوت زدن	sūt zadan
white	سفید	safīd

who?	کہ	ki?
whole	تمام	tamām
wholesome	سالم	sālim
why	چرا	chirā
wick	فتیلہ	fatīla
wicked	شریر	sharīr
wickedness	شرارت	sharārat
wide	گشاد	gushād
widow	بیوہ	bīva
width	پہنائی	pahnāī
wife	زوجہ ,زن	zouja, zan
wild	وحشی	vahshī
wilderness	بیابان	bīābān
will	مراد	murād
willow	بید	bīd
to win	بردن (بر)	burdan (bar)
wind	باد	bād
to wind up	کوک کردن	kūk kardan
window	پنجرہ	panjara
wine	شراب	sharāb
wing	بال	bāl
winter	زمستان	zimistān
to wipe	پاک کردن	pāk kardan
wire	مفتول	maftūl
wisdom	حکمت	hikmat
wise	دانا	dānā
wish	خواہش	khāhish
to wish	خواستن (خواہ)	khāstan (khāh)
with	با	bā
witness	شاہد	shāhid
witty	ظریف	zarīf

wolf	گرگ	gurg
woman	زن	zan
wonder	کرامت	karāmat
to wonder	تعجب کردن	taʿajjub kardan
wonderful	عجیب	ʿajīb
wood	چوب	chūb
— (fire-wood)	هیزم	hīzum
woodcock	نوک‌درازِ بزرگ	nukdirāz-i buzurg
wool	پشم	pashm
word	کلمه	kalama
work	کار	kār
workman	فعله	faʿala
workshop	کارخانه	kārkhāna
world	دنیا, عالم, جهان	dunyā, ʿālam, jahān
worm	کرم	kirm
worse	بدتر	badtar
to worship	پرستیدن (پرست)	parastīdan (parast)
to be worth	ارزیدن (ارز)	arzīdan (arz)
worthy	لایق	lāyiq
wound	زخم	zakhm
wounded	زخم دار	zakhm-dār
to wrap	پیچیدن (پیچ)	pīchīdan (pīch)
to wrestle	کشتی گرفتن	kushtī giriftan
to write	نوشتن (نویس)	navishtan (navīs)
writer	نویسنده, کاتب	navīsanda, kātib
writing	خطّ	khatt
wrong	غلط	ghalat

Y.

yard (court)	حیاط	heyāt
— (measure)	ذرع	zarʿ

year	سال, سن, سنه	sāl, sinn, sana
yeast	مایه	māya
yellow	زرد	zard
yes	بلی (آری)	ba'lī (vulg. ārei)
yesterday	دیروز	dīrūz
young	جوان, جاهل	javān, jāhil
youth	جوانی	javānī

Z.

zeal	غیرت	gheirat
zephyr	نسیم	nasīm
zinc	روح	rūh
Zoroaster	زردشت	Zardusht

A SELECTION

OF

MESSRS. LUZAC & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS

IN AND ON THE FOLLOWING LANGUAGES

AND LITERATURES:

ARABIC, SYRIAC, HEBREW,

BABYLONIAN,

ASSYRIAN, PERSIAN, ETC.

Messrs. LUZAC & Co., having been appointed **OFFICIAL AGENTS FOR THE SALE OF INDIAN GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS** and **PUBLISHERS TO THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR INDIA IN COUNCIL**, are able to supply at the shortest notice all Works published by the **GOVERNMENT OF INDIA.**

They have also been appointed **OFFICIAL ENGLISH AGENTS AND PUBLISHERS** to the **ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL, THE IMPERIAL ACADEMY OF ST. PETERSBURG,** and **THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO,** and keep all Works published by the above Society and University in stock.

ORIENTAL STUDENTS are invited to submit to **Messrs. LUZAC & Co.** their **MANUSCRIPTS** for publication before sending them elsewhere.

Messrs. LUZAC & Co. are able to supply at the shortest notice and most favourable terms **ALL ENGLISH, FOREIGN,** and **ORIENTAL BOOKS** and **PERIODICALS. MONTHLY LISTS** issued regularly and sent gratis on application.

Messrs. LUZAC & Co. have a Large Stock of New and Second-hand Oriental Works, of which they issue regularly Lists and Catalogues, which are to be had on application.

Messrs. Luzac & Co.'s List of Books and Periodicals.

American Journal of Semitic Languages and Literature (continuing Hebraica).—Edited by WILLIAM R. HARPER and the Staff of the Semitic Department of the University of Chicago. Published quarterly. Annual subscription, 14*s.*

American Journal of Theology.—Edited by Members of the Divinity Faculty of the University of Chicago. Quarterly. Annual subscription, 13*s.* 6*d.* Single numbers, 3*s.* 6*d.*

"The theologians of America are attempting to supply a real need . . . it aims at a complete presentation of all recent theological work . . . we give it a hearty welcome, as a scheme likely to prove of real utility to theological students and to the cause of truth."—*Guardian.*

Babylonian and Oriental Record, The.—A Monthly Magazine of the Antiquities of the East. Edited by W. ST. CHAD BOSCAWEN and Rev. H. M. MACKENZIE. Single numbers. 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

Beveridge (A. S.).—The History of Humāyūn. By Gul-Baden Begam (Princess Rose-Body). Translated, with Introduction, Notes, Illustrations, and Biographical Appendix; and reproduced in the Persian from the only known manuscript of the British Museum, by A. S. BEVERIDGE. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xiv, 332, and 96 pages of Persian text. With 10 plates. 10*s.* net.

Bezold (Ch.).—Oriental Diplomacy: being the transliterated Text of the Cuneiform Despatches between the King of Egypt and Western Asia in the Fifteenth Century before Christ, discovered at Tell el Amarna, and now preserved in the British Museum. With full Vocabulary, Grammatical Notes, etc., by CHARLES BEZOLD. Post 8vo. Cloth, pp. xliv, 124. 18*s.* net.

"For the Assyriologist the book is a serviceable and handy supplement to the British Museum volume on the Tell el Amarna tablets. The author is specially skilled in the art of cataloguing and dictionary making, and it is needless to say that he has done his work well."—*The Academy.*

"Die in dem Hauptwerke (The Tell el Amarna Tablets in the British Museum, with autotype Facsimiles, etc.) vermiste Transcription des Keilschrift-textes der Tafeln, sowie ein sehr ausführliches, mitunter die Vollständigkeit einer Concordanz erreichendes Vocabulary bietet die Oriental Diplomacy von C. Bezold, das eben deshalb gewissermassen als Schlüssel zu dem Publicationswerke betrachtet werden kann."—*Liter. Centralblatt.*

Biblia.—A Monthly Magazine, devoted to Biblical Archæology and Oriental Research. Annual subscription, including postage, 6*s.* 6*d.* Single numbers, 6*d.*

"The object of the *Biblia* is to present the latest information in regard to the work of the Egyptian Exploration Fund, the Palestine Exploration Fund, and the work of American, French, and German Explorers. Attention is given also to Classical and Mediæval Archæology, reviews of new books, etc."

Biblical World, The.—Edited by WILLIAM R. HARPER. Published monthly. Annual subscription, 9*s.* Single numbers, 1*s.*

"The Biblical World makes a faithful record and helpful critic of present Biblical Work, as well as an efficient practical and positive independent force in stimulating and instructing the student, preacher, and teacher."

Brönnle (Paul). — Contributions towards Arabic Philology. Part I: The Kitāb al-maksūr wa'l-mamdūd. By Ibn Wallād. Being a Treatise, Lexicographical and Grammatical, from Manuscripts in Berlin, London, Paris. Edited with Texts, Critical Notes, Introduction, Commentary, and Indices. By Dr. PAUL BRÖNNLE. I: Arabic Text. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xii, 128. *7s. 6d.* net; paper covers, *6s.* net.

"This is the first of a series of ten parts, in which it is intended to publish some important works of the earliest Arabic authors, together with systematic investigations into the various branches of Arabic Philology."

"In the second part, which contains the Introduction and Commentary to the Arabic text given in the first part, along with a Preface and Bibliography to the whole series, the author will have opportunity of enlarging at some length upon the principles by which he has been guided in embarking upon this scheme."

Browne (E. G.).—Account of a rare Manuscript History of Ispahan. 8vo, pp. 90. *1s. 6d.* net.

Browne (E. G.). — Biographies of Persian Poets. Contained in Chapter V, Section 6, of the Táríkh-i-Guzida, or "Select History," of Hamdu'lláh Mustawfí of Qazwin. Translated by E. G. BROWNE. 8vo, pp. 80. *2s.* net.

Browne (E. G.).—The Chahár Maqála (Four Discourses) of Nidhámi-i-'arúdí-i-samarqandi. Translated into English by E. G. BROWNE. Demy 8vo. Cloth, pp. 139. *4s.* net.

Browne (E. G.).—The Tadhkiratu 'Sh-Shu'ará (Memoirs of the Poets) of Dawlatsháh bin 'Alá'u 'd-dawla Bakhtisháh al-Ghází of Samarqand. Edited in the Original Persian, with Prefaces and Indices, by E. G. BROWNE. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xvi, 10, 622. *18s.* net.

Budge (E. A. Wallis).—Oriental Wit and Wisdom, or the "Laughable Stories." Collected by Mâr. Gregory John Bar-Hebraeus, Maphrian of the East from A.D. 1264 to 1286. Translated from the Syriac by E. A. WALLIS BUDGE, M.A., Litt.D., D.Lit. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xxvii, iv, 204. *6s.* net.

"In the Preface to the present publication the satisfactory remark is made that the volume containing both the Syriac Text and the Translation, published 1897, price *21s.* (see the notice in the *Athenæum* for March 13th, 1897), 'has been well received, both in England and on the Continent,' and that 'in answer to many requests from Students of Literature generally,' Messrs. Luzac & Co. 'have decided to issue the English Translation of it separately in a handy form.'"

"In such circumstances the new volume is likely to succeed, and we need only add that, although many of the sayings are at war with the finer æsthetic taste of the present day, the collection is fairly representative, and of considerable value. Of some special interest appears to us to be the twentieth chapter, 'Physiological Characteristics described by the Sages.'"—*Athenæum.*

Budge (E. A. Wallis).—The History of the Blessed Virgin Mary and The History of the Likeness of Christ which the Jews of Tiberias made to mock at. The Syriac Texts edited with English Translations by E. A. WALLIS BUDGE, M.A., Litt.D., D.Lit., Keeper of the Egyptian and Assyrian Antiquities in the British Museum. Vol. I, The Syriac Texts, pp. xi, 224. *12s. 6d.* net. Vol. II, English Translations, pp. xvii, 246. *10s. 6d.* net. [Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series, Vols. IV and V.]

"To Mr. Budge belongs, however, the great merit of having very materially enriched no fewer than four different branches of Oriental Literature. Several of his editions will no doubt serve as the groundwork for future publications. . . . The general aspect of the volumes is all that could be desired."—*Athenæum.*

"It may be regarded as an exceptionally excellent commentary on the New Testament, the main lines of which it closely follows, for in dealing with the same facts it lets in a great deal of light on the manners, customs, and ideas of the country and the period. . . . The translations are in admirable English, and evince singular ability."—*Catholic Times.*

Budge (E. A. Wallis).—The Histories of Rabban Hormizd the Persian and Rabban Bar-'Idtâ. Vol. I, Syriac Texts. Roy. 8vo, pp. xvi, 202. 12*s.* 6*d.* net. [Luzac's Semitic Texts and Translation Series, Vol. IX.]

Budge (E. A. Wallis).—The Histories of Rabban Hormizd the Persian and Rabban Bar-'Idtâ. Vol. II, Part 1, English Translations. Roy. 8vo, pp. xlii, 304. 10*s.* 6*d.* net. [Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series, Vol. X.]

Budge (E. A. Wallis).—The Histories of Rabban Hormizd the Persian and Rabban Bar-'Idtâ. Vol. II, Part 2, The Metrical Life of Rabban Hormizd by Mâr. Sergius of Âdhêrbaijan. English Translations. Roy. 8vo, pp. 230. 10*s.* 6*d.* net. [Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series, Vol. XI.]

Budge (E. A. Wallis).—The History of Baralâm and Yĕwâsĕf. The Ethiopic Version translated from the Arabic by Enbâḳôm for the Ethiopian King Galâwdewâs, A.D. 1553. 2 vols. in 3. Vol. I, The Ethiopic Text; Vol. II, English Translation, Introduction, etc. (*In the Press.*)

Budge (E. A. Wallis). — The Laughable Stories collected by Bar-Hebraeus. The Syriac Text, with an English Translation, by E. A. WALLIS BUDGE, Litt.D., F.S.A., Keeper of the Department of Egyptian and Assyrian Antiquities, British Museum. 8vo. Cloth. 21*s.* net. [Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series, Vol. I.]

"Dr. BUDGE'S book will be welcome as a handy reading-book for advanced students of Syriac, but in the meantime the stories will be an addition to the literature of gnomes and proverbs, of which so many are found in India, and in Persian, Hebrew, and Arabic, although not yet published. We are happy to say that Dr. BUDGE'S new book is well edited and translated as far as we can judge."—*Athenæum.*

"The worthy Syrian Bishop's idea of humour may excite admiration when we hear that he collected his quips in the grey dawn of the middle ages."—*Pall Mall Gazette.*

Bulletin de l'Institut français d'Archéologie Orientale. Publié sous le direction of M. E. CHASSINET. Vol. I. 4to. £1 6*s.* net. [Messrs. Luzac & Co. are the sole agents for the sale of this "Bulletin" for England and America.]

Cowper (B. H.). — Principles of Syriac Grammar. Translated and abridged from the work of Dr. HOFFMANN. 8vo. Cloth, pp. 184. 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

Crow (F. E.).—Arabic Manual. A Colloquial Handbook in the Syrian Dialect. For the use of visitors to Syria and Palestine, cont a simplified Grammar, a Comprehensive English and Ar

Vocabulary and Dialogues. The whole in English Characters, carefully Transliterated, the Pronunciation being fully indicated. Crown 8vo. Cloth, pp. viii, 334. 7*s.* 6*d.*

"Messrs. Luzac have now issued a manual of colloquial Syrian Arabic, which will be of the greatest use to visitors, merchants, and consular officers . . . . Mr. Crow, formerly one of the most brilliant linguists of the student-interpreters of Constantinople, afterwards Vice-Consul at Beyrut."—*The Spectator.*

Dawlatsháh, see **Browne.**

Efes Damîm. — A Series of Conversations at Jerusalem between a Patriarch of the Greek Church and a Chief Rabbi of the Jews, concerning the Malicious Charge against the Jews of using Christian Blood. By J. B. LEVINSOHN. Translated from the Hebrew by Dr. L. LOEWE. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xvi, 208. (Published 8*s.*) Reduced price, 2*s.* 6*d.*

Gaster (M.). — The Chronicles of Jerahmeel, or the Hebrew Bible Historiale. A Collection of Jewish Legends and Traditions. Translated for the first time from an unique manuscript in the Bodleian Library. With an Introduction, Notes, and full Index, and five Facsimiles. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. cxii, 341. With 5 plates. 10*s.* net.

Gibb (E. J. W.).—A History of Ottoman Poetry. By E. J. W. GIBB, M.R.A.S. Vol. I. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xxi, 454. 21*s.* net. (Vol. II in the Press.)

"The work, of which this volume is the first instalment, is planned on a magnificent scale, and its execution, if one may judge of the whole by a part, will fully answer to the conception. The first volume will take its rightful place as one of the most masterly contributions ever made to Oriental learning by an English scholar."—*Athenæum.*

"Mr. Gibb writes as a master. He is undoubtedly the highest authority on Ottoman literature in this country. No genuine student of poetry in its manifold expressions can afford to neglect so curious and interesting a phase in its history."—*Spectator.*

"This beautiful book will be welcomed not only by scholars, but by all who love the mysterious East. Messrs. LUZAC & Co. must be congratulated on the manner in which they have brought out the book. It is to be hoped that the second volume will soon see the light."—*Westminster Review.*

Harîri.—The Assemblies of al Harîri. Translated from the Arabic with an Introduction and Notes, Historical and Grammatical, by TH. CHENERY and F. STEINGASS. With Preface and Index by F. F. ARBUTHNOT. 2 vols. 8vo. Cloth, pp. x, 540, and xi, 395. 30*s.* net.

Harper (Robert Francis).—Assyrian and Babylonian Letters, belonging to the K. Collection of the British Museum. By ROBERT FRANCIS HARPER, of the University of Chicago. Vols. I to VIII. Post 8vo. Cloth. Price of each vol., 25*s.* net.

"The Assyriologist will welcome them with gratitude, for they offer him a mass of new material which has been carefully copied and well printed, and which cannot fail to yield important results."—*Athenæum.*

"The book is well printed, and it is a pleasure to read the texts given in it, with their large type and ample margin."—*Academy.*

Hartmann (Martin). — The Arabic Press of Egypt. By MARTIN HARTMANN. 8vo. Cloth, pp. ii, 93. 3*s.* 6*d.*

"A learned critical list of Arabic Publications."—*Athenæum.*

"Such compilations as the present are valuable as Works of Reference, and as showing the intellectual activity of all those people who fall under British influence."—*Asiatic Quarterly Review.*

Hebraica.—A Quarterly Journal in the interests of Semitic Study. Edited by WILLIAM R. HARPER and the Staff of the Semitic Department of the University of Chicago. Published quarterly. Annual subscription, 14*s*. See **American Journal of Semitic Languages**, etc.

Jastrow's Dictionary of the Targumim, the Talmud Babli and Yerushalmi, and the Midrashic Literature. Compiled by M. JASTROW, Ph.D. Parts I to XV. 4to. Boards. 5*s*. each part.

"This is the only Talmudic dictionary in English, and all students should subscribe to it. The merits of this work are now too well known to need repetition."—*Jewish Chronicle.*

King (Leonard W.).—Babylonian Magic and Sorcery. Being "The Prayers of the Lifting of the Hand." The Cuneiform Texts of a Group of Babylonian and Assyrian Incantations and Magical Formulæ, edited with Transliterations. Translations and full Vocabulary from Tablets of the Kuyunjik Collection preserved in the British Museum. By LEONARD W. KING, M.A., Assistant in the Department of Egyptian and Assyrian Antiquities, British Museum. Roy. 8vo. Cloth. 18*s*. net.

"We cannot pretend to form an adequate judgment of the merits of Mr. KING's work, but it is manifestly conceived and executed in a very scholarly spirit."—*Times.*

"Mr. KING's book will, we believe, be of great use to all students of Mesopotamian religions, and it marks an era in Assyriological studies in England. . . . A word of special praise is due to Mr. KING for the excellence of his autograph plates of text."—*Athenæum.*

King (Leonard W.). — The Letters and Inscriptions of Hammurabi, King of Babylon about B.C. 2200, to which are added a Series of Letters of other Kings of the First Dynasty of Babylon. The Original Babylonian Texts, edited from Tablets in the British Museum, with English Translations, Summaries of Contents, etc. By L. W. KING, M.A., F.S.A., Assistant in the Department of Egyptian and Assyrian Antiquities, British Museum. In three volumes. Vol. I, Introduction and Babylonian Texts. Vol. II, Babylonian Texts (continued). Vol. III, Transliterations, English Translations, Vocabularies, Indices, etc. Roy. 8vo. Cloth. Vol. I, 21*s*. net; Vol. II, 18*s*. net; Vol. III, 18*s*. net. [Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series, Vols. II, III, and VIII.]

"The concluding volumes of this important book are out at last. Mr. King supplies an excellent vocabulary for both the Sumerian and Semitic words used in these texts, and although his translation differs somewhat from that adopted by German cuneiform scholars, he has kept most commendably clear from philological discussion. . . . Altogether, both he and the Museum are to be congratulated on the completion of a difficult task."—*Athenæum.*

"Mr. King may be congratulated on his copies of the cuneiform texts, and still more on his translations and notes. . . . The notes contain very full references to the dates found in the legal documents of the period, by means of which several of the mutilated passages in the annals can be restored. . . . The value of these annals can scarcely be over-estimated."—(Professor Sayce) *Expository Times.*

King (Leonard W.).—The Seven Tablets of Creation, or the Babylonian and Assyrian Legends concerning the Creation of the World and of Mankind. 2 vols. Vol. I, English Translations, Transliterations, Glossary, Introduction, etc. Vol. II, Supplementary (Babylonian and Assyrian) Texts. Roy. 8vo. Vol. I, 18*s*.; Vol. II, 15*s*. [Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series, Vols. XII and XIII.]

King (Leonard W.).—A Contribution to Babylonian History, being a Series of Babylonian Historical Texts with English Translations. [Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series, Vol. XIX.] *In the Press.*

Land (J. P. N.).—The Principles of Hebrew Grammar. By J. P. N. LAND, Professor of Logic and Metaphysics in the University of Leyden. Translated from the Dutch by REGINALD LANE POOLE, Balliol College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. Cloth, pp. xx, 219. (Published 7*s.* 6*d.*) Reduced price, 5*s.*

Loewe (L.).—A Dictionary of the Circassian Language. In two parts. English—Circassian—Turkish, and Circassian—English—Turkish. 8vo. Cloth. (Published 21*s.*) Reduced price, 6*s.*

Loewe (L.).—Efes Damim, see **Efes.**

Luzac's Oriental Grammars Series. Vols. I and II, see **Wynkoop**; Vol. III, see **Rosen**; Vol. IV, see **Crow.**

Luzac's Oriental List. Containing Notes and News on, and a Bibliographical List of all new Publications on Africa and the East. Published monthly. Annual subscription, 3*s.* Yearly volumes (with Index, half-bound), 5*s.* each.

Vol. I (1890) is entirely out of print. A few copies of Vols. II, III, and IV are left at 10*s.* each. Vols. V to XIII (1894–1902) are still to be had at 5*s.* each.

Luzac's Semitic Text and Translation Series. Vols. I, IV, V, IX, X, XI, and XVI to XVIII, see **Budge**; Vols. II, III, VIII, XII, XIII, and XIX, see **King**; Vols. VI, VII, XIV, and XV, see **Thompson.**

Margoliouth (D. S.).—Arabic Papyri of the Bodleian Library. Reproduced by the Collotype Process. With Transcription and Translation. Text in 4to. pp. 7 and 2 facsimiles in large folio. 5*s.*

Margoliouth (D. S.).—Chrestomathia Baidawiana. The Commentary of El-Baidâwi on Sura III. Translated and explained for the use of Students of Arabic. By D. S. MARGOLIOUTH, M.A., Laudian Professor of Arabic in the University of Oxford, etc., etc. Post 8vo. Cloth, 12*s.* net.

"The book is as scholarly as it is useful. Of particular importance are the numerous grammatical annotations which give the beginner an insight into the method of the Arabic national grammarians, and which form an excellent preparatory study for the perusal of these works in the original. . . . The introduction, and the remarks in particular, show how well Mr. MARGOLIOUTH has mastered the immense literatures of Moslem Tradition, Grammar, and Kalaim. . . . The perusal of the book affords pleasure from beginning to end."—*Journal Royal Asiatic Society.*

Michell (R. L. N.).—An Egyptian Calendar for the Koptic year 1617 (1900–1901 A.D.). Corresponding with the years 1318–1319 of the Mohammedan Era. By ROLAND L. N. MICHELL. Demy 8vo. 130 pp. Cloth, 3*s.* Paper covers, 2*s.* 6*d.*

Some Notices of an Egyptian Calendar for the year 1395 A.H. (1878 A.D.). Published by Mr. MICHELL in Egypt in 1877.

"One of the strangest pieces of reading probably ever offered under the name of contemporary literature. . . . There is no fear that anyone who uses this little book for consultation during a visit to Egypt will fail to see any particular celebration for want of exact information as to its probable date."—*Saturday Review.*

"This quaint and entertaining pamphlet may claim a foremost place among curiosities of modern literature. . . . Never was information so new, so old, so varied, so fantastic, or packed in so small a compass. . . . The Glossary may be described as a local gazetteer, a brief biographical dictionary of holy and historical personages, an epitome of popular customs and superstitions, and a handbook of the agricultural and natural phenomena of the Nile Valley."—*Academy.*

Mirkhond.—The Rauzat-us-Safa ; or Garden of Purity. Translated from the original Persian by E. REHATSEK ; edited by F. F. ARBUTHNOT. 8vo. Cloth, Vols. I to V. 10*s.* net each volume.

Vols. 1 and 2 contain : The Histories of Prophets, Kings, and Khalifs.

Vols. 3 and 4 contain : The Life of Muhammad the Apostle of Allah.

Vol. 5 contains : The Lives of Abú Bakr, O'mar, O'thmán, and Alí, the four immediate successors of Muhammad the Apostle.

Muallakat. — The Seven Poems suspended in the Temple at Mecca. Translated from the Arabic. By Capt. F. E. JOHNSON. With an Introduction by Shaikh Faizullabhai. 8vo. pp. xxiv, 238. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Picart (Bernard).—Scènes de la vie Juive dessinées d'après Nature par Bernard Picart 1663–1733. Sixteen Plates (Reproduction en heliogravure Dujardin). Together in a beautiful cloth cover, richly ornamented with gold and colours. Folio. (Frcs. 50.) 12*s.* 6*d.* net.

Rogers (R. W.).—A History of Babylonia and Assyria. By ROBERT WILLIAM ROGERS, Ph.D. (Leipzig), D.D., LL.D., F.R.G.S., Professor in Drew Theological Seminary, Madison, New Jersey. Third edition. Two vols. Royal 8vo. Cloth, pp. xx, 430, and xv, 418. 20*s.* net.

"The first volume of one of the most useful works yet published on Assyriology has just appeared. It is not only a history of Babylonia and Assyria brought up to date, it is also a history of Assyrian and Babylonian excavation and of cuneiform decipherment. For the first time the reader has placed before him a full and interesting account of one of the romances of historical science—the discovery and decipherment of the cuneiform inscriptions."—*Expository Times.*

"I consider Rogers's 'History of Babylonia and Assyria' a really useful book, the best of its kind so far written in English. The fairness with which the author endeavours to represent different views so frequently held with regard to the earlier dynasties and events makes his work especially desirable for the student in the class-room."—H. V. HILPRECHT, Ph.D., D.D., LL.D., *Professor in the University of Pennsylvania, Scientific Director of Babylonian Exploration Fund.*

Rosen (F.).—A Modern Persian Colloquial Grammar. Containing a short Grammar, Dialogues and Extracts from Nasir Eddin Shah's Diaries, Tales, etc., and a Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. Cloth, pp. xiv, 400. 10*s.* 6*d.*

"Dr. ROSEN'S learned work will be useful to all who have occasion to go to Persia, Baluchistan, and Afghanistan. The Vocabulary will be a boon to students, especially as it is in the same volume with the grammar and the dialogues."—*Publ. Circular.*

"Very useful to students."—*Westminster Review.*

"Excellent guide to the acquisition of Persian."—*Asiatic Quarterly Review.*

Ruben (Paul). — Critical Remarks upon some Passages of the Old Testament. By PAUL RUBEN, Ph.D. 4to. Cloth, pp. ii, 24, 14. 3*s.* 6*d.* Paper covers, 2*s.* 6*d.*

"It may suffice to congratulate ourselves that a scholar of vigorous mind and accurate philological training is devoting his leisure to a subject worthy of attention. . . . . Very many of the notes are in a high degree stimulating and suggestive. The get-up of the book is excellent."—*Academy.*

"Dr. RUBEN shows much originality, a wide knowledge of authorities, and a true grasp of critical principles."—*Jewish Chronicle.*

Sauerwein (G.). — A Pocket Dictionary of the English and Turkish Languages. Small 8vo. Limp cloth, pp. 298. 3*s.* 6*d.* net.

Sayce (A. H.).—Address to the Assyrian Section of the Ninth International Congress of Orientalists. 8vo, pp. 32. 1*s.*

Scholia on Passages of the Old Testament. By MAX JACOB, Bishop of Edessa. Now first edited in the original Syriac, with an English Translation and Notes by G. PHILLIP, D.D. 8vo. Paper covers. 5*s.* net.

Thompson (R. Campbell).—The Reports of the Magicians and Astrologers of Nineveh and Babylon. In the British Museum. The Original Text, printed in Cuneiform Characters, edited with Translations, Notes, Vocabulary, Index, and an Introduction. By R. CAMPBELL THOMPSON, B.A. (Cantab.), Assistant in the Department of Egyptian and Assyrian Antiquities, British Museum. In two vols. Vol. I, The Cuneiform Texts. Vol. II, English Translations, Vocabulary, etc. Roy. 8vo. Cloth. 12*s.* 6*d.* net each.

"Mr. Thompson gives us the cuneiform text of what is, practically, the complete series of the Astrological Reports of the Royal Library at Nineveh—that is to say, copies of about 280 tablets and transliterations of about 220 duplicates, without reckoning the transliterations of the texts of the original series. In addition, we find a translation of the tablets in English, and a vocabulary, with references, and a subject index. The work in each of these sections has been carefully done."—*Nature.*

"The value of the book is enhanced by its excellent indices. Those who wish to know what the astrological lore of Babylonia was like cannot do better than study it."—*Expository Times.*

Thompson (R. Campbell).—Assyrian Incantations, Spells, and Formulæ, directed against the Attacks of Evil Spirits. Translated and Transliterated, with Vocabulary, Indexes, and an Introduction. 2 vols. Roy. 8vo. (*In the Press.*)

Tiele (C. P.).—Western Asia, according to the most recent Discoveries. Rectorial Address on the occasion of the 318th Anniversary of the Leyden University, 8th February, 1893. Translated by ELIZABETH J. TAYLOR. Small 8vo. Cloth, pp. 36. 1*s.* 6*d.*

"An authoritative summary of the results of recent Oriental research and discovery."—*The Times.*

"The address presents a graphic picture of the political situation in Western Asia in the fifteenth and fourteenth centuries B.C."—*Morning Post.*

Transactions of the Ninth International Congress of Orientalists. — London, 5th to 12th September, 1892. Edited by E. DELMAR MORGAN. 2 vols. Roy. 8vo. Cloth. 35*s.*

Vol. I contains: Indian and Aryan Sections. 21*s.*

Vol. II contains: Semitic, Egypt and Africa, Geographical, Archaic Greece and the East, Persia and Turkey, China, Central Asia and the Far East, Australasia, Anthropology and Mythology Sections. 21*s.*

Vambéry (A.).—The Travels and Adventures of the Turkish General Sidi Ali Rêis in India, Afghanistan, Central Asia, and Persia, during the years 1553-1556. Translated from the Turkish, with Notes, by A. V. 8vo, pp. xviii, 123. 5*s.*

"This book is highly interesting."—*Westminster Review.*

Wildeboer (G.).—The Origin of the Canon of the Old Testament. An Historico-Critical Enquiry. Translated by WISNER BACON. Edited with Preface by Professor GEORGE F. MOORE. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xii, 182. 7*s.* 6*d.*

"We will only add that we cordially echo the Professor's hope that his book may not only be read by professed students, but that it may come also into the hands of such as have already left the University."—*Guardian.*

Wilkinson (J. R.). — A Johannine Document in the First Chapter of St. Luke's Gospel. Roy. 8vo, pp. 38. Cloth, 2*s.* Paper cover, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Winckler (H.).—The Tell-El-Amarna Letters. Transliteration, English Translation, Vocabulary, etc. Roy. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xlii, 416, and 50 pages Indices. 21*s.* net.

The same, in paper covers, 20*s.*

"The present work does not aim to give the final exposition of the Tell-el-Amarna Letters, but only the beginning of such exposition. The author has solved many difficulties."

"The purpose of the vocabularies and catalogue of proper names is to make easy the penetration and independent investigation of our subject. Especially in case of the first, it was important to hit upon a selection from the innumerable repetitions. A full citation of all the places would make their examination almost impossible."

Wright (W.).—The Book of Jonah in four Semitic versions. Chaldee, Syriac, Aethiopic, and Arabic. With corresponding Glossaries. 8vo. Cloth, pp. 148. 4*s.* net.

Wynkoop (J. D.).—Manual of Hebrew Syntax. Translated from the Dutch by C. VAN DEN BIESEN. 8vo. Cloth, pp. xxii, 152, and Index. 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

"It is a book which every Hebrew student should possess, . . . we recommend it for general usefulness, and thank Dr. Van den Biesen for giving it to the English reader."—*Jewish World.*

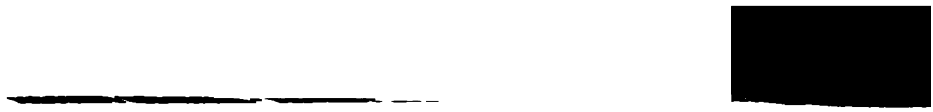
"It is one of those books which will become indispensable to the English student who will desire to become acquainted with the construction of Hebrew syntax . . . this takes a high rank and will undoubtedly become a general textbook on the subject in many colleges and universities."—*American Hebrew News.*

Wynkoop (J. D.).—Manual of Hebrew Grammar. Translated from the Dutch by C. VAN DEN BIESEN. 8vo. Cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.* net.

"We have nothing but praise for the Rev. WYNKOOP'S Manual of Hebrew Grammar. It is clear and concise: the rules are very intelligible, and the examples are telling. . . . We heartily recommend this book, and congratulate M Luzac on the style of its production."—*Asiatic Quarterly Review.*

This book is a preservation photocopy.
It is made in compliance with copyright law
and produced on acid-free archival
60# book weight paper
which meets the requirements of
ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (permanence of paper)

Preservation photocopying and binding
by
Acme Bookbinding
Charlestown, Massachusetts
1999

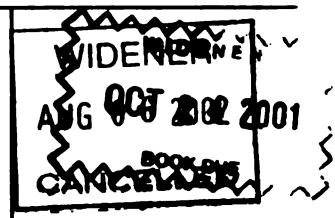


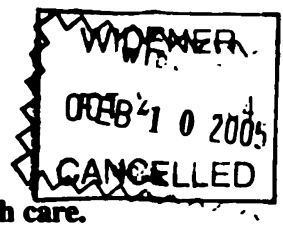
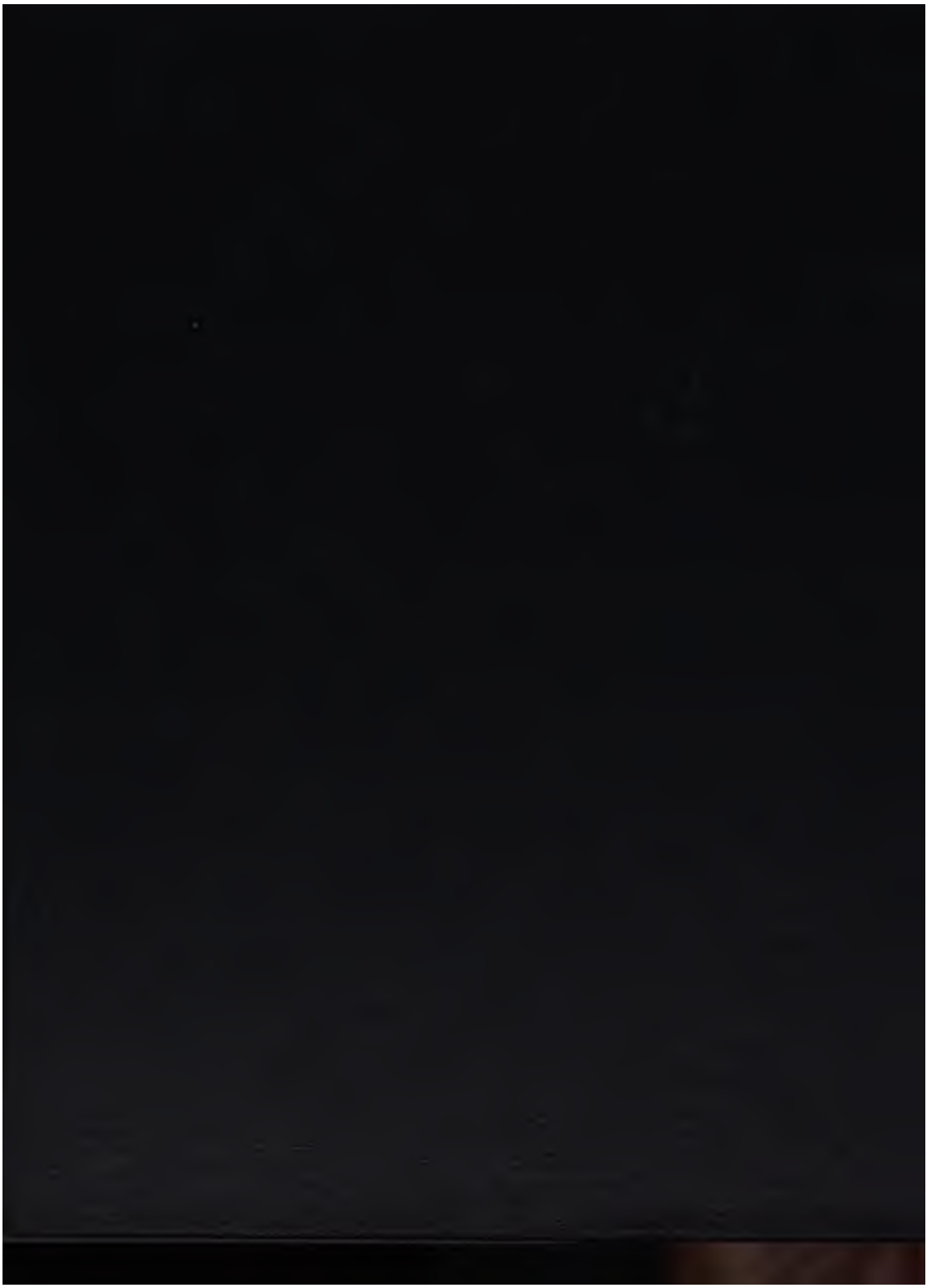
3 2044 022 697 169

The borrower must return this item on or before the last date stamped below. If another user places a recall for this item, the borrower will be notified of the need for an earlier return.

*Non-receipt of overdue notices does **not** exempt the borrower from overdue fines.*

Harvard College Widener Library
Cambridge, MA 02138 617-495-2413





Please handle with care.
Thank you for helping to preserve library collections at Harvard.